特高级教师

点拨®

知识·方法·素养

《点拨》
因此温暖而美丽

点点见真情·处处暖人心

流水潺潺，心韵悠悠
全书方法索引，引你进入**点拨**世界
时光静寂，美妙邂逅
荣德基老师引领你与**方法**结缘

云儿轻轻，流水静静
使用说明书，携你共探幽径
峰回路转，柳暗花明
全书考点索引，助你速查全书考点

学生之家，在线移动家教服务
点拨方法之树，助你理清思路
对着错题独自哀愁，谁愿为你解忧
方法跷跷板，帮你玩转错题，让你赢

操千曲而后晓声，观千剑而后识器
《**点拨**》中**方法之练**就用《典中点》

闭上双眼，用心感受《点拨》一路相随的暖意

八年级 牛津英语 下
（YL版）

总 主 编：荣德基
本册主编：陈旭东　王书海
　　周　晶　孙永琴

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

目录 CONTENTS



全书考点索引 …… I

Unit 1 Past and present

学习方法创新 …… 1
学习目标梳理 …… 1
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 2
Period 2 Reading …… 5
Period 3 Grammar …… 12
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 18
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 22
素养：了解中西婚礼文化的不同 …… 8

Unit 2 Travelling

学习方法创新 …… 25
学习目标梳理 …… 25
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 26
Period 2 Reading …… 29
Period 3 Grammar …… 34
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 41
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 45

Unit 3 Online tours

学习方法创新 …… 48
学习目标梳理 …… 48
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 49
Period 2 Reading …… 52
Period 3 Grammar …… 58
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 63
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 66

Unit 4 A good read

学习方法创新 …… 70
学习目标梳理 …… 70
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 71
Period 2 Reading …… 74
Period 3 Grammar …… 80
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 84
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 89
素养：培养健康睡眠习惯 …… 76

Project 1 …… 92

Unit 5 Good manners

学习方法创新 …… 94
学习目标梳理 …… 94
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 95

二维码索引

词汇表听写 …… 1
课时导入 …… 2,5
课文朗读 …… 2,5,19
课文听力 …… 18
知识微课：used to …… 3
现在完成时 …… 15
拓展阅读 …… 5
方法真题练：语法判定法 …… 7

词汇表听写 …… 25
课时导入 …… 26,29
课文朗读 …… 26,29,42
课文听力 …… 41
知识微课：have been/have gone … 38
since 与 for …… 38
拓展阅读 …… 29
方法真题练：辨析法 …… 32

词汇表听写 …… 48
课时导入 …… 49,52
课文朗读 …… 49,52,64,67
课文听力 …… 63
知识微课：be made… …… 68
拓展阅读 …… 52
方法真题练：交际法 …… 51

词汇表听写 …… 70
课时导入 …… 71,74
课文朗读 …… 71,74,85,89
课文听力 …… 84,85
知识微课：get，reach 与 arrive … 72
till，until …… 77
拓展阅读 …… 74
方法真题练：题眼法 …… 87

词汇表听写 …… 94
课时导入 …… 95,98
课文朗读 …… 95,98,109
课文听力 …… 108

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading ····· 98
Period 3 Grammar ····· 104
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills ····· 108
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment ····· 113
素养:了解中西方餐桌礼仪 ····· 96

知识微课:too...to... ····· 106
sometime ····· 111
拓展阅读 ····· 98

Unit 6 Sunshine for all

学习方法创新 ····· 116
学习目标梳理 ····· 116
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit ····· 117
Period 2 Reading ····· 120
Period 3 Grammar ····· 126
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills ····· 130
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment ····· 133
素养:学会放弃,也是一种素养 ····· 123

词汇表听写 ····· 116
课时导入 ····· 117,120
课文朗读 ····· 117,120,131,133
课文听力 ····· 130
知识微课:provide ····· 119
It 句型 ····· 128
拓展阅读 ····· 120
方法真题练:固定短语法 ····· 134

Unit 7 International charities

学习方法创新 ····· 136
学习目标梳理 ····· 136
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit ····· 137
Period 2 Reading ····· 140
Period 3 Grammar ····· 147
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills ····· 152
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment ····· 155
素养:培养"发展自我"的素养 ····· 145

词汇表听写 ····· 136
课时导入 ····· 137,140
课文朗读 ····· 137,140,153,155
课文听力 ····· 152
知识微课:语法 ····· 149
拓展阅读 ····· 140

Unit 8 A green world

学习方法创新 ····· 158
学习目标梳理 ····· 158
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit ····· 159
Period 2 Reading ····· 163
Period 3 Grammar ····· 170
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills ····· 174
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment ····· 178
素养:勇于尝试,培养行动素养 ····· 166

词汇表听写 ····· 158
课时导入 ····· 159,163
课文朗读 ····· 159,163,175
课文听力 ····· 174
知识微课:so that ····· 168
语法 ····· 172
拓展阅读 ····· 163

Project 2 ····· 181

活页部分

Unit 1 过关测试 ····· 183
Unit 2 过关测试 ····· 187
Unit 3 过关测试 ····· 191
Unit 4 过关测试 ····· 195
Unit 5 过关测试 ····· 199
Unit 6 过关测试 ····· 203
Unit 7 过关测试 ····· 207
Unit 8 过关测试 ····· 211
参考答案及点拨 ····· 215
教材习题参考答案 ····· 234

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

全书考点索引

◆单词(按字母顺序排列)

abroad ····· 20
achieve ····· 124
advice ····· 90
afford ····· 143
against ····· 76
ago ····· 3
airport ····· 47
allow ····· 166
area ····· 138
as ····· 102
Asia ····· 54
avoid ····· 101
basic ····· 138
blind ····· 118
blood ····· 128
bottom ····· 56
business ····· 44
capital ····· 28
carelessly ····· 177
cause ····· 161
chance ····· 122
check ····· 154
closely ····· 124
coach ····· 123
coast ····· 65
communicate ····· 21
continue ····· 77
conversation ····· 100
cooking ····· 72
couple ····· 32
dead ····· 37
deaf ····· 118
develop ····· 144
difference ····· 168
dig ····· 160
discussion ····· 105
display ····· 171
education ····· 138
England ····· 68
exactly ····· 21
expect ····· 122
experience ····· 87
explain ····· 110
express ····· 105
fantastic ····· 31
feel ····· 32
fine ····· 167
form ····· 177
Germany ····· 72
gold ····· 123
guide ····· 54
habit ····· 91
hard ····· 55
harmful ····· 176
hold ····· 149
impossible ····· 9
interview ····· 10
interviewer ····· 142
introduction ····· 134
kiss ····· 100
left ····· 138
litter ····· 96
magic ····· 32
manage ····· 78
manners ····· 96
married ····· 7
marry ····· 37
matter ····· 154
medical ····· 143
mind ····· 65
miss ····· 31
mouse ····· 50
northern ····· 7
obey ····· 96
operate ····· 144
opposite ····· 65
over ····· 36

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

own ····· 119
pain ····· 112
pale ····· 154
parking ····· 111
past ····· 3
patient ····· 143
pleasure ····· 66
point ····· 44
politely ····· 96
pollution ····· 8
pound ····· 68
practice ····· 112
present ····· 4
prize ····· 124
programme ····· 50
project ····· 132
proper ····· 100
proud ····· 144
public ····· 101
punish ····· 167
purpose ····· 114
push ····· 101
queen ····· 68
reach ····· 72
realize ····· 8
recently ····· 15
refuse ····· 87
relax ····· 55
return ····· 20
rich ····· 167
risk ····· 112
sales ····· 87
sand ····· 36
secretary ····· 156
serious ····· 160
several ····· 55
similar ····· 123
simple ····· 180
since ····· 7
spare ····· 73
speed ····· 31
spread ····· 139
step ····· 180
stomach ····· 77
subject ····· 101
successful ····· 111
support ····· 118
survey ····· 176
tie ····· 76
touch ····· 101
train ····· 118
translate ····· 87
turn ····· 96
ugly ····· 73
unable ····· 78
until ····· 77
warn ····· 110
wife ····· 8
wise ····· 161
world-famous ····· 54
writer ····· 73
yet ····· 15

◆短语(按字母顺序排列)

above all ····· 114
all year round ····· 43
and so on ····· 82
as ...as sb. can/could ····· 76
as well ····· 102
as well as ····· 172
at a time ····· 87
because of ····· 10
be made up of ····· 68
be on ····· 36
by accident ····· 103
by taking an online tour ····· 60
can't stop doing sth. ····· 32
carry on ····· 145
cut down ····· 166
cut in (on sb./sth.) ····· 96
depend on ····· 167
do with ····· 72
dream of ····· 60
drive sb. to ····· 161
excuse me ····· 102
fall over ····· 77

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

feel like …… 123
fill with …… 56
from time to time …… 10
further on …… 54
give a helping hand …… 134
give up …… 123
hand in …… 82
hand out …… 149
have/has been to …… 27
hurry to … …… 31
in one's way …… 101
in some ways …… 9
keep in touch …… 20
keep sb. from sth. …… 110
leave for … …… 46
less than …… 176
lose one's life …… 134
make up one's mind …… 156
not only…but (also)… …… 176
on time …… 82
provide sth. for sb. …… 119
set up …… 149
shake one's hand …… 100
so far …… 87
some more …… 118
take a + 交通工具 …… 4
the same …as… …… 77
the whole day …… 31
thousands of …… 55
turn …into …… 8
turn off …… 160
used to …… 3

◆句型(按字母顺序排列)

I don't think … …… 28
I'm afraid not. …… 97
It's time for … …… 138
some…some…others… …… 166
What …for? …… 51

◆辨析(按本书页码排列)

辨析:just 与 just now …… 3
辨析:a lot 与 a lot of …… 8
辨析:a bit 与 a little …… 9
辨析:lonely 与 alone …… 9
辨析:take place 与 happen …… 10
辨析:condition 与 situation …… 20
辨析:used to, be/get used to 与 be used to do sth. …… 21
辨析:join, join in 与 take part in …… 27
辨析:excited 和 exciting …… 27
辨析:all 与 whole …… 31
辨析:such as, for example 与 like …… 31
辨析:at the end of, by the end of 与 in the end …… 32
辨析:except 与 besides …… 43
辨析:hill 与 mountain …… 44
辨析:look like 与 be like …… 50
辨析:search for 与 look for …… 50
辨析:receive 与 accept …… 51
辨析:further 与 farther …… 54
辨析:huge, big, large 与 great …… 55
辨析:be famous for 与 be famous as …… 56
辨析:pick 与 pick up …… 56
辨析:go to sleep 与 go to bed …… 76
辨析:either, also 与 too …… 78
辨析:lift, rise 与 raise …… 78
辨析:loudly, loud 与 aloud …… 102
辨析:sometime, some time, sometimes 与 some times …… 111
辨析:soon after 与 after a while …… 111
辨析:more 与 another …… 118
辨析:elder 与 elderly …… 119
辨析:prize, award 与 reward …… 124
辨析:especially 与 specially …… 138
辨析:mostly 与 most …… 142
辨析:treat 与 cure …… 145
辨析:be good for, be good at 与 be good with …… 160
辨析:turn on/off 与 open/close …… 160
辨析:try to do sth. 与 try doing sth. …… 165
辨析:separate 与 divide …… 166
辨析:run out 与 run out of …… 167
辨析:so …that …, such …that … 与 so that …… 168
辨析:lively, alive, living 与 live …… 172

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Past and present

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①句法分析法(3 页)　②承上启下法(9 页)　③末尾总结法(10 页)
写作方法	①三步法介绍某地的“过去和现在”(24 页)
解题方法	1语法判定法(7,10,16 页)　2题眼法(15,20,215 页) 3语境法(16,215 页)　4逻辑推理法(215 页) 5常识法(215 页)　6推理判断法(215 页) 7转化法(226 页)　8结构分析法(226 页)

☞温馨提示:括号内的数字表示该方法在本书中对应的页码。

学习目标梳理

单元话题		谈论过去和现在	
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	past *n.* 过去　present *n.* 现在,目前 just *adv.* 刚才	used to 曾经 share ...with ... 与……分享……
	Period 2	since *conj.* 自……以来 northern *adj.* 北方的,北部的　ever *adv.* 曾经 married *adj.* 已婚的,结婚的　wife *n.* 妻子 over *prep.* 在……期间　block *n.* 街区 pollution *n.* 污染;污染物　factory *n.* 工厂 waste *n.* 废料;废品 realize *vt.* & *vi.* 意识到;实现 situation *n.* 形势,情况　however *adv.* 然而 impossible *adj.* 不可能的 before *adv.* 以前,过去,已经 lonely *adj.* 孤独的,寂寞的 anyway *adv.* 尽管,即使这样 husband *n.* 丈夫　interview *n.* 采访;会见	turn ...into 把……变成…… in some ways 在某种程度上 from time to time 不时,有时,偶尔 all one's life 一生　move house 搬家 in the northern part of 在……的北部 get married 结婚 since then 自那时起 change a lot 变化很大 take action 采取措施 as often as before 和以前一样经常 play cards 打牌 feel a bit lonely 感到有点孤独 because of 因为　take place 发生
	Period 3	yet *adv.* 还,仍　recently *adv.* 近来,最近 past *adj.* 过去的	hear about 听说
	Period 4	environment *n.* 环境　condition *n.* 环境,条件,状况 return *vi.* 返回　last *adv.* 最近,上一次;最后 abroad *adv.* 在国外 primary *adj.* 小学教育的;初级的 communicate *vi.* & *vt.* 交流,交际 communication *n.* 交流,交际 exactly *adv.* (答语)正是,没错	keep in touch 保持联系 be/get used to 习惯于,适应于 see each other 见面
	Period 5	narrow *adj.* 狭窄的	open space 开阔的空地 enjoy a comfortable life 享受舒适的生活
句型		①You used to ...你过去常常……　②It took a long time to ...做……花很长时间。 ③I've lived here since ... 自从……我就住在这儿。 ④Many changes have taken place in ...……发生了很多的变化。	
语法		现在完成时(Ⅰ)	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—**Oh, where's my food? It was in the bowl an hour ago**[1]. [2]
—Eddie, have you seen my food?
—Yes. I've **just**/dʒʌst/[3] eaten it.
—What? You've eaten my food? Why?
—Because I was very hungry.
—You've changed, Eddie. You **used to**[4] share food with me!
—You've changed too. You used to be so kind to me.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Changes

The Class 1, Grade 8 students are going to do a history project on the changes in Beijing over the years.

Task

Write a report on the changes in your hometown.

Welcome to the unit

Transport at different times

A **Daniel wants to know about the different forms of transport in Beijing. Help him write the correct names under the pictures.**

bus	coach	plane	taxi	train	underground

B **Millie and her dad are talking about transport at different times. Work in pairs and take turns to talk about it. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

	Past/pɑːst/[5]	Present/ˈpreznt/[6]
go to school	on foot, by bike/bus	by bike /bus/ underground
go around the city	by bus	by bus/taxi/car
go to other cities	by coach	by coach/train/plane

Millie: How did you go to school when you were a student, Dad?
Dad: I used to go to school by bike.
Millie: Why didn't you **take a bus**[7]?
Dad: Well, there were always too many people on the bus, and it took a long time to wait for the next one.
Millie: Really? I go to school by bus. Now it's easy and fast.

卡通漫画

——噢，我的食物在哪里？ 一小时之前它在这个碗里。
——埃迪，你看见我的食物了吗？
——是的，我刚刚把它吃了。
——什么？ 你吃了我的食物？ 为什么？
——因为我很饿。
——埃迪，你变了。 你以前和我分享食物的！
——你也变了。 你以前对我很好的。

改变

八年级一班的学生打算做一个关于多年来北京的变化的历史课题。

任务

写一份关于你的家乡变化的报告。

单元导入

不同时代的交通工具

A 丹尼尔想了解北京不同形式的交通工具。 帮助他在图片下写上正确的名称。

公共汽车	长途汽车	飞机
出租车	火车	地铁

B 米莉和她的爸爸正在谈论不同时代的交通工具。 结对练习并轮流谈论它，用下面的对话作为一个例子。

	过去	现在
去上学	步行，骑自行车/乘公共汽车	骑自行车/乘公共汽车/乘地铁
绕着城市转	乘公共汽车	乘公共汽车/出租车/小汽车
去其他城市	乘长途汽车	乘长途汽车/火车/飞机

米莉：爸爸，当你是学生时，你是怎么去上学的？
爸爸：我过去常常骑自行车上学。
米莉：你为什么不乘公共汽车？
爸爸：哦，在公共汽车上总是有太多的人，而且等下一辆公共汽车要花费很长时间。
米莉：真的吗？ 我乘公共汽车上学。 现在又舒适又快。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶ago /əˈgəʊ/ *adv.* 以前，以往

考向[重点]：ago 的时间着眼点是现在或说话的当时，通常与一般过去时连用。

eg：My teacher left school 30 minutes **ago**.
我的老师 30 分钟前离开了学校。

拓展 [难点] before 的用法

before 通常用来表示“过去”或“将来”的某个时间点之前，通常与现在完成时或过去完成时连用。

eg：I have never met him **before**.
以前我从未见过他。
The train had left **before** we got to the railway station. 在我们到达火车站之前，火车已经开走了。

【考题在线 1】 We have studied English since five years _____.
A. before　B. ago　C. on　D. in

点拨：本题用辨析法。ago 和 before 都可以用作副词，放在表示一段时间的名词短语后，意为“……以前”，但是时间概念的内涵不同。本题意为：自从五年前我们就学英语了。强调的时间点是说话的当时，所以用 ago。

特色土方法

before 和 ago 巧记口诀

before 常在点之前，ago 总在段之后；
before 时态不确定，过去时中用 ago。

❷句法分析法：此句时态为一般过去时。一般过去时表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态，常和表示过去的时间状语连用。

❸just /dʒʌst/ *adv.* 刚才

eg：I have **just** seen Daniel. 我刚刚见过丹尼尔了。

考向：辨析 just 与 just now

词条	含义及用法	示例
just	副词，意为“刚才”，常与完成时连用。	I've **just** finished my homework. 我刚刚完成家庭作业。
just now	“刚才，不久以前”，和一般过去时连用。	He was here **just now**. 他刚才在这里。

❹[高频] **used to**（用于过去持续或经常发生的事）曾经



考向[重点]：used to 后接动词原形。其否定形式为 didn't use to 或 usedn't to；疑问形式为 Did … use to …? 或 Used …to …?

eg：He **used to** be a teacher in our school.
他曾经是我们学校的一位老师。

【考题在线 2】 There _____ a lot of trees here, but now it has become desert. （阜康、米泉）
A. is　B. have
C. used to be　D. used to being

点拨：考查固定句式。used to do sth. 过去常常做某事，现在不做了；根据 but now 此处表示与现在对比，过去有很多树。根据句型 there be 表示存在，故用 used to be。

【考题在线 3】 Mary used to _____ in the countryside, but now she is used to _____ in the city. （云南）
A. live；live　B. live；living
C. living；live　D. living；living

❺past /pɑːst/ *n.* 过去

eg：We cannot change the **past**.
我们无法改变过去。

考向：past 一词多义

词性	含义	示例
名词	过去；往事	She was thinking of the **past**. 她正在回忆往事。
介词	晚于；在……之后；过	It's half **past** ten now. 现在 10 点半。
	经过	Our car drove **past** the park. 我们的汽车驶过公园。
形容词	刚过去的	He has been ill in the **past** two weeks. 两周来他一直在生病。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6 present /ˈpreznt/ *n.* 现在，目前

考向：present 的反义词为 past。其常用短语 at present 目前，现在（相当于 now）；for the present 暂时，暂且。

eg：I don't need the dictionary **at present**.
我现在不需要这本词典。
That is quite enough **for the present**.
那暂时完全够了。

拓展 present 的其他含义

词性	含义	示例
名词	礼物；赠品	I'm going to buy my mother a **present** for her birthday. 我要去给母亲买份生日礼物。
形容词	在场的；出席的	Every member of the club was **present**. 俱乐部的每个成员都出席了。

【考题在线 4】Lots of students feel sleepy in class at present, because they have to get up early in the morning. （玉林）
A. now　　B. in the future
C. then　　D. during the time

7 take a + 交通工具 乘坐……

eg：I **take a bus** to work every day.
我每天乘公共汽车去上班。

考向：其他几种表示乘坐某种交通工具的用法：

（1）by 加表示交通工具的名词，泛指乘坐某种交通工具。by car 乘坐小汽车；by air 乘飞机；by land 经陆路。

eg：I go to work **by bus** every day.
我每天乘公共汽车去上班。

（2）on/in + a/the + 表示交通工具的名词。

eg：I go to work **on a/the bus** every day.
我每天乘公共汽车去上班。

考题在线答案
1. B　2. C　3. B　4. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

☞（答案见 226 页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. He had to go to work by bike in the _____（过去）.
2. You have to forget the past and start living in the _____（现在）.
3. He was _____（刚刚）out of hospital.
4. He came here two years _____（以前）.
5. Shall we go to the museum by _____（地铁）?

二、句型转换

6. He went to work by car.（同义句转换）
He _____ _____ _____ to work.
7. She isn't at home now.（同义句转换）
She isn't at home _____ _____.
8. Jack worked in a factory in the past.（同义句转换）
Jack _____ _____ work in a factory.
9. I didn't come to school because I felt sick this morning.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ you come to school this morning?
10. His father was in the office at that time.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____ his father at that time?

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 王老师一小时前在教室里。
Mr Wang was in the classroom _____ _____ _____.
12. 读完这个故事后，布莱克先生让我们彼此分享看法。（淮安改编）
After we finished reading the story, Mr Black asked us to _____ our ideas _____ each other.
13. 米莉每天乘公共汽车上学。
Millie _____ _____ _____ to school every day.
14. 吉姆过去常常和朋友们在周末打篮球。（铁岭）
Jim _____ _____ play basketball with friends on weekends.
15. 经过锻炼之后，她看起来比以前瘦多了。
After some exercise, she looks much thinner _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

课文朗读A

A Times have changed

Millie wants to write about the changes in Sunshine Town for her history project. Daniel's grandpa, Mr Chen, knows a lot about Sunshine Town, so Millie is interviewing him to get some information.

Millie: Do you know Sunshine Town very well, Mr Chen?

Mr Chen: Sure. I've lived here **since** /sɪns/ ❶ I was born.

Millie: Have you ever /ˈevə(r)/ moved house?

Mr Chen: Yes. I first lived in the **northern** /ˈnɔːðən/ ❷ part of town with my parents. When I got **married** /ˈmærɪd/ ❸ in 1965, my **wife** /waɪf/ ❹ and I moved two blocks away and we've lived in this area since /sɪns/ then.

Millie: Has the town changed **a lot** ❺ over /ˈəʊvə(r)/ the years?

Mr Chen: Yes! We only had some small restaurants and shops years ago. And we had a post office and a cinema in the town centre. Now the government has **turned** part of the town centre **into** ❻ a new park. We have a new theatre and a large shopping mall too.

Millie: Was **pollution** /pəˈluːʃn/ ❼ a problem then?

Mr Chen: Yes, it was. There was once a steel factory /ˈfæktri/ near the Sunshine River. They often put the waste /weɪst/ into the river. Later the government **realized** /ˈriːəlaɪzd/ ❽ the problem and took action to improve the situation /ˌsɪtʃuˈeɪʃn/. Now the river is much cleaner.

Millie: Do you think life is better now?

Mr Chen: Well, **in some ways** ❾ it is. It's really nice to have a beautiful modern town. **However, most of my old friends have moved away.** ❿ It has become **impossible** /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ ⓫ for us to see each other as often as before /bɪˈfɔː(r)/. We used to play cards and Chinese chess together. Now I feel **a bit** ⓬ **lonely** /ˈləʊnli/ ⓭ **from time to time** ⓮. **Anyway** /ˈeniweɪ/, it's good to see the amazing changes in the town. ⓯

B Changes in Sunshine Town

B1 Millie is telling Sandy about her interview with Mr Chen. Sandy does not know the meanings of some words. Help her match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

阅读

A 时代变了

米莉想为她的历史课题写一写阳光镇的变化。丹尼尔的爷爷，陈先生，知道许多关于阳光镇的情况。因此米莉正在采访他以获得一些信息。

米莉：陈先生，你非常了解阳光镇吗？

陈先生：当然，自从出生以来，我就住在这儿了。

米莉：你曾经搬过家吗？

陈先生：是的，起初我和父母住在城镇的北部。当我在1965年结婚时，我的妻子和我搬到两个街区以外，从那以后，我们就住在这个地方。

米莉：在这些年期间这个小镇变化很大吗？

陈先生：是的！多年前我们只有一些小饭店和商店。在镇中心我们有一个邮局和一个电影院。现在，政府把镇中心这部分变成一个新的公园。我们也有一个新的剧院和一个大的购物中心。

米莉：那时污染是个问题吗？

陈先生：是的，它是个问题。在阳光河附近曾经有一个钢铁厂。他们经常把废弃物排到河里。后来，政府意识到这个问题，并采取措施改善这种情况，现在河流干净多了。

米莉：你认为现在的生活更好吗？

陈先生：嗯，在某种程度上是这样的。有一个漂亮的现代化城镇的确很好。但是，我的大多数老朋友都搬走了，对我们来说像以前一样经常见面变得不可能了。我们过去常常一起打牌，下中国象棋。现在我有时感到有点孤独。即使这样，在城镇里看到令人惊奇的改变是好的。

B 阳光镇的变化

B1 米莉正在告诉桑迪关于她对陈先生的采访。桑迪不知道一些词的意思，帮她将左侧的词和右侧的释义匹配起来，把正确的字母写在空格处。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. married (line 5) _____
2. block (line 5) _____
3. factory (line 13) _____
4. realize (line 15) _____
5. improve (line 15) _____
6. lonely (line 22) _____
7. from time to time (line 22) _____

a. sometimes
b. know or understand something that you did not know before
c. make something better
d. a place where things are made by machines
e. not happy **because of**[18] being alone
f. having a husband/ˈhʌzbənd/ or wife
g. a group of buildings with streets on all sides

B2 Millie is telling Sandy more about her interview with Mr Chen. Help Sandy check if she has got the information right. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. Mr Chen knows little about Sunshine Town. _____
2. Mr Chen moved away from his parents when he got married. _____
3. There is a large shopping mall in Sunshine Town now. _____
4. The steel factory once put its waste into the Sunshine River. _____
5. It is easy for Mr Chen to see his old friends now. _____
6. Amazing changes have **taken place**[19] in Sunshine Town. _____

B3 Sandy wants to learn more about the history of Sunshine Town. She is asking Millie some questions. Work in pairs. Complete their conversation.

Sandy: Tell me more about your **interview**/ˈɪntəvjuː/[20] with Mr Chen, Millie. Has he lived in Sunshine Town all his life?

Millie: Yes. He first lived with his parents in the (1) _____ part of town, and then moved to another flat two (2) _____ away.

Sandy: What was the town like in the past?

Millie: There were some small (3) _____ and shops.

Sandy: What did Mr Chen say about the town centre?

Millie: Years ago, there was a (4) _____ and a (5) _____. Now there's a new park, a new (6) _____ and a large (7) _____.

1. 结婚的（第5行）_____
2. 街区（第5行）_____
3. 工厂（第13行）_____
4. 意识到（第15行）_____
5. 改善（第15行）_____
6. 孤独的（第22行）_____
7. 不时（第22行）_____

a. 有时
b. 知道或理解你以前不知道的东西
c. 使某事物更好
d. 用机器生产东西的地方
e. 因为独自一人而不高兴
f. 拥有丈夫或妻子
g. 在周边有街道的一组建筑群

B2 米莉正在给桑迪讲述更多关于她对陈先生的采访。帮助桑迪检查她得到的信息是否正确，如果句子正确，写T，如果句子错误，写F。

1. 关于阳光镇，陈先生几乎不了解。_____
2. 当陈先生结婚时，他从他父母家搬走了。_____
3. 现在在阳光镇有一个大的购物中心。_____
4. 钢铁厂曾经把它的废弃物排到阳光河里。_____
5. 现在对陈先生来说拜访他的老朋友很容易。_____
6. 阳光镇发生了令人惊奇的变化。_____

B3 桑迪想了解更多有关阳光镇的历史。她正在问米莉一些问题。结对练习。完成她们的对话。

桑迪：米莉，告诉我更多关于你对陈先生的采访。他一生都住在阳光镇吗？

米莉：是的，起初，他与他的父母住在城镇的（1）_____部，然后搬到两个（2）_____外的另一个公寓。

桑迪：在过去这个城镇是什么样的？

米莉：有一些小的（3）_____和商店。

桑迪：关于城镇中心，陈先生说了些什么？

米莉：多年前，有一个（4）_____和一个（5）_____。现在有一个新公园、一个新的（6）_____和一个大的（7）_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Sandy: Were there any factories in Sunshine Town?
Millie: Yes. There was once a (8) _____ near the Sunshine River.

B4 **Millie is going to write about the changes in Sunshine Town for her history project. She has made some notes. Help her complete the sentences with the information on pages 8 and 9.**

- Sunshine Town (1) _____ over the years.
- People now have a (2) _____ town.
- The (3) _____ from the steel factory was once a problem. Luckily, the government took action to improve the (4) _____ later.
- Old people used to (5) _____ together.
- Old people sometimes (6) _____ because they cannot (7) _____ as often as before.
- People think it is good to see (8) _____.

桑迪：在阳光镇有一些工厂吗？
米莉：是的，在阳光河附近曾有一个(8) _____。

B4 米莉将为她的历史课题写关于阳光镇的变化。她已经做了一些笔记。用第8页和第9页的信息帮助她完成句子。

- 阳光镇这些年(1) _____。
- 人们现在有一个(2) _____城镇。
- 来自钢铁厂的(3) _____曾经是一个问题。幸运的是，后来，政府采取措施来改善这种(4) _____。
- 老人们过去常常在一起(5) _____。
- 老人们有时(6) _____，因为他们不能像以前一样经常(7) _____。
- 人们认为看到(8) _____是好的。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] since /sɪns/ *conj.* 自……以来

eg: He has been in the army **since** he left school.
他毕业以来一直在部队里。

考向一：作连词，可意为“自……以来”，一般和完成时连用。

eg: What have you been doing **since** I last saw you? 自我上次见你之后你一直在做什么？

考向二：作介词，可意为“自……以来”，常和现在完成时连用，since后常接时间点。

eg: They have lived here **since** May.
从五月以来他们就住在这儿了。

考向三：构成短语 ever since 自从；since then 从那时起

eg: (杭州中考) I have been scared of dogs **ever since** a dog hurt me when I was five years old.
自从我5岁时被狗伤过后，我就一直害怕狗。

Since then, we have made progress on some principal objectives.
从那以后，我们已在一些重要目标上取得了进展。

【考题在线1】 Alice learned to ride last year, and since then she _____ (ride) to school. (无锡惠山区二模)

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。句意：艾丽斯去年学会骑车，自那时起她就骑车上学。根据since then可知，此处要用现在完成时。


方法真题练：语法判定法

❷northern /ˈnɔːðən/ *adj.* 北方的，北部的

eg: My friend Tom lives in the **northern** part of the city. 我的朋友汤姆住在城北。

考向：方位形容词northern是由north + 后缀-ern构成的，其方位名词north意为“北；北方”。

eg: He lives in the **north** of the city.
他住在这个城市的北部。

拓展 方位词归纳：

west *n.* 西；西方→western *adj.* 西方的；西部的
south *n.* 南；南方→southern *adj.* 南方的；南部的
east *n.* 东；东方→eastern *adj.* 东方的；东部的
north *n.* 北；北方→northern *adj.* 北方的；北部的
in the east of China = in the eastern part of China = in East China 在中国东部/华东

❸married /ˈmærɪd/ *adj.* 已婚的，结婚的

eg: They have been **married** for ten years.
他们已经结婚十年了。

考向：married常与be, get等动词搭配，表示“和某人结婚”常用“be/get married to sb.”。注意：不用介词with。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

get married to sb.	意为“和某人结婚”，强调动作，不可以与一段时间连用	Jim **got married to** Ella last month. 上个月吉姆和埃拉结婚了。
be married to sb.	意为“和某人结婚”，表示状态，可以和一段时间连用	Tom has **been married to** Jane for two years. 汤姆已经和简结婚两年了。

了解中西婚礼文化的不同

西方的婚礼是属于浪漫型（romantic type）的，一般在教堂由牧师（priest）主持婚礼。新娘的礼服一般为白色，新郎是黑色的礼服。新人们认为只有在安静祥和的环境中才能得到上帝的保佑和祝福。中国的婚礼则以红色为主，新娘的传统衣着也是一身红装。在中国越是嘈杂的声音越被认为热闹，新人们才能得到越多人的祝福。随着时代的变迁，越来越多的年轻人接受中西合璧式（combination of Chinese and Western elements）的婚礼。

【素养行动】以后参加婚礼时，请认真感悟婚礼文化。

【素养行动结果】了解中西方婚礼文化，培养国际视野。

4 wife /waɪf/ *n.* 妻子

eg: Does your **wife** work in a hospital?
你妻子在医院工作吗？

考向：以-f(e)结尾的词复数形式大都是变-f(e)为-v，再加-es。初中阶段需要掌握的词有：wife—wives（妻子），knife—knives（刀子），wolf—wolves（狼），shelf—shelves（架子），thief—thieves（小偷），leaf—leaves（叶子）

eg: **Leaves** on the tree turn yellow in autumn.
秋天，树上的叶子变黄了。

特色土方法

以-f(e)结尾的词的复数形式巧记

“妻子”拿“刀”去杀“狼”，“架”后“小偷”用“叶”挡。

5 a lot 很；非常；大量

eg: Thanks **a lot** for helping me.
非常感谢帮助我。

考向：辨析 a lot 与 a lot of

词条	含义及用法	示例
a lot	意为“很，非常，很多”，常用于谓语之后作状语，不可用于名词之前表数量。	He likes watching TV **a lot**. 他非常喜欢看电视。
a lot of	意为“许多”，相当于 lots of，用于名词之前作定语，既可以修饰可数名词复数，也可以修饰不可数名词。	There are **a lot of** books in the library. 图书馆里有许多书。 There is **a lot of** milk in the bottle. 瓶子里有许多牛奶。

6 turn ... into 把……变成

eg: She **turned** her old jeans **into** a miniskirt.
她把她的旧牛仔裤改成了超短裙。

考向[重点]：与 turn 有关的短语：turn off 关掉（电灯，收音机等）；turn on 开，旋开（电灯，电视，收音机等）；turn up（把音量）调高；turn down（把音量）调低；in turn 依次，轮流；turn right/left 向右/左转

【考题在线 2】 —How is our government going to deal with the office building?
—It will be _____ a library. （宿迁）
A. turned off　　B. turned on
C. turned out　　D. turned into

7 pollution /pəˈluːʃn/ *n.* 污染；污染物

eg: Air **pollution** is a serious problem.
空气污染是个严峻的问题。

考向：pollution 为不可数名词。其动词形式为 pollute，意为“污染”，为及物动词，后接名词或代词。

eg: We must not **pollute** rivers.
我们不可以污染河流。

8 realize /ˈriːəlaɪz/ *vt.* &*vi* 意识到；实现

eg: Some students don't seem to **realize** the importance of studying English.
有些学生似乎还没有意识到学英语的重要性。

I must work hard to **realize** my dream.
我一定要努力学习以实现我的梦想。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展 realize 的三种基本句型：

(1) realize + *n./pron.*

(2) realize + that 从句

(3) realize + what (how, whether, if 引导的从句)

eg: Finally, he **realized that** he failed in the exam.

最后，他意识到自己考试不及格。

【考题在线 3】越来越多的人已经意识到我们不应当浪费粮食。（遂宁改编）

More and more people _____ _____ that we shouldn't waste food.

⑨in some ways 在某种程度上

eg: **In some ways** he is a naughty boy, and he sometimes plays tricks on others.

在某种程度上，他是个调皮的男孩，他有时会捉弄别人。

拓展 与 way 相关的短语有：on one's way to...在某人去……的路上；all the way 一路上；by the way 顺便提一下；in the way 挡道；no way 决不。

【考题在线 4】在某些方面，我和我妹妹完全不同。（新疆改编）

_____ _____ _____, I am quite different from my sister.

⑩承上启下法：该句在段中起承上启下的作用。在写这类文章时，我们可以用 however 来引起下文，使段落流畅。

⑪impossible /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ *adj.* **不可能的**

eg: It's **impossible** to prove it.

这件事无法证实。

考向：impossible 是由 possible 加前缀 im-构成的，其含义与 possible 相反。类似的词还有：polite (礼貌的)—impolite (不礼貌的)；patient(耐心的)—impatient(没有耐心的)

【考题在线 5】He is too weak. It's _____(possible) for him to move the heavy box.（广西北部湾）

⑫a bit 有点儿，修饰形容词或副词的原级、比较级。

eg: His words made me feel **a bit** angry.

他的话使我感到有点生气。

考向[重点]：辨析 a bit 与 a little

	a bit	a little
相同点	a bit 和 a little 都可以用来修饰形容词或副词的原级和比较级，也可修饰动词。 **eg**: I felt **a bit/a little** tired after a long walk. 走了很长一段路后，我感到有点累。	
不同点	修饰不可数名词时用 a bit of。 **eg**: a bit of water 一点儿水 not a bit 意为“一点儿也不”。 **eg**: I'm **not a bit** angry. 我一点儿也不生气。	可直接修饰不可数名词。 **eg**: Let's have **a little** milk. 咱们喝点牛奶。 not a little 意为“十分，很”，相当于 very。 **eg**: I'm **not a little** angry. 我非常生气。

【考题在线 6】Would you please give me _____ orange juice, Bill?

A. a bit　　B. a bit of

C. a few　　D. a little of

点拨：a little 后面接名词时不需介词 of，但 a bit 后面接名词时需加 of。

⑬lonely /ˈləʊnli/ *adj.* **孤独的**

eg: Do you feel **lonely** without your dog?

没有你的狗，你感到孤独吗？

考向[重点]：辨析 lonely 与 alone

词条	含义及用法	示例
lonely	形容词，意为“孤独的”，表示主观上感到孤独、寂寞，有较浓的感情色彩。在句中作表语或定语；作定语时，意为“荒凉的；偏僻的”，多修饰表示地点的名词。	He has no close friends. He always feels **lonely**. 他没有亲密的朋友，他总是感到孤独。 The old man lived in a **lonely** mountain village. 那个老人住在一个偏僻的山村里。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

alone	作形容词时，意为“单独的”，一般只作表语，不作定语。 作副词时，意为“单独，独自”。	I like being **alone** in the house. 我喜欢独自一人呆在家里。 His house stands **alone** on a hill. 他的家孤立在一座山丘上。

速记小筏

一语辨异：She lives **alone**, but she doesn't feel **lonely**.
她独自住着，但并不感到孤独。

【考题在线 7】—I know Old Joe lives _____.
—We are supposed to visit him from time to time. Then he won't feel _____. （南充）
A. alone；alone　　B. lonely；lonely
C. lonely；alone　　D. alone；lonely

⑭**from time to time 意为“有时”**，相当于 at times/sometimes。
eg：I saw him walk in the park **from time to time**.
有时我看见他在公园散步。

⑮**末尾总结法**：本句在课文中起总结作用。anyway意为“无论如何”。

⑯**because of 因为；由于**
eg：（安顺中考）Last night he found it difficult to fall asleep **because of** the loud noise outside. 昨天晚上由于外面巨大的噪音，他发现很难入睡。
考向一[重点]：because of 后接名词（短语）、代词、动名词等。
eg：Helen didn't go to school **because of** her illness. 因为生病，海伦没能上学。
He is here **because of** you.
因为你，他才来这里的。

【考题在线 8】Scientists say that banana trees may disappear（消失）from the world _____ banana cancer. （东营）
A. because of　　B. instead of
C. as for　　D. together with

点拨：because of 意为“由于、因为”，符合句意。而 instead of 意为“代替”；as for“至于、关于”；together with“和……一起”，都与句意不符。

考向二[重点]：because 是连词，引导原因状语从句或回答以 why 开头的问句，表示最直接的原因，语气最强烈。
eg：I didn't buy the camera **because** it cost too much.
我没有买那个照相机，因为它太贵了。
—Why are you late for school again?
为什么你上学又迟到了？
—**Because** something is wrong with my bike. 因为我的自行车出了毛病。

【考题在线 9】I always get up early on weekdays, _____ I'm afraid I will be late for school. （黄石）
A. because　B. so　C. though　D. then
点拨：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：工作日的时候我总是起得很早，因为我害怕上学迟到。前后两句是因果关系，用 because 引导原因状语从句。

⑰**take place 发生；举行**
eg：Great changes have **taken place** in my hometown.
我的家乡发生了巨大的变化。
考向：辨析 take place 与 happen

词条	用法	示例
take place	指经过安排或计划而发生。	The peace talks **took place** in Geneva. 和谈是在日内瓦举行的。
happen	通常指偶然发生。	When did the accident **happen**? 事故是什么时候发生的？

相同点：take place 与 happen 都无被动语态。

【考题在线 10】The Olympic Games of 2020 will _____ in Tokyo.
A. take after　　B. take off
C. take place　　D. take away

⑱**interview** /ˈɪntəvjuː/ *n.* **采访，会见**
eg：I have an important **interview** this afternoon.
今天下午，我有一个重要的采访。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向： interview 还可作动词，意为“采访，会见”。interview sb. 采访某人 = have an interview with sb.

eg： We will **interview** a famous surgeon tomorrow.
= We will **have an interview with** a famous surgeon tomorrow.
明天我们将采访一位著名的外科医生。

考题在线答案
1. has ridden 2. D 3. have realized
4. In some ways 5. impossible
6. B 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见226页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. Being afraid that Tim is l_____, his mom wants to have a second baby to play with him.
2. The government r_____ it was a very serious problem.
3. I had to throw away all the food after I left the fridge open. What a _____ (浪费)! (苏州)
4. Shared bikes can help people travel around freely in cities without _____ (污染). (泰州)
5. —Is Mr. Black still single?
—No, he has been _____ (已婚的) for two months by now. (鄂州改编)

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. It's nice _____ (have) pretty gardens.
7. Nothing is _____ (possible). It means everything can happen if you make efforts. (常州)
8. Their _____ (wife) are all nurses.
9. My parents used to _____ (get) up at 7, but now they get up at 6 and cook breakfast for me.
10. The park is in the _____ (north) part of the city.

三、单项选择

11. Bob, dinner is ready. Please wash your hands _____ you eat. (河北) 【导学号:9577700】
A. until B. after
C. while D. before
12. The film *Operation Red Sea* _____ a lot of praise since its first show months ago. (上海)
A. wins B. win
C. will win D. has won
13. Has Sunshine Town changed _____ over the years?
A. a lot B. a lot of
C. lots of D. lot
14. _____, life is better now than before.
A. In some ways B. In facts
C. Whenever D. Although
15. He had to retire(退休) early _____ his poor health.
A. as a result B. because
C. so D. because of
16. —Can I swim in the river?
—No way. Look at the sign. It says “No swimming”. (凉山)
A. It's possible. B. No door.
C. It's impossible. D. No problem.
17. I feel a bit tired. _____, I can hold on.
A. But B. However
C. Because D. Instead
18. Harbin is _____ of China.
A. to the north B. in the north
C. in the northern D. on the north
19. Amy _____ an American for three months.
A. has married B. has married to
C. has got married D. has been married to
20. Jack's grandma lives _____ in a _____ house, but she doesn't feel _____ at all.
A. lonely; alone; lonely B. alone; alone; lonely
C. alone; lonely; lonely D. lonely; lonely; alone

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

21. 明天要举行测试，我不时地感到有点紧张。
Tomorrow we will have a test. I feel a bit nervous _____ _____ _____ _____.
22. 这几年苏州发生了很大的变化。(苏州改编)
Great changes have _____ _____ in Suzhou over the years.
23. 这个箱子有点沉。
This box is _____ _____ _____.
24. 下周我将去采访陈先生。
I will have _____ _____ _____ Mr Chen next week.
25. 日本生产的新款面包机可以将大米变成可口的面包。(乐山)
A new bread-making machine made in Japan can _____ rice _____ delicious bread.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

Present perfect tense

We use the present perfect tense to talk about an action that started in the past and continues to the present.

I have lived here since I was born.

We use the present perfect tense to talk about an action that happened in the past and has a connection with the present.

Eddie has just eaten Hobo's food.

(Eddie ate the food, and now Hobo has nothing to eat.)

TIP

We can use these time expressions with the present perfect tense.
already yet ever never just recently since for

We also use the present perfect tense to talk about how many times an action has happened till now.

I have already read this book many times.

We make positive statements in the present perfect tense like this:

I/You/We/They	have	arrived.
He/She/It	has	

We make negative statements in the present perfect tense like this:

I/You/We/They	have	not	arrived.
He/She/It	has		

We ask and answer questions using the present perfect tense like this:

Have	I/you/we/they	arrived?
Has	he/she/it	

Yes,	I/you/we/they	have.
	he/she/it	has.

No,	I/you/we/they	haven't.
	he/she/it	hasn't.

语法

现在完成时

我们用现在完成时来谈论过去开始的动作一直持续到现在。

自从我出生以来，我就住在这儿。

我们用现在完成时来谈论过去发生的和现在有关联的动作。

埃迪刚刚吃了霍波的食物。

（埃迪吃了食物，现在霍波没东西吃了。）

提示

我们可以把这些表示时间的词用在现在完成时中：已经 还 曾经 从不 刚刚 最近 自从……以来 达（表示一段时间）

我们也用现在完成时来谈论动作到现在已经发生过多少次了。

我已经读这本书很多次了。

我们像这样构成现在完成时的肯定句：

我/你（们）/我们/他们	已经	到达。	
他/她/它	已经		

我们像这样构成现在完成时的否定句：

我/你（们）/我们/他们	还没	到达。	
他/她/它			

我们像这样用现在完成时提出问题和回答问题：

我/你（们）/我们/他们	已经到达了吗？	
他/她/它		

是的，	我/你（们）/我们/他们	已经（到了）。
	他/她/它	已经（到了）。

不，	我/你(们)/我们/他们	还没有。
	他/她/它	还没有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

TIP

have not = haven't
has not = hasn't

We form the past participles of regular verbs by adding -ed, just as what we do to form the simple past tense of these verbs.

Most verbs	+ ed	finish →finished
Verbs ending in -e	+ d	change→changed
Verbs ending in a consonant + y	-y + ied	carry →carried
Short verbs ending in a vowel + a consonant	double the consonant + ed	stop →stopped

We form the past participles of irregular verbs differently. Here are some examples.

No change	come → come hurt → hurt
Change the vowel	hold → held win → won
Change the consonant	lend → lent build → built
Change the vowel(s) and the consonant(s)	catch → caught keep → kept forget → forgotten tell → told
Others	be → been have → had fall → fallen fly → flown draw → drawn see → seen

TIP

Turn to pages 122 and 123 for more changes of irregular verbs.

The table below shows more examples of the past participles of verbs.

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Base form	Past participle	Base form	Past participle

提示

还没有 = 还没有
还没有 = 还没有

通过加-ed 我们构成一些规则动词的过去分词，就像我们构成这些动词的过去式时所做的一样。

大多数动词	加 ed	结束→结束
以-e 结尾的动词	加 d	改变→改变
以辅音字母 + y 结尾的动词	去-y 加 -ied	搬→搬
以一个元音字母 + 一个辅音字母结尾的短动词	双写这个辅音字母再加 ed	停 止 → 停止

不规则动词的过去分词的构成是不同的。下面是一些例子：

没有变化	来 → 来 伤害 → 伤害
改变元音字母	拿 → 拿 赢 → 赢
改变辅音字母	借给 → 借给 建造→ 建造
改变元音字母和辅音字母	抓 → 抓 保持 → 保持 忘记 → 忘记 告诉 → 告诉
其他的	是 → 是 有 → 有 掉 → 掉 飞 → 飞 画 → 画 看 → 看

提示

把书翻到 122 页和 123 页，可以看到更多不规则动词的变化。

下面的表格展示了更多一些动词的过去分词的例子。

规则动词		不规则动词	
原形	过去分词	原形	过去分词

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

visit	visited	hit	hit
repair	repaired	put	put
live	lived	meet	met
move	moved	make	made
try	tried	sell	sold
study	studied	give	given
fit	fitted	write	written
plan	planned	think	thought

A short test

A Mr Wu wants the students to practise using the present perfect tense. Help them write the past participles of the verbs below.

1. borrow _____ 2. hope _____
3. make _____ 4. get _____
5. plan _____ 6. cry _____
7. send _____ 8. watch _____
9. say _____ 10. grow _____
11. hit _____ 12. enjoy _____

B Mr Wu asks the students to complete the sentences below using the present perfect tense. Help them complete the sentences.

1. They _____ (finish) their homework already.
2. John _____ never _____ (visit) China.
3. Mr Li _____ (repair) over ten bicycles since Monday.
4. We _____ (not see) each other for years.
5. My parents _____ (not come) back yet/jet/❶.
6. Our teacher _____ (teach) us a lot about the history of China.

Chat time

C Millie and Sandy are talking about a film about the history of Beijing. Complete their conversation with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Millie: (1) _____ you _____ (see) any films recently/'ri:sntli/❷, Sandy?
Sandy: No, I haven't. What about you?
Millie: I (2) _____ (see) one last Saturday.
Sandy: What's it about?
Millie: It's about the changes in Beijing over the past/pɑ:st/ century. From this film, I (3) _____ (learn) more about Beijing's past and present.
Sandy: Oh, I think I (4) _____ (hear) about the film. Do you plan to see it again?
Millie: Yes, I'd like to.

看望	看望	击	击
修理	修理	放	放
居住	居住	见	见
移动	移动	做	做
尽力	尽力	卖	卖
学习	学习	给	给
适合	适合	写	写
计划	计划	认为	认为

一个简短的测试

A 吴老师想要学生们练习使用现在完成时，帮助他们写出下面动词的过去分词。

1. 借_____ 2. 希望_____
3. 做_____ 4. 得到_____
5. 计划_____ 6. 哭_____
7. 发送_____ 8. 看_____
9. 说_____ 10. 成长_____
11. 击_____ 12. 喜爱_____

B 吴老师让学生们用现在完成时来完成下面的句子。帮助他们完成句子。

1. 他们已经_____（完成）他们的家庭作业。
2. 约翰_____从来没_____（参观）中国。
3. 自从星期一以来，李先生_____（修理）十多辆自行车。
4. 我们多年_____（没有　看见）彼此。
5. 我的父母还_____（没有　来）回。
6. 我们的老师_____（教）我们许多关于中国的历史。

聊天时间

C 米莉和桑迪正在谈论一部关于北京历史的电影。用括号中动词的正确形式填空，完成她们的谈话。

米莉：桑迪，你最近（1）_____（看）一些电影吗？
桑迪：不，我没有，你呢？
米莉：我上个星期六（2）_____（看）一部。
桑迪：它是关于什么的？
米莉：它是关于北京上个世纪的变化的。从这部电影中我（3）_____（了解）更多北京的过去和现在。
桑迪：哦，我觉得我（4）_____（听）这部电影。你计划再看一次吗？
米莉：是的，我想。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶yet /jet/ *adv.* 还,仍

eg:He hasn't come **yet**. What do you think has happened to him?
他还没有来。你认为他发生了什么事?

考向:yet 为现在完成时的标志,用于否定句和疑问句中。对应词 already,意为"已经",用于肯定句中。

eg:My mother has **already** done the housework.
我妈妈已经做完了家务活。
The train hasn't arrived **yet**.
火车还没有到达。

【考题在线 1】Sarah _____ many places of interest in Beijing already. (沈阳)
A. visited
B. has visited
C. will visit
D. visits
点拨:本题用题眼法。already 为现在完成时的标志。

【考题在线 2】—Look, the light is still on in Helen's office.
—Maybe she _____ her work yet. (资阳)
A. doesn't finish
B. won't finish
C. hasn't finished
D. didn't finish
点拨:本题用题眼法解题。考查动词时态。句意:——看,海伦办公室里的灯还亮着。——或许她还没有完成工作。yet 是现在完成时态的标志词,且一般用于否定句或疑问句中。

【考题在线 3】Holly has _____ fed the dog, but she hasn't watered the plants _____. (青岛)
A. still; already
B. already; yet
C. yet; still
D. yet; already
点拨:already 通常用在肯定句中,yet 通常用在否定句中。句意为:霍莉已经喂过狗了,但是她还没有浇植物。

❷recently /'ri:sntli/ *adv.* 近来,最近

考向:recently 为现在完成时的标志。

eg:Peter has made progress in math **recently**.
彼得最近在数学方面取得了进步。
Have you seen Mr Smith **recently**?
你最近看到史密斯先生了吗?

【考题在线 4】I haven't seen them _____ (最近). (武威改编)

拓展 recent 形容词,意为"最近的"。

eg:There have been many changes in **recent** years. 近几年发生了许多变化。

考题在线答案
1. B 2. C 3. B 4. recently

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点 1:现在完成时的构成

考向一:定义

现在完成时表示过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响,或者表示从过去某时间开始一直延续到现在的动作或状态。



eg:I **have** already **seen** the film. 我已经看过这部电影了。(我已经知道这部电影的内容了)
We **have lived** here since last year.
自从去年以来我们就住在这儿。(表示从去年一直延续到现在的动作)

考向二:构成

现在完成时由"助动词 have/has + 过去分词"构成。其否定形式是在 have/has 后直接加 not,其疑问形式是将 have 或 has 提前,其一般疑问句的肯定回答是"Yes, 主语 + have/has.",否定回答是"No, 主语 + haven't/hasn't."。

eg:He **has lived** in Nanjing since 2010.
自从 2010 年以来他就住在南京。
I **haven't read** the book yet.
我还没读过这本书。
—**Have** you **finished** the work yet?
你已经做完这项工作了吗?
—Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
是的,我已经做完了。/不,我还没有做完。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线1】—When will you give the novel back to me?
—Sorry, I _____ it. How about Friday? (日照)
A. didn't finish B. won't finish
C. haven't finished D. don't finish
点拨:本题用**语境法**和**语法判定法**。句意:"你什么时候把那本小说归还给我?""对不起,我还没有读完。周五怎么样?"根据句意可知"读小说从过去某时开始,一直持续到现在还没有结束",要用现在完成时。

考向三:(1)规则动词的过去分词的变化规则

构词法	示例
a. 一般直接在词尾加-ed	work—worked open—opened
b. 以不发音的字母-e结尾的词直接加-d	live—lived skate—skated
c. 以"辅音字母+-y"结尾的词,变-y为-i,再加-ed	study—studied hurry—hurried
d. 以"元音字母+-y"结尾的词,直接加-ed	play—played stay—stayed
e. 以"元音字母+一个辅音字母"结尾的重读闭音节词,先双写这个辅音字母,再加-ed	stop—stopped plan—planned prefer—preferred

(2)不规则动词的过去分词需牢记课本上的不规则动词表。

考点2:现在完成时的用法

考向:现在完成时的用法:

(1)表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果。多用瞬间动词。
eg:He **has lost** his book.
他已经丢了他的书。(过去丢的,现在还没找到。)

【考题在线2】Miss Brown, we _____ cleaning our classroom. Can we go home now? (广州)
A. finish B. finishing
C. are finished D. have finished
点拨:句意:布朗老师,我们已经打扫完教室了。我们现在可以回家吗?根据句意可知,已经打扫完了,强调动作已经完成,用现在完成时。

(2)表示动作或状态在过去已经开始,持续到现在,也许还要持续下去,常和for,since连用。表示持续的动作或状态,多用延续性动词。
eg:He has taught English **for** 20 years.
他已经教了20年英语了。
We have known each other **since** ten years ago. 我们十年前就互相认识了。

【考题在线3】—Lucy, is your uncle a teacher?
—Yes, he is. He _____ history for nearly 20 years. (北京)
A. teaches
B. has taught
C. is teaching
D. will teach
点拨:本题用**语法判定法**。考查动词时态。句意:——露西,你叔叔是老师吗?——是的。他已经教了将近20年历史了。根据时间状语for nearly 20 years判断句中使用现在完成时。

(3)对He has lived here since ten years ago./He has lived here for ten years.对这两个句子中的画线部分提问应用how long。即How long has he lived here? 他在这里生活多久了?

【考题在线4】—_____ have you talked with your friends on WeChat?
—Since I finished my homework. (莱芜)
A. How far
B. How often
C. How soon
D. How long
点拨:本题用**辨析法**。how far意为"多远",对距离提问;how often"多久一次",对频率提问;how soon"要多久",对"in+一段时间"提问;how long"多久;多长时间",对一段时间提问。答语是Since引导的时间状语从句,表示一段时间,故用how long提问。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见226页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. I _____ (not finish) my homework yet. I am afraid I can't go to the park with you. (宿迁)
2. The young man _____ (live) alone since he graduated from college. (兰州)
3. This is the best film that I _____ (see) so far.
4. —Hello. Can I speak to Miss Brown?
   —Sorry, she _____ (fly) to Canada already. She'll be back in a week.
5. This is the second time he _____ (get) full marks in English. (无锡锡北区一模)
6. I _____ (know) Jimmy for over two days and now we are good friends.
7. —Why are the windows so dirty?
   —Because we _____ (not clean) them for a long time.
8. My life _____ (change) a lot in the past few years. (枣庄改编)

二、单项选择

9. —Dave, we will leave in 10 minutes. Are you ready?
   —No, I _____ our guidebook and towels yet. (玉林)
   A. don't pack
   B. didn't pack
   C. have packed
   D. haven't packed
10. Millie _____ in this factory since 1990. (梧州)
    A. works
    B. worked
    C. has worked
    D. have worked
11. —Have you finished your homework?
    —_____. Just half of it. How about you? (苏州)
    A. Not at all
    B. Not likely
    C. Not a bit
    D. Not yet
12. —What an exciting match!
    —Yes, isn't it? I _____ such a great one before! (阜康、米泉)
    A. never saw
    B. had never seen
    C. never see
    D. have never seen
13. Diana can't go to the farm with her classmates because she _____ a bad cold. (呼和浩特)
    A. will catch
    B. is catching
    C. has caught
    D. is caught
14. —What do you think of your junior school life?
    —It _____ some sweat memories in my heart in the past three years. (曲靖)
    A. leave
    B. left
    C. has left
    D. will leave
15. —You speak English so well. _____ have you learned English?
    —For 5 years. (吉林)
    A. How many
    B. How long
    C. How often
    D. How far

三、句型转换

16. Lily has already cleaned her room. (改为否定句)
    Lily _____ cleaned her room _____.
17. He has ever been to the USA. (改为一般疑问句)
    _____ _____ ever been to the USA?
18. Mr White has lived here <u>for ten years</u>. (对画线部分提问)
    _____ _____ has Mr White lived here?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Changes in Starlight Town

课文听力A1音频及材料

A1 Daniel and Kitty are doing their history project. Listen to their conversation. Complete the information below about Starlight Town in the past.

Past

Environment/ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/: green (1) _____, clean and fresh (2) _____, wild (3) _____ near the lake

Transport: bus and (4) _____

Living conditions/kənˈdɪʃnz/[1]: old (5) _____

课文听力A2音频及材料

A2 Listen to the rest of their conversation and complete the information about today's Starlight Town.

Present

Environment: smaller (1) _____, new (2) _____ station, tall (3) _____ and new roads

Transport: bus, taxi and (4) _____

Living conditions: new (5) _____

A3 Kitty is writing about Starlight Town in her diary. Complete her diary entry on the next page with the words in the box.

air	bicycle	birds	buildings	flats
hills	houses	modern	railway	taxi

13 February

Dear Diary,

Today I borrowed a book about Starlight Town's past and present. Starlight Town was very beautiful years ago. There were green (1) _____ and wild (2) _____ near the lake. The (3) _____ was clean and fresh then.

Now it has become a (4) _____ town. There is a new (5) _____ station. There are some new roads too. People can now travel to and from the town by bus, (6) _____ or train, but in the past, people could only travel by bus or (7) _____. Another big change is the many tall (8) _____ in the town. Local people used to live in old (9) _____, but now, most of them have moved into new (10) _____.

Starlight Town has changed a lot over the years. I hope I can visit it again.

综合技能

A 星光镇的变化

A1 丹尼尔和基蒂正在做他们的历史课题。听他们的谈话，完成下列关于星光镇过去的信息。

过去

环境：绿的（1）_____，干净和清新的（2）_____，湖附近野生的（3）_____

交通工具：公共汽车和（4）_____

生活环境：旧的（5）_____

A2 听他们剩下的谈话，完成今天关于星光镇的信息。

现在

环境：更小的(1)_____，新的(2)_____站，高的（3）_____和新路

交通工具：公共汽车，出租车和(4)_____

生活环境：新的(5)_____

A3 基蒂正在她的日记里写关于星光镇的情况。用方框中的单词完成下一页中她的日记记录。

空气	自行车	鸟	大楼	公寓
山	房屋	现代化的	火车	出租车

2月13日

亲爱的日记，

今天我借了一本关于星光镇的过去和现在的书。数年前，星光镇非常漂亮，湖的附近有绿色的（1）_____和野生的（2）_____。那时的（3）_____是干净和新鲜的。

现在它已经变成了一个(4)_____城镇，有一个新的（5）_____站。也有一些新的路。现在人们可以乘公共汽车、（6）_____或火车往返城镇旅行。但是在过去，人们只可以乘公共汽车或（7）_____旅行。另一个大的改变是城镇里的许多高的（8）_____。当地人们过去住在老（9）_____，但是现在，他们中的大多数都搬进了新的（10）_____。

星光镇这些年变了很多，我希望我能再次参观它。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Speak up: We haven't seen each other since then. Millie is telling Sandy about an old friend. Work in pairs and tell your partner about the changes in your life. Use the conversation below as a model.


课文朗读B

Millie: I met my old friend Becky last week. She's just **returned**/rɪˈtɜːnd/❷ from the USA.

Sandy: Really? When did you last/lɑːst/ see each other?

Millie: About five years ago. She went **abroad**/əˈbrɔːd/❸ with her parents. We haven't seen each other since then.

Sandy: Oh, you were still in primary/ˈpraɪməri/ school then. So how do you **keep in touch**❹ with each other?

Millie: We mainly **communicate**/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/❺ by email. The Internet makes communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ much easier.

Sandy: **Exactly**/ɪgˈzæktli/❻.

Study skills

Facts and opinions

We often use facts and opinions when we write. Facts are true statements. They include names, dates, events and numbers. Opinions tell what we believe, feel or think. They may not be true.

Beijing is the capital of China. (Fact)

Beijing is the best city in the world. (Opinion)

Many changes have taken place in my hometown. (Fact)

The new shopping mall is a good place to have fun. (Opinion)

TIP

Sentences that show opinions often use verbs like feel, believe and think or have adjectives like good, bad and terrible.

When we write, we can use facts to support our opinions. We can also give facts first, and then state our opinions.

My hometown is beautiful. There are green hills all around. A river runs through the centre of town.

I have moved to a new school this term. I do not know the school very well and I have no friends here. I feel unhappy these days.

A Read the sentences below. Write an F for a fact or an O for an opinion.

1. There were only small shops and restaurants in the town. _____

2. Old people used to play cards and Chinese chess together. _____

B 大声说：自从那以后，我们就没有见过彼此。

米莉正在告诉桑迪关于一个老朋友（的情况）。结对练习，告诉你的同伴你生活里的变化。用下面的谈话作为一个例子。

米莉：我上个星期见到了我的老朋友贝基。她刚从美国回来。

桑迪：真的吗？你们上次见面是什么时候？

米莉：大约5年前，她和她的父母去了外国。自从那以后我们就没有见过彼此。

桑迪：哦，那时你们还在小学。那么你们怎样彼此保持联系的？

米莉：我们主要通过电子邮件交流，因特网使交流更加容易了。

桑迪：的确如此。

学习技巧

事实和观点

当我们写作时，我们经常用事实和观点，事实陈述的是真实的事，它们包括名字、日期、事件和数字。观点讲述了我们相信、感觉或认为的事情。它们可能不是真实的。

北京是中国的首都。（事实）

北京是世界上最好的城市。（观点）

在我的家乡发生了许多的变化。（事实）

新的购物中心是玩乐的好地方。（观点）

提示

表观点的句子经常用像 feel, believe 和 think 之类的动词或者用像 good, bad 和 terrible 之类的形容词。

当我们写作时，我们可用事实来支持我们的观点。我们也可以先给出事实，然后陈述我们的观点。

我的家乡是美丽的。那里有绿山环绕。一条河穿过城镇的中心。

这个学期我已搬到了一所新学校。我不大熟悉，而且我这里没有朋友。这些日子我感觉很不开心。

A 读下面的句子。是事实写F，是观点写O。

1. 在城镇里只有小商店和饭店。_____

2. 老人们过去常常一起打牌和下中国象棋。_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. The new park in the town centre looks beautiful. _____
4. There was once a steel factory near the Sunshine River. _____
5. Life is getting better in some ways. _____
6. Many of Mr Chen's friends have moved away. _____

B Millie is writing about the changes in her life. Help her decide which are opinions and which are facts. Reorganize them into a short passage.

1. We have more subjects to learn.
2. It is not easy to **get used to**[7] the changes of life quickly.
3. When I was at primary school, I walked to school with my mum.
4. Now I go to school by bus on my own.
5. I have to spend more time on my homework than before.
6. Some subjects are difficult.

3. 在城镇中心的新公园看起来很漂亮。_____
4. 在阳光河附近曾经有一个钢铁厂。_____
5. 在某种程度上，生活正变得更好。_____
6. 陈先生的许多朋友已搬走了。_____

B 米莉正在写她生活中的变化。帮助她判断哪些是观点，哪些是事实。把它们重组成一个小短文。

1. 我们有更多的学科要学习。
2. 很快习惯生活的变化是不容易的。
3. 当我上小学时，我和我的妈妈步行去上学。
4. 现在我自己乘公共汽车上学。
5. 比起从前，我不得不花更多的时间在我的家庭作业上。
6. 一些学科很难。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 condition /kənˈdɪʃn/ *n.* 环境，条件，状况

考向一：condition 作“条件”讲时，后常与 for，of 或 that 从句连用。

eg：I'll do it on **condition** that you pay for everything.
我会做此事，条件是你得支付一切费用。

考向二：辨析 condition 与 situation

词条	用法
condition	一般强调产生影响的原因或环境，复数形式指笼统的情况。作“环境”讲时，通常用复数。
situation	指明确的具体的环境、情况或处境。

eg：You can't drive in that **condition**.
你那种状态不能开车。
The plants grow best in cool, damp **conditions**. 这些植物最适合在阴凉潮湿的环境下生长。
The garden is in a beautiful **situation**.
花园的环境十分优美。

2 return /rɪˈtɜːn/ *vi.* 返回

eg：When will your father **return**?
你父亲什么时候回来？

考向[重点]：return 本身有“回”的意思，故它不与 back 连用。作“返回”讲时，其同义短语为 come/go back。return 还有“归还”的意思，其同义短语为 give back。

【考题在线 1】Tom 上个月向我借了一本词典，但是到现在还没归还。（威海改编）
Tom borrowed a dictionary from me last month, but he _____ _____ it to me so far.
点拨：本题用题眼法。从 so far 可知道用现在完成时。

3 abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ *adv.* 在国外

eg：His cousin will go **abroad** for further study in a month. 一个月后他的表哥将出国深造。

考向：abroad 为副词，其前面不需要介词。常用短语：study abroad 在国外留学；go abroad 出国；at home and abroad 在国内外。

【考题在线 2】他在二十多岁时出国了。（随州）
He went _____ in his _____.
点拨：go abroad 意为“出国”；in his twenties 意为“在他二十多岁时”。

4 keep in touch 保持联系

eg：Do you and your brother **keep in touch**?
你和你弟弟保持联系吗？

考向：keep in touch 同义短语为 stay in touch，其反义短语为 be out of touch 失去联系。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 3】别忘了毕业后与你的老师和同班同学保持联系。
Don't _____ to keep in _____ with your teachers and classmates after you graduate.

5 communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ *vi. &vt.* 交流,交际

考向:常用搭配:communicate with sb. 和某人交流。communicate 的名词形式为 communication,意为"交流"。

eg:Do you often **communicate** with your parents? 你经常和你父母交流吗?

速记小筏

一语巧记:For better **communication**, I also **communicate** with him by email.
为了更好沟通,我还和他用电子邮件交流。

【考题在线 4】After you argue with your parents you must _____(交流) with them and explain why you did that. (枣庄)

6 exactly /ɪgˈzæktli/ *adv.* (答语)正是,没错

eg:—We can use the Internet. 我们可以用网络。
—**Exactly**. 正是。

考向一:exactly 还可作"准确地;确切地"讲。

eg:Please tell me **exactly** what he said.
请准确地把他说的话告诉我。

【考题在线 5】A sweeping robot is _____(确切地) what I want for my house. (宜昌)

考向二:exactly 的形容词形式为 exact,意为"精确的;准确的"。

eg:We need to know the **exact** time.
我们需要了解确切的时间。

7 get used to 习惯于,适应于

考向:辨析 used to, be/get used to 与 be used to do sth.

词条	用法	示例
used to	其后跟动词原形,表示过去的习惯、经常发生的动作或状态。	This place **used to** be a park. 这个地方曾经是一个公园。
be/get used to	"习惯于做某事",[难点]其中 to 是介词,后接名词、代词或动名词。	My grandpa has **been used to** living a simple life. 我的祖父已经过惯了简朴的生活。
be used to do sth.	被动语态。意为"被用来做某事"。相当于:be used for doing sth.	This computer **is used to** control all the machines. = This computer **is used for** controlling all the machines. 这台电脑是用来控制所有机器的。

【考题在线 6】—Did your father use to _____ to work?
—Yes, but now he likes using public transportation. He is used to _____ the bus. (自贡改编)
A. drive; taking B. driving; taking
C. driving; take

考题在线答案
1. hasn't returned 2. abroad; twenties 3. forget; touch
4. communicate 5. exactly 6. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见226页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. They have just _____(返回) to Beijing.
2. My cousin is teaching Maths in a _____(小学) school in our city.
3. Let's _____ _____ _____(保持联系).
4. My father has been _____(在国外) and he will be back in five days.
5. It's our duty to protect the _____(环境). (柳州)

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. The Internet makes _____ (communicate) easier, so the world becomes smaller and smaller. (泰州姜堰区一模改编)
7. As a mountain climber, Aron is used to _____ (take) risks. (荆门)
8. They used to _____ (play) cards in the park.
9. In the 1980s, the farmers' living _____ (condition) were not so good as they are now.
10. What does VIP _____(exact) stand for?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Changes in my hometown

A Amy plans to write about the changes in Moonlight Town for her history project. She has an old picture and a recent picture of the town.

B Amy organized her ideas by using a fact file. Read her fact file.

Topic		Many changes have taken place in Moonlight Town over the years.	
Facts		Past	Present
	Environment	narrow and dirty roads; rubbish everywhere; large open spaces	wide and clean streets; green trees on both sides; shops and tall buildings
	Life	small old houses; listen to the radio or watch TV	new flats; computers and the Internet; mobile phones
	Transport	on foot or by bicycle	by bus or taxi; have own cars
Opinion		Now people are enjoying a comfortable life.	

Useful expressions

...has changed a lot over the years.
Many changes have taken place in ....
People are enjoying a ...life.
There were only ...in the past, but now ....
People used to ....
The government has built ....
Many families have their own ....

C Amy is writing her report on the changes in Moonlight Town. Help her complete her report using the fact file in Part B.

Many changes have taken place in Moonlight Town over the years.

In the past, there were only (1) _____ roads

任务

我家乡的变化

A 埃米计划为她的历史课题写关于月光镇的变化。她有一张城镇的旧照片和一张城镇最近的照片。

B 埃米用一张事实表组织她的观点。读她的事实表。

话题		月光镇在这些年发生了许多变化。	
事实		过去	现在
	环境	又窄又脏的路；到处是垃圾；开阔的空地	又宽又干净的街道；两边都是绿色的树；商店和高楼
	生活	小而旧的房子；听收音机或看电视	新的公寓；电脑和因特网；手机
	交通工具	步行或骑自行车	乘公共汽车或出租车；自驾小汽车
观点		现在人们正享受舒适的生活。	

有用的表达

……这些年变了很多。
在……发生了许多变化。
人们正享受一个……生活。
在过去只有……，但是现在……
人们过去常常……
政府建了……
许多家庭有他们自己的……

C 埃米正在写她关于月光镇变化的报告。用B部分的事实表帮助她完成她的报告。

这些年月光镇发生了许多变化。

在过去，小镇里只有 (1) _____路

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

in the small town. There was (2) _____ everywhere. But now the streets are (3) _____, with many (4) _____ on both sides. The government has also built (5) _____ in some large **open spaces**.

Years ago, people lived in (6) _____. Now most of them have moved into (7) _____. They used to (8) _____ or watch TV in their free time, but now most families have computers and the (9) _____. Moreover, (10) _____ make communication easier now.

In the past, people travelled around the town (11) _____, but now they can go around (12) _____. Many families even have their own cars.

Now people are enjoying a comfortable life.

D **You are writing a report on the changes in your hometown. Find an old photo and a recent photo of your hometown. Use Amy's fact file and her article as a model.**

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about the changes in Sunshine Town.		
2. to use the new words to talk about my hometown.		
3. to use the present perfect tense.		
4. how to use facts to support my opinions.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

路。到处都有(2) _____。但现在街道(3) _____,在街道两边有许多(4) _____。政府也在一些大的开阔的地方建了(5) _____。

多年前,人们住在(6) _____。现在他们中的大多数都搬进(7) _____。他们过去常常在他们的空闲时间里(8) _____或看电视,但是现在大多数家庭有电脑和(9) _____。而且,现在(10) _____使交流更容易。

在过去,人们(11) _____环绕城镇旅行。但是现在他们可以(12) _____到处转。许多家庭甚至有他们自己的汽车。

现在人们正享受舒适的生活。

D 你正在写关于你家乡变化的报告。找你家乡的一张旧照片和一张最近的照片。用埃米的事实表和她的文章作一个例子。

自我评价

我已学了	细节	结果
1. 关于阳光镇的变化。		
2. 使用新单词谈论我的家乡。		
3. 使用现在完成时。		
4. 如何用事实支持我的观点。		

结果:棒极了! 好! 不错!

我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法:三步法介绍某地的"过去和现在"

步骤一:描写过去

步骤二:描写现在

步骤三:感受

Someplace { Past / Present / Feelings

易错点提示

1. 注意时态。描述过去要用一般过去时,而描述现状要用一般现在时。
2. 不能遗漏要点。
3. 要恰当地运用连接词。

参考词汇和句型

单词	before; because; offer; thousand; bright; building; computer; library
短语	five years ago; hundreds of; go to school; in front of; give sb. the chance
句型	... couldn't ... because ...; ... there are ...; You can see ...

典例

假如你是《中学生报》的记者,请根据下面材料写一篇100词左右的报道。

背景:这所学校建于五年前,当时数以百计的儿童因贫困而失学。后来人们为"希望工程"捐款300多万元,当地政府用这笔钱兴建了这所学校。

现状:教师70人,学生1 000人,教学楼内有20个教室,微机室、图书馆各一个。教学楼前有一个1 200平方米的操场。学生们都很努力,因为是"希望工程"给了他们学习的机会。

【范文欣赏】

The school was built five years ago. Before that **hundreds of** children couldn't go to school because they were very poor. People offered the local government over three million *yuan* for "Project Hope". The money was used for building the school.

Now **there are seventy teachers and a thousand pupils in this school.** You can see the teaching-building with 20 bright classrooms, a computer room and a library. **In front of** the building pupils can play on the playground **with an area of** 1,200 square metres.

The students there study very hard **because** they all know that **it is "Project Hope" that gives them the chance to go to school.**

【点评】

本文运用"三步法"介绍了这所学校的过去与现在。1. 第一段描写这所学校建立前的情况。2. 第二段介绍当前的情况。3. 第三段写结论,描述学生的感受。

添彩点: 1. 使用了强调句"it is... that..."和there be句型。2. hundreds of, in front of, with an area of...的使用使文章增色不少。

"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见226页)

单元知识浓缩

Mr Chen has l_____[1] in Sunshine Town s_____[2] he was born. At first, he lived in the n_____[3] part of town with his parents. When he got m_____[4] in 1965, he and his w_____[5] moved two b_____[6] away and they have lived in that flat since then.

Now, life is better. However, Mr Chen sometimes feels a bit l_____[7] because some of his friends m_____[8] away. It has become i_____[9] for them to see each other as often as before. Anyway, it's good to see amazing c_____[10] in the town.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Travelling

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠下文铺垫法(31 页)
写作方法	◇三步法写出游短文(47 页)
解题方法	1 辨析法(27,32,39 页)　2 句意理解法(28 页) 3 语法判定法(36,37,38 页)　4 语境理解法(216,217 页) 5 细节理解法(216,217 页)　6 推理判断法(216,217 页) 7 上下文联系法(217 页)　8 逻辑推理法(217 页) 9 题眼法(217 页)　10 结构分析法(227 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论旅游		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	travelling *n.* 旅行	go to …for a holiday 去某地度假 have/has been to…去过…… the capital of… ……的首都
	Period 2	miss *vt.* 想念,思念 cartoon *n.* 卡通片,动画片 fantastic *adj.* 极好的,美妙的 speed *n.* 速度 such *det.* & *pron.* 这样的(人或物) magic *n.* 魔法 pie *n.* 派,馅饼 feel *vt.* 感觉到,意识到 ride *n.* 乘坐 couple *n.* 两人,两件事物;几个人,几件事物	have /has been in…在……呆过 have a fantastic time 玩得高兴 go to…by underground 乘地铁去…… move at high speed 高速行驶 through the ride 在行程当中 hurry to…匆忙去…… the best part of the day 一天中最好的部分 can't stop doing sth. 禁不住做某事 a couple of 一对/双……;几件/个…… at the end of 在……的最后 have /has gone to…去了……
	Period 3	sand *n.* 沙;沙滩 countryside *n.* 农村,乡下 over *adv.* 结束 marry *vi.* &*vt.* 结婚,嫁,娶 dead *adj.* 死的	be on 上映,放映　be over 结束 be a member of… 是……的一名成员
	Period 4	except *prep.* 除了……以外 mountain *n.* 高山 business *n.* 公事;商业;生意 direct *adj.* 笔直的,径直的 point *n.* 要点	all year round 一年到头,整年 on cold snowy days 在寒冷的下雪天 at that time of year 在一年的那个时候 on business 出差
	Period 5	delicious *adj.* 美味的,可口的 airport *n.* 机场	leave for …动身去…… three hours and a half 三个半小时
句型	①I've been to … 我去过…… ②We haven't seen each other …我们……没有见面了。 ③We hurried to …我们匆忙去…… ④…couldn't stop ………情不自禁地…… ⑤I know you've gone to …我知道你去……了。		
语法	现在完成时(Ⅱ)		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—Hey, Eddie. Where are you going?
—I'm going to South Hill for my holiday.
—Really? I've **been**[1] there before. Can I **join**[2] you?
—OK. Get ready!
—What are you doing, Hobo?
—I'm getting all my things. I'm so **excited**[3]!
—Take the bag, Eddie. Let's go.
—**I don't think**[4] it'll be a holiday for me.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Where have you been on holiday?

The Class 1, Grade 8 students want to find out more about different places. They are writing about their holidays.

Task

Prepare a fact file and write about one of your holidays.

Welcome to the unit

Places of interest

A **Daniel and Millie are looking at some pictures of places of interest from around the world. Help them write the correct names under the pictures.**

the Great Wall	the Leaning Tower of Pisa
the Little Mermaid	the Statue of Liberty
the Sydney Opera House	Tower Bridge

B **Daniel and Millie are talking about the places in Part A. Work in pairs and talk to your partner about different places. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

—What's this, Millie?
—It's the Little Mermaid.
—Where is it?
—It's in Copenhagen, the **capital**[5] of Denmark.
—What's special about it?
—It comes from the story by Hans Christian Andersen.
—Have you ever been there?
—No, I haven't.

卡通漫画

——嘿，埃迪，你要去哪里？
——我要去南山度假。
——真的吗？ 我以前去过那儿，我能加入你吗？
——好的，去准备一下吧！
——你在干什么，霍波？
——我正在准备我所有的东西，我是如此兴奋！
——带上包，埃迪，让我们出发吧。
——我想对我而言，这不会是假期了。

假期你去过哪儿？

八年级 1 班的学生想要找到更多有关不同的地方的信息，他们正在写有关他们的假期。

任务

准备一个事实档案，并且描写一个你的假期。

单元导入

名胜古迹

A 丹尼尔和米莉正在看世界上一些地方的名胜古迹的图片。 帮助他们在图片下方写出正确的名称。

长城	比萨斜塔
小美人鱼	自由女神像
悉尼歌剧院	塔桥

B 丹尼尔和米莉正在讨论 A 部分的地区。 结对练习，与你的同伴谈论一下不同的地方，用下面的对话作为范例。

——米莉，这是什么？
——它是小美人鱼。
——它是哪儿的？
——它在哥本哈根，丹麦的首都。
——它有什么特别的吗？
——它来自汉斯 · 克里斯蒂安 · 安徒生的故事。
——你曾经去过那儿吗？
——不，我没有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶have /has been to

考向：表示“去过某地（现在已经回来）”。地点如果是副词，to 省略。

eg：（绥化中考）Victor and Rick **have been to** Shanghai on business many times.
维克托和里克已经因公去上海好多次了。

【考题在线 1】—Paris is a wonderful place.
—So it is. I _____ there twice.
（凉山）
A. have been　　B. have gone
C. went　　D. will go

点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——巴黎是一个很棒的地方。——的确，我去过两次了。have gone 去了某地（还未回来）；have been 去过某地（已经回来），根据句意可知道用 have been。

❷join /dʒɔɪn/ *vt.* 参加；加入

eg：Why don't you **join** an English language club to practice speaking English?
你为什么不参加英语俱乐部练习说英语呢？

考向[重点]：辨析 join，join in 与 take part in

词条	含义	示例
join	侧重指加入某党派、团体、组织、人群等，并成为其中一员，相当于 become a member of	He **joined** the army five years ago. 他 5 年前参了军。
join in	参加某一种具体活动，常用于：join sb. in +活动名称	Why not **join** us **in** the games? 为什么不和我们一起加入比赛呢？
take part in	意为“参加会议或群众性的活动”，强调在活动中充当一定的角色并发挥积极的作用。	We should **take** an active **part in** school activities. 我们应该积极参加学校的活动。

【考题在线 2】你多久参加一次社会活动？
（常州改编）
How often do you _____ _____ _____ a social activity?

❸excited /ɪkˈsaɪtɪd/ *adj.* 兴奋的，激动的

eg：She was **excited** to learn the news.
她听到这消息很兴奋。

考向[重点]：辨析 excited 与 exciting

词条	含义	示例
excited	通常用来形容人，表示“（某人）感到激动的”。人 + be/get + excited。	She is very **excited** about winning the first prize. 赢得第一名，她激动不已。
exciting	通常用来形容物；表示“（某物）令人激动的”。	That is an **exciting** film. 那是一部令人激动的电影。

速记小筏

一语辨异：She is **excited** to hear the **exciting** news. 听到这个令人激动的消息，她很激动。

拓展 类似用法的词还有
tired 感到疲倦的
tiring 令人疲倦的
bored 觉得厌烦的
boring 令人厌烦的
interested 感兴趣的
interesting 有趣的
frightened 感到害怕的
frightening 令人害怕的

【考题在线 3】—What do you think of the movie *Zootopia*?
—It is _____ one I've ever seen.
（宿迁）
A. more excited　　B. more exciting
C. the most excited　　D. the most exciting

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：——你认为电影《疯狂动物城》怎么样？——它是我看过的_____一部电影。excited 表“感到激动的”；exciting 表“令人激动的”，排除 A 和 C。又根据答句强调的意思可知，用形容词的最高级形式，表示“这是我看到过的最激动人心的一部电影”。

❹I don't think ...我认为……不……

考向[易错点]：think，believe 等动词，后接否定的宾语从句时，其否定形式要转移到 think，believe 等词的前面，这叫否定前移。

eg：I am sorry, but I **don't think** I know you.
对不起，不过我想我并不认识你。

I **don't believe** she knows French.
我认为她不会法语。

❺capital /ˈkæpɪtl/ *n.* **首都**

eg：Paris is the **capital** of France.
巴黎是法国的首都。

考向：常用结构：the capital of + 国家“……国家的首都”。提问“某个国家的首都是哪个城市”的问句应为“Which city is the capital of ...?”。

拓展 capital 作名词还可意为“大写字母，资金”。

eg：The child writes his name in **capitals**.
这个孩子用大写字母写他的名字。

考题在线答案
1. A　2. take part in　3. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 227 页)

一、单项选择

1. Anyone who is good at singing can _____ the activity in our school. （新疆阜康米泉）
A. take part in
B. take off
C. take out
D. take care of

2. —Where is Mr Brown?
—He _____ Australia. He _____ there last year. （铜仁）【导学号：9577700】
A. has been to; has been
B. has been to; has gone
C. has gone to; went
D. went; went

3. What's the capital of Denmark?
A. London.
B. Copenhagen.
C. Sydney.
D. New York.

4. When you come next time, please _____ your book here.
A. take
B. bring
C. get
D. carry

5. I _____ think he _____ come tomorrow.
A. don't; can
B. not; can't
C. /; can't
D. not; can

二、根据汉语意思完成句子

6. 北京是中国的首都。
Beijing is _____ _____ _____ China.

7. 我的爸爸到过上海很多次。
My father _____ _____ _____ Shanghai many times.

8. 参观乡村美景真令人兴奋！
How _____ it is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ of the countryside!

9. 我认为他明天七点钟之前不会到达那里。
I _____ _____ he will _____ _____ before seven o'clock tomorrow.

10. 你曾经去过意大利观看比萨斜塔吗？
_____ _____ _____ _____ Italy to see the Leaning Tower?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A A trip to Hong Kong

Kitty is visiting Hong Kong during the winter holiday. She has written a letter to Millie about Hong Kong Disneyland. Here is the letter.

课文朗读A

Hi Millie,

How are you? **We haven't seen each other since last week.**❶ I **miss**/mɪs/❷ you so much! My parents and I have been in Hong Kong for two days. We're having a **fantastic** /fænˈtæstɪk/❸ time here. Today we spent **the whole day**❹ at Disneyland.

We got to the park by underground. First, we had fun on Space Mountain—an indoor roller coaster in the dark. It moved at high **speed**/spiːd/❺ and was really exciting! We were screaming and laughing through the ride/raɪd/.

Next, we **hurried to**❻ a restaurant to have a quick meal. On the way, we met some Disney cartoon/kɑːˈtuːn/ characters, **such**/sʌtʃ/ **as**❼ Snow White and Mickey Mouse. They were so cute.

Everybody got excited when a parade of Disney characters began later in the afternoon. It was the best part of the day. I ran after them and **couldn't stop taking photos**❽. After the parade, we watched a 4-D film. It was like **magic** /ˈmædʒɪk/❾. We could even smell the apple pie/paɪ/ and **feel**/fiːl/❿ the wind.

Then we did some shopping. I bought a **couple**/ˈkʌpl/⓫ of key rings for classmates. I'm sure you'll love them.

At the end of⓬ the day, we watched the fireworks in front of Sleeping Beauty Castle. The castle looked bright and beautiful under the fireworks.

I know you've gone to Hainan. Hope you've enjoyed yourself there!

See you soon.

Yours,

Kitty

B About Hong Kong Disneyland

B1 Kitty is back in Sunshine Town. Amy is asking Kitty about her trip. Help Kitty answer Amy's questions.

Amy: Who did you go to Hong Kong with?

阅读

A 一次去香港的旅行

基蒂寒假期间正在游览香港。她写信告诉米莉关于香港迪士尼乐园的情况。下面是信的内容。

嗨，米莉：

你好吗？自从上周我们就没有见面了。我十分想念你！我的父母和我在香港已经呆了两天。我们在这儿玩得很愉快。今天我们在迪士尼乐园玩了一整天。

我们乘地铁去公园。首先，我们在太空山玩得很开心——一种黑暗的室内过山车。它高速运转，并且真的令人兴奋。我们尖叫着，笑着滑过全程。

接下来，我们急忙去一个餐厅吃了快餐。在路上，我们遇见了一些迪士尼卡通人物。例如，白雪公主和米老鼠。它们是如此的可爱。

之后，下午迪士尼人物开始游行时，每个人都很兴奋。这是一天中最佳的部分。我在它们后面跑并且忍不住不停地拍照片。游行后，我们看了一部四维立体电影。它像魔法一样，我们甚至能闻到苹果派的味道并感觉到风。

然后我们去购物。我给同学们买了几个钥匙环。我确信你会喜爱它们的。

在一天快结束的时候，我们在睡美人城堡前看烟火。在烟火下，城堡看起来明亮美丽。

我知道你已经去了海南，希望你在那儿玩得开心！

再见。

你的朋友，

基蒂

B 关于香港迪士尼乐园

B1 基蒂已回到了阳光镇，埃米正在问基蒂关于她的旅行的事。帮助基蒂回答埃米的问题。

埃米：你和谁一块去的香港？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Kitty: I went there with (1) _____.
Amy: Where did you go during your stay there?
Kitty: We went to (2) _____.
Amy: How did you get there?
Kitty: We got there (3) _____.
Amy: How long did you stay in the park?
Kitty: We stayed there for (4) _____.
Amy: Did you enjoy yourselves there?
Kitty: Sure. We had (5) _____.

B2 After talking with Kitty, Amy is making notes of how Kitty spent her day at Disneyland. Help Amy complete the notes below.

A day at Disneyland

Had fun on (1) _____
Hurried to have a (2) _____ and met Disney (3) _____ on the way
Watched a (4) _____ of Disney characters
Watched a (5) _____
Did some (6) _____
Watched (7) _____ in front of the castle

B3 Kitty is showing Amy her photos the other day. Complete their conversation with the words in Kitty's letter on pages 22 and 23.

Kitty: I took lots of photos at Hong Kong Disneyland, Amy.
Amy: Oh, let me have a look. Is that Mickey Mouse?
Kitty: Yes. He looked so (1) _____.
Amy: What's in this photo?
Kitty: It's Space Mountain, an (2) _____ roller coaster. It moved at high (3) _____ and we were (4) _____ and laughing through the (5) _____.
Amy: What do you think was the best part of the day?
Kitty: I think the parade of Disney (6) _____ was really wonderful.
Amy: Was the film in the park interesting?
Kitty: Yes. The 4-D film was like (7) _____. We could even smell the apple (8) _____.
Amy: Did you go shopping there?
Kitty: Yes. I bought (9) _____ key rings. Here's one for you.
Amy: It's nice. Thank you.

B4 Kitty had a good time at Hong Kong Disneyland. Find the sentences in her letter that show her happiness.

基蒂：我和（1）_____去那儿的。
埃米：你们呆在那里的期间去了哪儿？
基蒂：我们去了（2）_____
埃米：你们怎么到那儿的？
基蒂：我们（3）_____到那儿的。
埃米：你们在公园里呆了多长时间？
基蒂：我们在那儿呆了（4）_____。
埃米：你们在那儿玩得开心吗？
基蒂：当然，我们（5）_____。

B2 在和基蒂谈完后，埃米正在记录基蒂在迪士尼乐园如何度过她的一天。帮助埃米完成下面的笔记。

在迪士尼的一天

在（1）_____玩得开心
急忙去（2）_____，并且在路上遇见迪士尼（3）_____
观看一个迪士尼人物的（4）_____
观看一个（5）_____
进行（6）_____
在城堡前观看（7）_____

B3 基蒂正在给埃米展示她那天的照片。用22页和23页基蒂信中的单词完成她们的对话。

基蒂：我在香港迪士尼乐园拍了许多照片，埃米。
埃米：哦，让我看一下。那个是米老鼠吗？
基蒂：是，它看起来如此的（1）___。
埃米：这张照片里是什么？
基蒂：它是太空山，一个（2）_____过山车。它高（3）___运转，并且整个（5）_____我们（4）___和大笑。
埃米：你认为一天中最好的部分是什么？
基蒂：我认为迪士尼（6）___的游行的确精彩。
埃米：公园里的电影有趣吗？
基蒂：是的，四维立体电影像（7）___。我们甚至可以闻到苹果（8）___。
埃米：你在那儿购物了吗？
基蒂：是的，我买了（9）___钥匙环。这一个给你。
埃米：它真好，谢谢你。

B4 基蒂在香港迪士尼乐园玩得开心，在她的信中找出能体现她快乐的句子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**下文铺垫法**：在写信的开头经常用 We haven't seen each other since last week. 这样的句子，表示很长时间没联系了，为下文做好铺垫。

❷**miss** /mɪs/ *vt.* **想念；思念**

eg：Do you **miss** your brother?
你想念你的哥哥吗？

拓展 miss 作及物动词，还可意为“迟到，赶不上，错过”。

eg：If I don't leave now, I'll **miss** my train.
如果我现在不走，我就赶不上火车了。

【考题在线 1】 Mary, I shall _____(思念) our pleasant talks when you leave. (徐州改编)

❸**fantastic** /fænˈtæstɪk/ *adj.* **极好的，美妙的**

eg：What a **fantastic** song!
多么美妙的一首歌啊！

考向：[重点] have a fantastic time 意为“玩得愉快”，相当于 have a good/wonderful /great time, enjoy oneself, have fun。后接 doing sth. 意为“做某事很开心”。

eg：We **had a fantastic** time in the theme park yesterday.
昨天我们在主题公园玩得很愉快。
I **have fun playing** games because it gives me time to be with friends, learn new things, and work as a team.
比赛令我快乐，因为它给了我与朋友们在一起，学习新事物和团队合作的时间。

❹**the whole day 整天**

eg：You shouldn't watch TV **the whole day**.
你不应该整天看电视。

考向一：“限定词 + whole + 单数名词”意为“整个的……”。

eg：He has been away **the whole morning**.
他整个上午都不在。

考向二[易错点]：辨析 all 与 whole
all 和 whole 在名词短语中的位置是不同的，all 必须放在定冠词 the 或物主代词之前，而 whole 必须放在定冠词或物主代词之后，紧跟在所修饰的名词之前。

速记小筏

一语辨异：**All** my classmates went to the park and enjoyed themselves the **whole** day. 我所有的同学都去了公园开心地玩了一整天。

❺**speed** /spiːd/ *n.* **速度**

eg：He drove off at high **speed**.
他驱车飞驰而去。

考向[重点]：at high/low speed 意为“以高/低速”。at a/the speed of…以……的速度。

eg：In the past few years, our hometown has developed **at high speed**. 在过去的几年里，我们家乡一直在快速发展。
The car is running **at a/the speed of** 90 kilometers an hour. 这辆汽车正以每小时 90 公里的速度前行。

拓展 speed 还可作动词，speed up 意为“加快速度”。

❻**hurry to …匆忙去……**

eg：He **hurried to** school without breakfast.
他没吃早饭就匆忙去上学了。

考向：hurry to …相当于 go to …in a hurry。

eg：Tom **hurried to** the park. = Tom went to the park **in a hurry**. 汤姆匆忙去了公园。

❼**such as 例如**

eg：She likes eating fruits, **such as** apples, oranges, pineapples and so on.
她喜欢吃水果，例如苹果，橘子，菠萝等等。

考向：辨析 such as, for example 与 like

词汇	用法
such as	用来列举同类人或事物中的几个例子，只能列举并列的部分内容
for example	一般以同类事物或人中的“一个”举例进行说明，作插入语，用逗号隔开，可置于句首，句中或句末
like	也常用来举例，可与 such as 互换，但当 such as 有逗号与前面内容分隔时不能互换

eg：**For example**, my father likes hunting.
例如，我爸爸喜欢打猎。
Frank enjoys playing many kinds of sports **like/such as** swimming, running and playing basketball. 弗兰克喜欢多种运动，例如游泳，跑步和打篮球。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线2】There are many kinds of pollution around us, _____ air pollution, soil pollution, noise pollution and light pollution.

A. such as　　B. for example

C. as well as　　D. because of

8 can't stop doing sth. 意为"禁不住做某事,忍不住去做某事",相当于"can't help doing sth."。

eg: I **couldn't stop smiling** when I heard the good news.

当我听到这个好消息时,忍不住笑了。

9 magic /ˈmædʒɪk/ *n.* 魔法

eg: We all know that is **magic**.

我们都知道那是魔法。

考向一:magic 还可表示魔术,是不可数名词。

eg: Do you know how to do the **magic**?

你知道如何变魔术吗?

考向二:magic 还可作形容词,意为"魔法的;有魔力的"。

eg: Do you know the **magic** words?

你知道魔法咒语吗?

10 feel /fiːl/ *vt.* 感觉到,意识到

eg: I can **feel** the warm sun on my back.

我背上感受到了阳光的温暖。

考向一:feel 的过去式为 felt,过去分词为 felt。

考向二[重点]:feel 的用法

词性	含义及用法	示例
实义动词	触,摸;后接名词或代词。	Can you tell me what it is by **feeling** it? 通过摸它,你能告诉我这是什么东西吗?
系动词	feel 为系动词中的感官动词,后跟形容词作表语,主语可以是人,也可以是物。	I **feel** cold. 我觉得冷。 The stone **feels** cold. 石头摸起来凉。
名词	触觉	I don't like the **feel** of the blanket against my skin. 我不喜欢毯子碰在我的皮肤上的那种感觉。

【考题在线3】This bed _____ soft and comfortable. (南宁)

A. sounds　B. tastes　C. feels　D. smells

点拨:本题用辨析法。考查系动词辨析。sound 听起来;taste 尝起来;feel 摸起来;smell 闻起来。分析句意可推知:这张床应该是摸起来很柔软,很舒服。



方法真题练:辨析法

11 couple /ˈkʌpl/ *n.* 两人,两件事物;几个人,几件事物

eg: They were an interesting **couple**.

他们是有趣的一对。

考向:a couple of 意为"一对;几件事物"。

eg: They walked **a couple of** miles.

他们步行了几英里。

12 at the end of 在……末/终点

eg: **At the end of** the road you can see the post office. 在这条路的尽头你可以看到邮局。

考向[重点]:辨析 at the end of, by the end of 与 in the end

at the end of	意为"在……结束时;在……结尾/末端",既可以用来表示时间,也可以用来表示地点。	Why do these trains always leave **at the end of** the day? 为什么这些火车总是在一天要结束的时候才发车?
by the end of	只能表示时间,意为"在……之前;到……为止"。常用于完成时态,也用于将来时态。	**By the end of** 2019, the area of the town will reach two million square kilometers. 到2019年底,这个镇的面积将达到200万平方公里。
in the end	意为"最后,最终",相当于 at last/finally。	Although he had failed many times, he didn't give up and succeeded **in the end**. 尽管他失败了很多次,但他并没有放弃,最终取得了成功。

考题在线答案

1. miss　2. A　3. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见227页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. We could smell the apple _____(派) and feel the wind.
2. I know how you _____(想念) your mother.
3. He is going to perform the _____(魔术) at the party.
4. Because of the universal two-child policy, the young _____(夫妇) in our school plan to have a second child. (恩施改编)
5. You can watch different kinds of _____(动画片) on the Internet.

二、单项选择

6. Come and touch the silk skirt. It feels _____.
   A. soft
   B. softly
   C. hard
   D. well
7. _____, or we will be late.
   A. Stay cool
   B. Stay up
   C. Keep healthy
   D. Hurry up
8. It takes us less time to go to Beijing because the _____ of trains has increased a lot. (莱芜)
   A. price
   B. speed
   C. space
   D. service
9. The visitors couldn't _____ photos with Disney characters in the park.
   A. stopped to take
   B. stopped take
   C. stop taking
   D. stop take
10. —What did you see when you went into the room?
    —We found _____ socks on the bed, but we didn't know whose they were.
    A. a couple of
    B. a piece of
    C. a bit of
    D. a little of

三、用方框中所给短语填空

such as, at the end of, at a speed of, for example, by underground

11. The train is travelling _____ sixty miles an hour.
12. A lot of animals are very lovely, _____ rabbits and pandas.
13. Can you speak any other languages, _____, French?
14. I used to go to work _____ when I was in London.
15. There is a clothes shop _____ the street.

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 下雨了,他们不得不在旅馆里呆了一整天。
    It was raining; they had to stay in the hotel _____ _____ _____.
17. 去年我去了西藏,在那儿度过了一段美妙的时光。
    I went to Tibet last year and _____ _____ _____ _____ there.
18. 今天早晨他起床晚了,没吃早饭他就匆忙上学去了。
    He got up late this morning and he _____ _____ _____ without having breakfast.
19. 他们情不自禁地为运动员们鼓掌。
    They _____ _____ _____ for the players.
20. 你曾经去过游乐园吗? (鞍山)
    _____ you ever _____ _____ an amusement park?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using *have/has been* and *have/has gone*

We use **have/has been** to express the idea that someone went to a place and has already come back. It refers to an experience.

Millie and Amy **have been** to South Hill. They want to go there again.

Sandy **has never been** to South Hill. She wants to go with them.

We use **have/has gone** to express the idea that someone went to a place but has not yet returned.

Kitty and her family **have gone** to Hong Kong. They will come back next week.

Suzy is not at home at the moment. She **has gone** to the bookshop.

About travels

A1 The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about their classmates and families. Help them complete the sentences with have/has been or have/has gone.

1. Millie isn't here. She _____to the library.
2. Peter and Simon _____just _____to the library. They borrowed some interesting books.
3. My cousin _____to Xi'an twice.
4. My parents _____to Xi'an and they'll stay there for a week.
5. Daniel won't be with us at the party. He _____ to Shanghai.

A2 Daniel and Millie are chatting at a weekend. Complete their conversation with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Daniel: I haven't seen Mr Wu for days. Where (1)_____he _____(go)?

Millie: He (2)_____(go) to Tianjin to attend a meeting.

Daniel: (3) _____ you _____ (be) anywhere recently?

Millie: Yes, I (4)_____(be) to Hainan with my parents.

Daniel: Oh, that's great! (5)_____you _____(be) to Sanya?

Millie: Sure, we (6)_____(be) to the beach there. Look at these photos.

语法

A 使用“have（has） been”和“have（has） gone”

我们使用“have（has）been”来表达某人去过某地而且已经回来了。它表示一次经历。

米莉和埃米去过南山，她们想再次去那儿。

桑迪从来没有去过南山，她想和他们一起去。

我们用“have（has） gone”来表达某人去了某地但还没有回来。

基蒂和她的家人去了香港，他们将在下周回来。

苏茜现在不在家，她去了书店。

关于旅游

A1 八年级1班的学生们正在谈论他们的同学和家庭。帮助他们用“have（has）been”或“have（has）gone”完成句子。

1. 米莉不在这儿，她_____图书馆。
2. 彼得和西蒙刚才_____图书馆，他们借了一些有趣的书。
3. 我的表哥_____西安两次。
4. 我的父母_____西安，并且他们会在那儿呆一个星期。
5. 丹尼尔不会和我们参加聚会。他_____上海。

A2 丹尼尔和米莉在一个周末正在谈话。用括号中所给的动词的正确形式完成他们的对话。

丹尼尔：我已经数天没有见到吴老师了。他（1）____（去）哪儿了?

米莉：他（2）____（去）天津参加会议了。

丹尼尔：你最近（3）____（去）哪儿了吗?

米莉：是的，我和我的父母（4）____（去）海南。

丹尼尔：哦，太棒了！你们（5）____（去）三亚吗?

米莉：当然，我们在那儿（6）____（去）海滩。看这些照片。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Daniel: The beach is beautiful. I see Andy playing on the sand/sænd/❶ too.

Millie: Yes. We went there with his family.

Daniel: I see. By the way, shall we invite Andy to go for a picnic tomorrow?

Millie: Andy isn't here this weekend. He and his parents (7)_____(go) to the countryside. They'll be back tomorrow afternoon.

B Verbs with *for* and *since*

We use **for** when we talk about a period of time, and we use **since** when we talk about a time point in the past.

Mr Dong has lived here **for** many years.

Mr Dong has lived here **since** he was born.

Some verbs, such as **come**, **go**, **buy** and **leave**, can be used in the present perfect tense, but they cannot be used with **for** or **since** in positive statements.

× He **has left** Beijing **for** a week.

√ He **has not left** Beijing yet.

√ He **has been away** from Beijing for a week.

× He **has bought** a car **since** 2007.

√ He **has not bought** any new car **since** 2007.

√ He **has had** a car **since** 2007.

If we want to express a continuous state, we can use another way like this:

Verb	Used for a continuous state	Example
begin/start	have/has **been on**❷	The film has been on for 20 minutes.
finish/stop	have/has been **over**/ˈəʊvə(r)/❸	The parade has been over for hours.
come/go/arrive	have/has been in/at	Kitty has been in Hong Kong for two days.
leave	have/has been away	She has been away from home since last Tuesday.
borrow	have/has kept	She has kept this book since last week.
join	have/has been in have/has been a member of	Simon has been a member of the Football Club since last year.
marry/ˈmæri/❹	have/has been married	They have been married for 15 years.
die	have/has been **dead**/ded/❺	The fish have been dead for some time.

丹尼尔：海滩很美丽。我看见安迪也在海滩上玩。

米莉：是的，我们和他家一起去的那儿。

丹尼尔：我明白了。顺便问一下，我们可以邀请安迪明天去野餐吗？

米莉：安迪这个周末不在这里。他和他的父母(7)_____(去)乡下。他们明天下午回来。

B 动词与 for 和 since

当我们讨论一段时间时，我们使用“for”；当我们讨论过去的某一时间点时，我们使用 since。

董先生住在这儿很多年了。

董先生自从出生就住在这儿。

一些动词，像 come, go, buy 和 leave，能用在现在完成时中。但在肯定句中它们不能与“for”或“since”连用。

×他离开北京一个星期了。

√他还没有离开北京。

√他离开北京一个星期了。

×他从 2007 年买了一辆汽车。

√自从 2007 年他就没有买任何新车。

√他从 2007 年拥有了一辆车。

如果我们要表达一个延续的状态，我们可以使用像这样的另一种表达方式：

动词	用来表示延续的状态	例子
开始	已经开始	这部电影已经开始 20 分钟了。
结束，停	已经结束	游行已经结束数小时了。
来，去，到达	已经在	基蒂在香港已经两天了。
离开	已经离开	她自从上个星期二就不在家。
借	已经借	自从上周她就借了这本书。
加入	已经在/已经成为……的一员	西蒙从去年起就成了足球俱乐部的一员。
结婚	已经结婚	他们已经结婚 15 年了。
死亡	已经死了	那些鱼已经死了一段时间了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

More about Kitty's trip

Kitty is telling Millie about her holiday in Hong Kong on the phone. Complete what she says with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

My parents and I (1) _____(arrive) in Hong Kong on the first day of the winter holiday. We (2) _____(be) here for three days.

I (3) _____(borrow) a book about Hong Kong a week ago. It's very useful. I (4) _____(keep) it with me for a few days. It helps me learn more about Hong Kong.

Now it's noon and we're in Ocean Park. The first dolphin show (5) _____(begin) at 11:30 a. m. It (6) _____(be) on for about half an hour. The show is really exciting.

更多关于基蒂的旅行的情况

基蒂正在电话里告诉米莉关于她在香港的假期的情况，用括号中所给的动词的正确形式完成她说的话。

在寒假的第一天，我的父母和我（1）_____（到达）香港。我们在这里（2）_____（呆）三天。

一周前我（3）_____（借）一本关于香港的书。它非常有用。我（4）_____（借）几天。它帮助我了解更多关于香港的东西。

现在是中午，我们在海洋公园。第一场海豚表演在早上11:30（5）_____（开始）。它（6）_____（已经）半个小时了。表演真的令人激动。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶sand /sænd/ *n.* 沙；沙滩

eg: The boy filled the bottle with **sand**.
那个男孩用沙子把瓶子装满了。

考向：sand 表示"沙滩"时可用复数形式 sands。

eg: The children played on the **sands**.
孩子们在沙滩上玩耍。

【考题在线 1】这位画家如此有创意，他能用沙子做出不同的变化图片。（葫芦岛改编）

The artist is so _____. He can make different changing pictures _____.

❷be on 上映，放映

考向：be on "上映，放映"，与 begin/start 意思相同，但是 begin/ start 为瞬间动词，不能与时间段连用。

eg: The film has **been on** for ten minutes.
电影已经开演十分钟了。
The film **starts** at five o'clock in the afternoon.
电影下午五点开始。

【考题在线 2】—Hurry up, the movie *Wolf Warrior Ⅱ* _____ for 10 minutes.
—OK, I'm coming right now. （龙东改编）
A. began　　B. has begun
C. has been on

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：——快点，电影《战狼 2》已经演了十分钟了。——好的，我马上就到。根据 for 10 minutes 可知用现在完成时，同时也要用表延续的 be on。

❸over /ˈəʊvə(r)/ *adv.* 结束

eg: By the time we arrived, the meeting had been **over**.
我们到达时，会议已经结束了。

考向：over 的用法

词性	含义	示例
介词	在……上方	A lamp was hanging **over** the table. 桌子上方挂着一盏灯。
	遍及	He has travelled **over** the whole country. 他已经游遍了全国。
	多于；超过	He has lived in Beijing **over** two years. 他住在北京已两年多了。
	在……期间	He came to town **over** the weekend. 周末他进城了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

副词	翻转过来	Turn the page **over** and you'll see a map. 把这页翻过去你就可以看见一张地图。
	完了;结束	Our holidays will soon be **over**. 我们的假期很快就要结束了。

搭配:all over the world 遍及全世界
go over 仔细检查
over and over again 反复地

速记小筏

一语巧记:She dreamed of travelling **all over the world**. So she **went over** the map **over and over again**. 她梦想去环游世界,所以她反复地研究地图。

【考题在线 3】Class is _____. Let's go home together.
A. over B. begin
C. beginning D. finish

❹**marry** /ˈmæri/ *vi.* & *vt.* **结婚,嫁,娶**

eg: He is going to **marry** Jane.
他将与简结婚。

考向[易错点]:marry 的用法

词条	含义及用法	示例
marry sb./ get married to sb.	一般不与介词 with 连用,表示动作,意为"和某人结婚",不能和表示一段时间的状语连用。	She **married** a teacher. = She got **married to** a teacher. 她嫁给了一位教师。
be married	表示状态,能和一段时间连用,常用于完成时中。	They have **been married** for 5 years /since 5 years ago. 他们已经结婚5年了。

【考题在线 4】My grandparents _____ for over 60 years and they love each other very much. (宿迁)
A. have been married
B. got married
C. were married
D. have got married

点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:我祖父母已经结婚 60 多年了,他们彼此非常恩爱。根据时间状语 for over 60 years 用现在完成时态;和 for 引导的时间状语连用需要用 be married 表示"已婚"状态,而不能用终止性动词短语 get married。

❺**dead** /ded/ *adj.* **死的**

eg: That is a **dead** dog.
那是一条死狗。

考向:dead 的名词形式为 death,动词形式为 die,其动词形式的现在分词形式为 dying,过去式为 died,过去分词为 died。

速记小筏

一语巧记:She **died** of cancer. She has been **dead** for two years. I am very sad for her **death**.
她死于癌症,她死了两年了,我为她的死感到很难过。

【考题在线 5】His grandmother _____ for 6 years. And he still misses her very much. (西宁)
A. died
B. has died
C. has been dead
D. has been died

点拨:本题用语法判定法。考查现在完成时。句意为:他的奶奶已经去世六年了。他仍然非常想念她。根据时间状语"for 6 years"可知,谓语应用现在完成时,且要用延续性动词。die 为瞬间动词,不能表示持续性状态,不能与"for 6 years"连用。dead 是形容词,和 be 动词搭配表示去世的状态。

考题在线答案
1. creative; with sand 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1：have/has been 与 have/has gone

考向： have/has been 与 have/has gone 的用法



(1) have（has）been to ... 表示某人去过某地，而且已从某地返回。它讲的是过去的情况，强调去过或没去过，着重于到目前的一个结果。常与 ever，never，before，twice，three times 等连用。

eg：I have never been to Sanya before.
我以前从未去过三亚。
Mr Zhang **has been to** America **twice**.
张先生去过美国两次。

(2) have（has）gone to ... 意思是“去了某地”，表示现在人可能在去的途中或已经在那儿了，总之不在说话的现场，因此，它通常用于第三人称，不用于第一或第二人称。

eg：—Where is your brother?
你哥哥在哪儿？
—He **has gone to** the library.
他去图书馆了。

(3) have（has）been to ... 和 have（has）gone to ... 不能和一段时间连用。但 have（has）been + 副词时，可与一段时间连用；而 have（has）gone + 副词不能和一段时间连用。
遇到地点副词 here，there，home，abroad 时，无须加 to。

eg：She **has been there** for three days.
她去那儿已三天了。
I **have been here** many times.
我来这儿好多次了。
She isn't at home. She **has gone abroad**.
她不在家。她出国了。

(4) have（has）been + in/at some place 则表示某人留在某地。也可和部分名词搭配表示“处在某状态中”，并常和表示一段时间的时间状语搭配。

eg：He **has been in** Beijing for two years.
他在北京已有两年了。
I **have been at** the bus stop for half an hour.
我在公共汽车站有半个小时了。

【考题在线1】 —Why are you worried?
—I'm expecting a call from my daughter. She _____ New York three days ago.（常州）

A. has gone to
B. has been to
C. has been in
D. went to

点拨：本题用**语法判定法**。根据 three days ago 表示“三天前”可知用一般过去时，排除表示完成时的 A、B、C 三项。has gone to“已经去了某地”；has been to“曾经去过某地”；has been in“一直呆在某地”。由句意可知，她三天前去纽约了。

【考题在线2】 —It seems that you have learnt a lot about Chengdu.
—Of course. I _____ here for ten years.（贵港）

A. have been in
B. have been
C. have come
D. came to

点拨：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：——似乎你很了解成都。——当然。我已经来这里十年了。here 为副词前不加介词 in，故排除选项 A；for ten years“长达十年”，应用现在完成时态的延续性动词表达，排除 C 和 D。

考点2：since 与 for 的用法

考向一：since 和 for 作介词用时，常和表示时间的名词搭配构成时间状语，带这种时间状语的句子谓语多用完成时态，表示某个动作发生在过去，并一直延续到现在，甚至还可能继续延续下去。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: I have taught here **for** twenty years.
我在这儿教了二十年了。
She has been here **since** last year.
她自从去年就在这儿。

【考题在线3】—How long have you lived in the new flat?
—_____ 2010. (扬州)
A. In B. After
C. Since D. Before
点拨:本题用辨析法,考查介词的用法。选项中"in + 年份"表示在某一年;"after + 年份"表示在某一年之后;"since + 年份"表示自从某一年开始;"before + 年份"表示在某一年之前,而根据上句时态为现在完成时,所以用 since。

考向二:since 还用作从属连词,引导时间状语从句,一般用于现在完成时中。其中 since 引导的从句为一般过去时,主句为现在完成时。表示"自从这个动作开始以来,一直存在着某种状态"。

eg: He has worked here **since** he moved to this city. 他自从搬到这个城市以来就在这儿工作。

考向三:since 后接的是时间点,for 后面接的是时间段;但都表示的是一段时间,用于现在完成时中;对它们提问都用 how long;并且谓语动词应是延续性动词。若是非延续性动词,[难点]只能用否定式才可与 since 和 for 短语连用。

eg: I haven't seen you **since** last year.
自去年起我就没见过你。

(1)在英语中动词可分为延续性动词和非延续性动词。延续性动词也可称持续性动词,表示一个动作可以持续一段时间或更长时间。常见的有:live, learn, lie, do, drive, fly, keep, study, sleep, sit, stand, talk, teach, play, read, work, wait, write, walk 等。
非延续性动词也被称作短暂性动词或瞬间动词,表示一个动作发生在一瞬间,非常短暂。常见的有:start, stop, begin, become, buy, borrow, finish, find, end, enter, come, close, go, leave, lend, lose, hear, happen, reach, arrive, open, join, die, see 等。

(2)延续性动词和非延续性动词都可用于完成时的句子中。完成时的句子中若含有表示一段时间的状语,可以用非延续性动词的否定形式、延续性的动词或相当于延续性动词的动词短语作谓语。

eg: The match has begun. 比赛开始了。
The match has been on for a long time.
比赛已开始很长时间了。

常见的非延续性动词要用这些延续性动词或短语代替才可与表示一段时间的时间状语连用。

eg: stop/finish/end—be over;
borrow/lend—keep;
fall ill—be ill;
open—be open;
close—be closed;
catch a cold—have a cold;
get to know—know;
reach/arrive/get to/come/go—be in/at;
start/begin—be on;
join—be in/be a member of;
fall asleep—be asleep;
die—be dead;
leave—be away

【考题在线4】—It's time to work now.
—OK. I'll wake Carl up. He _____ for an hour. (青岛)
A. has fallen asleep
B. has been asleep
C. fell asleep
D. falls asleep
点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:——现在工作时间到了。——好的,我把卡尔叫醒。他已经睡了一个小时了。fall asleep"入睡,睡着"是非延续性动词词组。由于句中"for an hour"是指一段时间,动词要用延续性动词词组 has been asleep。

考题在线答案
1. D 2. B 3. C 4. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见227页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空(可用其相对的表延续性的词)

1. Zhang Hua _____ (go) to Beijing to see his parents and he'll be back tomorrow. (巴中改编)
2. My cousin _____ (collect) 100 model planes since 2015. (湘潭改编)
3. The old man has been _____ (die) since three years ago.
4. Linda _____ (borrow) these magazines for more than two weeks.
5. _____ you _____ (buy) the car since two months ago?

二、单项选择

6. —You have been in Neijiang very long?
—Yeah. _____ my parents came here. (内江)
A. For B. As
C. When D. Since
7. —Is that Mr. Wang in the classroom?
—It can't be him. He _____ the village to be a volunteer. (自贡改编)
A. has been in B. has been to
C. has gone to D. will go
8. —_____ have you stayed in this city?
—For more than 10 years. (武威)
A. How far B. How soon
C. How long D. How old
9. I _____ to the West Lake four times, but I will go there again this summer. (德阳)
A. have gone B. have been
C. went D. had gone
10. —Is this your camera?
—Yes. I _____ it for two weeks. (广西北部湾)
A. bought B. had
C. have had D. have bought
11. The shopping mall _____ for two years, but I _____ there only once. (常州)
A. has opened; have gone
B. has opened; have been
C. has been open; have gone
D. has been open; have been
12. —When will *A bite of China* Ⅲ begin tonight?
—It _____ for ten minutes. (天水)
A. will begin B. has begun
C. will be on D. has been on
13. —How long is it since he _____ this school?
—He _____ for three years.
A. has left; has left
B. left; has been away
C. leaves; has left
D. left; has left

三、同义句转换

14. They got married more than 15 years ago.
They _____ _____ _____ for more than 15 years.
15. Kitty left Beijing two days ago.
Kitty _____ _____ _____ from Beijing for two days.
16. My cousin bought a new bike last week.
My cousin has _____ a new bike _____ last week. (孝感)
17. My cousin came to Beijing a month ago.
My cousin _____ _____ _____ Beijing for a month.

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

18. 她参军已经快十年了。(兰州)
She _____ _____ in the army for almost 10 years.
19. 张华买iPhone X已经有一年的时间了。
Zhang Hua _____ _____ an iPhone X _____ a year ago.
20. 电影已经开始十分钟了。
The film _____ _____ _____ for ten minutes.
21. 父亲离乡多年,思念故友。(无锡)
Father _____ _____ _____ _____ his hometown for many years and misses old friends.
22. 结婚以来,他们已经去过很多名胜古迹了。(常州)
They _____ _____ _____ many places of interest _____ _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Travelling in China

A1 The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about the kinds of places they like best. Listen to their conversation and match the students with the places. Write the correct letter in each box.

Places for travelling

a. Chinese gardens
b. Museums
c. Places of natural beauty
d. Seaside cities
e. Theme parks

1. Kitty ☐
2. Simon ☐
3. Sandy ☐
4. Daniel ☐
5. Millie ☐

课文听力A1音频及材料

A2 The students are listening to a radio programme about the best time to visit some places in China. Put a tick (√) in the correct boxes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

Places of natural beauty	Mount Huang, Jiuzhaigou				
Seaside cities	Dalian, Qingdao				
Theme parks	Shenzhen, Hong Kong				
	Places to go	Spring	Summer	Autumn	Winter
Chinese gardens	Suzhou, Yangzhou				
Museums	Beijing, Xi'an				

综合技能

A 在中国旅游

A1 八年级1班的学生正在讨论他们最喜欢的地方。听他们的对话并把学生和地方搭配起来。在每个方框里写下正确的字母。

旅游的地方

a. 中国园林
b. 博物馆
c. 自然美的地方
d. 海边城市
e. 主题公园

1. 基蒂 ☐
2. 西蒙 ☐
3. 桑迪 ☐
4. 丹尼尔 ☐
5. 米莉 ☐

A2 学生们正在从收音机上收听一个关于在中国旅行最好的时间的节目。请在正确的方框里画上(√)。

自然美的地方	黄山，九寨沟				
海边城市	大连，青岛				
主题公园	深圳，香港				
	去的地方	春天	夏天	秋天	冬天
中国园林	苏州，扬州				
博物馆	北京，西安				

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A3 Amy wants to give her classmates some advice on travelling in China. Help her complete her notes. Use the information in Parts A1 and A2 to help you.

Places to go in China

Kitty likes (1) _____, such as the Window of the World in Shenzhen or (2) _____ Disneyland. She can go there **all year round**[1].

Simon loves water sports, such as sailing. He thinks it is great fun. He can visit a seaside city like (3) _____ or Qingdao this (4) _____.

Sandy likes places of (5) _____, like Mount Huang or Jiuzhaigou. She can go there in any season **except** /ɪkˈsept/[2] (6) _____. The views there in winter may be wonderful, but it is dangerous to climb the **mountains** /ˈmaʊntənz/[3] or hills on cold and snowy days.

Daniel likes (7) _____. He can visit Suzhou or Yangzhou. The best time to go there is in spring or (8) _____. There may be some rain, but the weather is usually nice at that time of year.

Millie likes (9) _____. She can go to Beijing or Xi'an. She can visit museums in any season.

B Speak up: I'm going to visit Chengdu. Simon and Amy are talking about their holiday plans. Work in pairs and take turns to ask about a holiday plan. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Simon: Do you have any plans for the May Day holiday, Amy?

Amy: Yes. I'm going to visit Chengdu with my mum.

Simon: That's great. My dad has been to Chengdu on **business**[4] twice. How will you get there?

Amy: We're going to take a direct/dəˈrekt; dɪˈrekt; daɪˈrekt/ flight to Chengdu.

Simon: How long are you staying there?

Amy: About three days. By the way, how long does it take to fly to Chengdu?

Simon: About three hours, I think. I can check it for you with my dad.

Amy: Thanks very much.

Study skills

Main points[5] **and details**

When we write about an experience or event, we can organize our ideas using the following five main points/pɔɪnts/:

When did it happen?
Where did it happen?
Who was there?
What happened?
How did you feel?

A3 埃米想给她的同学关于在中国旅游的一些建议。帮助完成她的笔记。用A1和A2部分的信息来帮你。

在中国要去游览的地方

基蒂喜欢（1）_____，像深圳的世界之窗或（2）_____迪士尼乐园。她可以全年去那儿。

西蒙喜爱水上运动，比如帆船运动。他认为它十分有趣。他在这个（4）_____可以参观一个海边城市，像（3）_____或青岛。

桑迪喜欢（5）_____的地方，像黄山或九寨沟。除了（6）_____她可以在任何季节去那儿。那儿冬天的景色可能美极了，但是在寒冷的下雪天爬山或小丘是危险的。

丹尼尔喜欢（7）_____。他可以参观苏州或扬州。去那儿最好的时间是春天或（8）_____。可能有一些雨，但是在每年的那个时间天气通常是好的。

米莉喜欢（9）_____。她可以去北京或西安，她可以在任何季节参观博物馆。

B 大声说：我将去参观成都。

西蒙和埃米正在讨论关于他们假期的计划。结对练习并且轮流就假期计划提问题，用下面的对话作为例子。

西蒙：埃米，五一假期你有什么打算吗？

埃米：是的，我将和我的妈妈去参观成都。

西蒙：好极了，我的爸爸去成都出差两次了，你们将如何到那儿？

埃米：我们将乘坐一个直达的航班去成都。

西蒙：你们将呆在那儿多长时间？

埃米：大约三天。顺便问一下，乘飞机去成都要多长时间？

西蒙：我想大约3个小时，我可以向我爸爸为你核实一下。

埃米：非常感谢。

学习技巧

要点和细节

当我们写一个关于一次经历或一个事情的情况时，我们可以运用下面的五个要点组织我们的思路：

它是什么时候发生的？
它在哪里发生的？
谁在那儿？
发生了什么？
你感觉怎么样？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Then we should give details to support the main points. Take Kitty's day at Hong Kong Disneyland as an example:

Main points

When: during the winter holiday
Where: Hong Kong
Who: Kitty and her parents
What: visited Hong Kong Disneyland

Details

enjoyed the Space Mountain ride
watched a parade
saw a 4-D film
did some shopping
watched the fireworks
How: had a fantastic time

Mr Wu is asking the Class 1, Grade 8 students to organize the following information into main points and details. First, help them write the correct letters in the blanks. Then work in pairs and talk about their trip.

a. Class 1, Grade 8 students　b. Enjoyed the natural beauty
c. Everybody felt excited　d. Flew kites
e. 在湖边钓鱼　f. 3 月 5 日
g. 南山　h. 一次南山的旅行
时间:_____　地点:_____
人物:_____　情节:_____
感受:_____ ___ ___ ___

然后我们应当提供细节来支持要点。用基蒂在香港迪士尼乐园的一天作为一个例子:

要点

时间: 在寒假期间
地点: 香港
人物: 基蒂和她的父母
情节: 参观香港迪士尼乐园

细节

享受太空山的旅行
观看一次游行
观看一部四维立体电影
购物
看烟火
感想: 玩得开心

吴老师正在叫八年级 1 班的学生把下面的信息组织成要点和细节。首先,帮助他们在括号里写出正确的字母。然后分组工作讨论他们的旅行。

a. 八年级 1 班的学生　b. 欣赏自然美景
c. 每个人感到兴奋　d. 放风筝
e. Went fishing by the lake　f. 5 March
g. South Hill　h. A visit to South Hill
When:_____　Where:_____
Who:_____　What:_____
How:_____ ___ ___ ___

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 穩拿中考基础20分

❶all year round 全年,一年到头

eg: The weather in Kunming is good **all year round**. 昆明的天气一年到头都很好。

拓展 all day long 整天,一天到晚

eg: Henry plays the computer games **all day long**. It's bad for his health.
亨利整天都在打电脑游戏,这对他的健康有害。

❷except /ɪkˈsept/ *prep.* **除了……以外**

eg: (杭州中考) All the students are studying at school **except** Tom, who is ill at home.
除了汤姆生病在家,所有的学生都在学校学习。

考向[易错点]:辨析 except 与 besides

except 后面的人或物不包括在前面提到的范围内,即被排除在外。besides 表示"除……之外还有",即把 besides 后的人或物也包括在前面提到的范围内。

【考题在线 1】 —Alice, would you like to go hiking with us?
—What a pity! I am free every day _____ today. (兰州)
A. for　B. except
C. besides　D. among

点拨:本题用**辨析法**解题。句意:——艾丽斯,你想和我们一起去远足吗? ——真可惜! 除了今天,我每天都有空。for 为了;except 除了,不包括;besides 除了……以外还有;among 在……之间。根据句意可知,是不包括今天,用 except。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❸**mountain** /ˈmaʊntən/ *n.* 高山

eg: We'll go to the **mountains** if it is fine tomorrow. 如果明天天气好的话,我们就去爬山。

考向:辨析 hill 与 mountain

hill 表示"小山,丘陵";mountain 表示"高山,山脉"。

eg: The **hill** is covered with snow.
小山被雪所覆盖。
This kind of flower grows in high **mountains**. 这种花长在高山上。

❹**business** /ˈbɪznəs/ *n.* 公事;商业;生意

eg: He often goes abroad on **business**.
他经常去国外出差。

考向[重点]:business 作"公事;商业;生意"讲时是不可数名词,常用搭配:on business,意为"出差"。

eg: I hear they've gone to Shanghai **on business**.
我听说他们已经去上海出差了。

搭配:do business with sb. 和某人做生意;business hours 办公时间;营业时间

拓展 business 作可数名词,意为"公司,商店,企业"。常用短语:have/start/run a business 拥有/开办/经营企业。

eg: It's not easy to **run a business**.
经营一家企业不容易。

❺**point** /pɔɪnt/ *n.* 要点

eg: He came to the **point** at once.
他一下子就说到了点子上。

考向:point 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
动词	指,指向	He **pointed** to the window. 他指向窗户。
名词	点,地点	Do you see this **point** on the map? 你看到地图上这一点了吗?
	(比赛中所得的)分	Our team scored five **points**. 我们队得了5分。

【考题在线2】Be polite, Henry. It's rude to _____ (指向) at others like that. (无锡)

考题在线答案
1. B 2. point

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见228页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. The restaurant is open every day _____ (除了) Monday. (广安)
2. Which is the highest _____ (高山) in the world?
3. He will go to America on _____ (生意) next month.
4. Don't worry. The train is _____ (直达的).
5. You should find out the main _____ (要点) of the passage.

二、用括号内所给词的适当形式填空

6. In Suzhou, you can feel the _____ (beautiful) of Chinese gardens.
7. It's great fun to visit _____ (nature) sights in Jiuzhaigou.
8. The police warn the drivers to drive slowly on _____ (snow) day because it is dangerous.
9. Don't forget Millie's _____ (fly) number.
10. _____ (sail) is becoming more and more popular among young people.

三、按要求完成下列各题

11. 我爸爸全年都在辛勤工作。(根据汉语完成句子)
My father works hard _____ _____ _____.
12. I went to Nanjing in 2012. I went to Nanjing in 2013 again. (合并为一句)
I _____ _____ _____ Nanjing _____.
13. 除帆船运动外我喜欢所有的运动。(根据汉语完成句子)
I like all the sports _____ _____.
14. The old man came here five minutes ago. (改为同义句)
The old man _____ _____ _____ for five minutes.
15. We have studied at this school for three years. (改为同义句) (乐山)
Three years has _____ since we _____ to study at this school.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

My best holiday

A Kitty plans to write about her trip to Hong Kong. She organized her ideas by using a fact file. First, she wrote down the main points. Then she wrote down the details. Read her fact file.

	Main points	Details
When	The winter holiday	/
Where	Hong Kong	/
Who	My parents and I	/
What	Visiting places of interest	Disneyland—parade of Disney characters —exciting Space Mountain ride Ocean Park—dolphin show and bird show
	Other activities	Visited museums Went shopping
	Eating	Delicious/dɪˈlɪʃəs/ seafood
How	Enjoyed the trip	Interesting, exciting, fun, nice Want to visit it again

Useful expressions

It took us ...to fly to ... The next day, we went to ...
I loved watching the interesting ...
...was exciting/beautiful/fantastic.
On the third day, we visited ...
We went to ...on the fifth day.
...was the best part of the day.
We enjoyed this trip very much.

B Kitty is writing about her trip to Hong Kong. Help her complete her article.

The day finally arrived. My parents and I **left for**[1] the **airport**/ˈeəpɔːt/[2] in the early morning. It took us about three and a half hours to fly to Hong Kong.

The next day, we went to the most famous theme park—(1)_____. I loved watching the interesting (2)_____of Disney characters, and the Space Mountain ride was very (3)_____.

任务

我最好的假期

A 基蒂计划写她的香港之旅。她通过事实表来组织她的思路。首先，她写下要点；然后，她写下了细节。读一下她的事实表。

	要点	细节
时间	寒假	/
地点	香港	/
人物	我的父母和我	/
情节	参观名胜古迹	迪士尼乐园——迪士尼人物的游行——太空山令人激动的车旅行 海洋公园——海豚表演和鸟类表演
	其他的活动	参观博物馆 购物
	吃	美味的海鲜
感受	享受旅行	有趣的，令人激动的，使人快乐的，美好的 想再次来参观它

有用的表达

我们花费……时间飞到……
第二天，我们去……
我喜爱观看有趣的……
……是令人激动的/美丽的/极好的。
第三天，我们参观……
在第五天我们去……
……是一天中最好的部分。
我们非常享受这次旅行。

B 基蒂正在写关于她的香港之旅的东西。帮她完成她的文章。

这一天终于到来了。我的父母和我一大早就去了机场，乘飞机去香港花费我们大约三个半小时。

第二天，我们去了最著名的主题公园—(1)_____。我喜爱看有趣的迪士尼人物的(2)_____，太空山旅行是非常(3)_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

On the third day, we visited another famous theme park in Hong Kong—(4) _____. We watched the (5) _____and the bird show there. They were great fun.

On the fourth day, we visited some museums, and then we went (6) _____. My mother enjoyed that day most. She bought a lot of presents for our relatives/ˈrelətɪvz/ and her friends.

We went to a seafood restaurant on the fifth day and had a (7) _____meal. The food in Hong Kong was really nice.

We enjoyed this trip very much, and I hope I can visit it again some day.

C You are going to write an article about one of your holidays. Write down some main points and details, and organize your ideas before you write.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about Kitty's trip to Hong Kong.		
2. to use the new words to talk about a holiday.		
3. to use **have/has been** and **have/has gone.** to use verbs with **for** and **since**.		
4. to state main points first and then give details.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

在第三天，我们参观了香港的另一个有名的主题公园—(4) _____。我们在那儿观看(5) _____和鸟类表演。它们非常有趣。

在第四天，我们参观了一些博物馆，后来我们去了(6) _____，我妈妈最喜欢那一天。她给我们的亲戚和她的朋友买了许多礼物。

在第五天，我们去了一家海鲜餐馆，并且吃了(7) _____餐。香港的食物非常可口。

我们非常喜欢这次旅行，我希望某天可以再来参观一次。

C 你将写一篇关于你的一个假期的文章。写下一些要点和细节，在你写之前整理你的思路。

自我评价

我已经学了	细节	结果
1. 关于基蒂的香港之旅。		
2. 使用新单词谈论假期。		
3. 使用“have（has）been”和“have（has）gone”。使用与“for”和“since”搭配的动词。		
4. 首先陈述要点，然后给出细节。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！

我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶leave for … 动身去……

eg: He will **leave for** New York tomorrow.
他明天将动身去纽约。

考向：leave, leave …for, leave for 与地点名词的不同搭配：

词条	含义	示例
leave + 地点	离开某地	**leave** Sydney 离开悉尼
leave for + 地点	前往某地	**leave for** Sydney 前往悉尼
leave + A地 + for + B地	离开A地去B地	**leave** Sydney **for** Beijing 离开悉尼去北京

【考题在线1】 根据汉语意思完成句子

①他昨天动身去英国了。

He _____England yesterday.

②你什么时候离开北京的？

When did you _____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③我父母上周离开北京去海南了。
My parents _____ Beijing _____ Hainan last week.
点拨:“动身去某地”为“leave for + 地点”;“离开某地”为“leave + 地点”;“离开某地去某地”为“leave + 地点 + for + 地点”。

②airport /ˈeəpɔːt/ *n.* **机场**
eg: My parents are going to meet him at the **airport** tomorrow.
我父母明天将去机场接他。
考向:airport 是由 air + port 构成的合成词。类似的词还有:blackboard 黑板;basketball 篮球;football 足球;schoolbag 书包等。

【考题在线2】Take a taxi from the _____(机场).
点拨:“机场”英文是 airport。

考题在线答案
1. ①left for ②leave Beijing ③left; for 2. airport

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法:三步法写出游短文
步骤一:何时、何人、去何地、怎么去等
步骤二:出游过程或经历
步骤三:感受

Travelling { when, who, where to go, how to go / experience / feelings

易错点提示和句型
1. 注意时态。写出游短文主体用一般过去时。
2. 注意游玩的时间顺序。
3. 要恰当地运用连接词。

参考词汇和句型

单词	travelling; climb; beautiful; hill
短语	go to ... with; have a great time; get there; get off; climb the hills; can't stop doing; have a picnic; enjoy oneself
句型	I went to ...; We began to ...; We couldn't stop ...; We decided to ...

典例
以“愉快的旅行”为题写一篇 100 词左右的短文。
提示:①在周末,完成作业后,我同朋友们乘公共汽车去南山旅行;
②到达目的地后开始爬山;
③山上的环境和游人状况;
④我们野餐;
⑤拍了很多照片,玩得很开心。

【范文欣赏】

Pleasant Travelling

Last weekend, I went to South Hill by bus with my friends after I finished my homework. We **had a great time** there.

When we got there, we got off the bus quickly. Then we began to climb the hill. There were many people there. **Some** were climbing the hill. **Some** were sitting under the trees. The views were very beautiful, and we **couldn't stop taking photos**. I put them on my homepage for my friends to see.

At noon, we had a picnic on the hill. We really **enjoyed ourselves.** We decided to go there the next week.

【点评】
本文用三步法写出游短文。1. 第一段点出了何时(last weekend),何人(I, my friends),去何地(South Hill),交通方式(by bus)。2. 第二段写出游过程。3. 第三段写出游的感受(enjoy ourselves)。
添彩点:1. 使用了 Some...Some... 句型。2. have a great time, couldn't stop doing..., enjoy oneself 等短语的使用为文章增色不少。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见228页)

单元知识浓缩

Kitty and her parents s_____[1] the whole day at Disneyland. They went to Space Mountain—an indoor roller coaster that moved at high s_____[2] and it was really exciting! Then, they h_____[3] to a restaurant to have a quick meal. On the way, they met some Disney c_____[4] characters. They were so cute. A parade of Disney characters was the best p_____[5] of the day. Kitty ran after them and couldn't stop t_____[6] photos. After that, they watched a 4-D film. It was like m_____[7]. Kitty bought a c_____[8] of key rings. At the end of the day, they watched the fireworks in f_____[9] of Sleeping Beauty Castle. They really enjoyed t_____[10] there.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Online tours

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	①开门见山法(54 页) ②段落分隔法(56 页)
写作方法	①三步两要素法介绍某个城市(68 页)
解题方法	1 交际法(50,51,217 页) 2 题眼法(55 页) 3 语法判定法(55,60,61 页) 4 把握语境法(217,228 页) 5 词语应用法(218,228 页) 6 上下文联系法(218 页) 7 推理判断法(218 页) 8 辨析法(228 页) 9 句意理解法(228 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论在线旅游		
	课时	单词	短语
必背词汇	Period 1	programme *n.* <英>节目;计划,方案 keyboard *n.* 键盘　unit *n.* 机件;单位 mouse *n.* 鼠标　screen *n.* 屏幕,显示器 receive *vt.* 收到,接到	look like 看起来像 the remote control 遥控器 main unit(电脑)主机 change the channel 换频道 search for information 搜索信息 send and receive emails 收发电子邮件 use...for...用……做……
	Period 2	guide *n.* 导游,向导　Asia *n.* 亚洲 Africa *n.* 非洲　Europe *n.* 欧洲 America *n.* 美洲 world-famous *adj.* 世界著名的,举世闻名的 trade *n.* 贸易　southern *adj.* 南方的,南部的 international *adj.* 国际的　huge *adj.* 巨大的 island *n.* 岛屿　several *det.* 几个,数个 relax *vi.* 放松,休息　hard *adj.* 辛苦的;艰难的 bottom *n.* 底,底部　pick *vt.* 挑选 play *n.* 剧本,戏剧　website *n.* 网站	so much for sth. 关于某事就讲这么多,……到此为止 at the top of 在……顶部 at the southern end of ... 在……南部的尾部 be famous for 因……而出名 hear of 听说 at the bottom of 在……底部 fill with 充满
	Period 3	dream *vt.* & *vi.* 做梦,梦想　passport *n.* 护照	write an email to 写一封电子邮件给…… dream of/ about 梦想;想象 realize one's dream 实现某人的梦想 by taking an online tour 通过进行一次在线旅游
必考点	Period 4	coast *n.* 海岸 Australian *adj.* 澳大利亚(人)的 opposite *n.* 对立的人(或物) mind *vt.* & *vi.* 介意 print *vi.* & *vt.* 打印;印刷 pleasure *n.* 高兴,乐意 book *vt.* & *vi.* 预订,订(房间、车票等)	in the menu 在菜单上 on the north-east coast of... 在……的东北海岸 the opposite of 与……相反 for example 例如 mind doing sth. 介意做某事 book tickets and hotels 订票和酒店 order meals 订餐

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必考点	Period 5	England（英国）英格兰　queen *n.* 女王 ruler *n.* 统治者；管理者　pound *n.* 英镑 European *adj.* 欧洲的　dollar *n.* 美元	an island country 一个岛国 be made up of 由……组成 prepare for 为……做准备
句型	①What do you usually use …for? 你通常用……做什么？ ②How often do you use …? 你多长时间使用……一次？ ③It has been famous for …它因……而出名。 ④Would you mind …? 你介意……吗？ ⑤The best time to visit …is …参观……的最好时间是……		
语法	现在完成时（Ⅲ）		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—Have you used this before, Eddie?
—No, never!
—It **looks like**❶ a TV.
—I agree.
—Look, this **programme**/ˈprəʊgræm/❷ began an hour ago. It's boring.
—Right. Where's the remote control? Ah, here it is. Let's change the channel.

课文朗读 Comic strip

The world in computers

Daniel found a good website for learning about places of interest around the world.

Task

Write an introduction to a country with the help of the Internet or libraries.

Welcome to the unit

Learning about computers

A Annie, Simon's cousin, wants to learn about the different parts of a computer. Look at the picture below and help her write the correct answers in the boxes.

keyboard/ˈkiːbɔːd/　main unit/ˈjuːnɪt/　**mouse**/maʊs/❸
screen/ˈskriːn/

B Simon and Daniel are talking about the different uses of computers. Work in pairs and ask each other what you use a computer for. The ideas in the box may help you. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

chat with friends	**do word processing**
play games	**search for**❹ information
send and **receive**/rɪˈsiːv/❺ emails	watch videos

卡通漫画

——你之前用过这个吗，埃迪？
——不，从来没有！
——它看起来像一台电视机。
——我同意。
——看，这个节目一小时前就开始了。它太无趣了。
——是的，遥控器在哪儿？啊，它在这儿。让我们换个频道。

计算机世界

丹尼尔发现了一个可以了解世界名胜古迹的好网站。

任务

在互联网和图书馆的帮助下，给一个国家写一篇介绍。

单元导入

了解电脑

A 安妮，西蒙的表妹，想要了解电脑的不同结构。看下面的图片并帮助她在方框里写出正确的答案。

键盘　主机　鼠标　屏幕

B 西蒙和丹尼尔正在谈论电脑的不同用途。结对练习，互相询问你使用电脑做什么。方框里的一些建议可能会帮助你。用下面的对话作为一个例子。

和朋友聊天	文字处理
玩游戏	搜索信息
收发电子邮件	看录像

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Daniel: **What** do you usually use your computer **for**[6]?
Simon: I usually use it to search for information.
Daniel: Why?
Simon: Because it's fast and easy.
Daniel: How often do you use your computer for this?
Simon: Almost every day.

丹尼尔：你通常用你的电脑来干什么？
西蒙：我通常用它来搜索信息。
丹尼尔：为什么？
西蒙：因为它既快又方便。
丹尼尔：你多长时间用电脑搜索一次信息？
西蒙：几乎每天。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 look like 看起来像……

eg: What does it **look like**? 它看起来像什么？

考向一：短语 look like 中 like 为介词，后接名词或代词。

eg: Millie **looks like** her mother.
米莉看起来像她的妈妈。

考向二[易错点]：辨析 look like 与 be like

词性	含义	示例
look like	意为“看起来像……”，着重指外貌。	—What does your sister **look like**? 你的姐姐长什么样子？ —She's very pretty. 她非常漂亮。
be like	意为“像……”，既可指人的外貌，也可指性格。	—What's your Chinese teacher **like**? 你的语文老师怎样？ —He's handsome and friendly. 他不仅人长得英俊，而且对人也很友好。

【考题在线1】 —What does your brother look like?
—_____. (昆明)
A. He is outgoing
B. He is really tall and thin
C. He is a student
D. He is in hospital
点拨：本题用**交际法**。句意：——你的兄弟长什么样子？根据句中 look like 可知询问人物外貌。

2 programme /ˈprəʊgræm/ *n.* <英>节目；计划，方案

eg: What's your favourite **programme**?
你最喜欢什么节目？

考向：programme 为英式英语，美式英语为 program。program 还有“(电脑)程序”的意思。

eg: How is the computer **program**?
那个电脑程序如何？

3 mouse /maʊs/ *n.* 鼠标

eg: How much does the **mouse** cost?
那个鼠标多少钱？

考向一：mouse 还可作“老鼠”讲。

eg: There are many **mice** in the old house.
老房子里有许多老鼠。

考向二：mouse 作“鼠标”讲时，复数多用 mouses，也可用 mice；作“老鼠”讲时，复数为 mice。

4 search for 搜寻，寻找

eg: The hunters are **searching for** the tiger.
猎人们正在搜寻那只老虎。

考向[易错点]：辨析 search for 与 look for

词条	含义	示例
search for	强调花费时间、精力去寻找。	The police are trying their best to **search for** the lost boy. 警察正在尽力寻找那个失踪的男孩。
look for	指一般的寻找。	What are you **looking for**? 你在找什么？

归纳 与 search 相关的用法：in one's search for/in search of 寻找，寻求；search sth. 搜查某物；search sb. 搜某人的身

5 receive /rɪˈsiːv/ *vt.* 收到，接到

eg: Open a present when you **receive** it.
当你收到礼物时打开它。

考向一[重点]：常用词组 receive a letter from sb. 收到某人的来信。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: I **received a letter from** my best friend.
我收到了一封我最好的朋友的来信。

考向二[易错点]:辨析 receive 与 accept

receive 与 accept 都用作及物动词,表示"收到",但用法不同。

receive	客观上收到,不一定愿意接受。	I **received** the letter just now. 我刚才收到了这封信。
accept	主观上接受、承认或赞同。	She **accepted** the man's ring. 她接受了那个男人的戒指。

【考题在线2】I _____ an invitation from my friend yesterday, but I didn't _____ it.
A. received; receive B. received; accept
C. accepted; receive D. accepted; accept
点拨:本题考查 receive 和 accept 的区别。receive 指客观的收到,而 accept 指主观的接受。句意:我昨天收到了我朋友的邀请函,但是没有接受。

⑥What ...for? 意为"为了什么?",表目的,用途

eg: —**What** do you come here **for**?
你来这儿是为了什么?
—I come here to visit my grandpa.
我来这儿看望我的祖父。

【考题在线3】—I'll go to the USA next month.
—_____ for?
A. Why B. How
C. Which D. What
点拨:本题用交际法。根据上句句意:"下个月我将去美国。"则答句应该是询问原因。


方法真题练:交际法

拓展 why 意为"为什么",表原因,[重点]通常用 because 来引导答句。

eg:—Why do you learn English?
你为什么学习英语?
—Because I'd like to be able to communicate with foreigners freely in the future.
因为我想将来能与外国人自由地交流。

考题在线答案
1. B 2. B 3. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见228页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Cartoons are Jim's favourite TV _____ (节目).
2. There is something wrong with my _____ (鼠标).
3. She reached out her hands to the _____ (键盘) and began to play.
4. We can see words on the _____ (屏幕).
5. You will _____ (收到) a warm welcome when you come to our village. (杭州改编)

二、单项选择

6. Please change the channel. This channel is _____.
A. exciting B. interesting
C. boring D. fun
7. —_____ do you like *Wolf Warriors Ⅱ*?
—Because it's exciting. (绥化)
A. Why B. What C. How
8. —What will a science museum be like if you are asked to build one?
—I hope it will _____ like a book. (潍坊)
A. taste B. sound C. look D. smell
9. I use my computer to _____ information.
A. search for B. search
C. look D. look for
10. —_____ are stamps used _____?
—Sending letters. 【导学号:9577700】
A. Why; for B. What; for
C. What; / D. How; for

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 你打算学法语干什么呢?
_____ are you going to learn French _____?
12. 你能回想起他十年前长什么样吗? (枣庄)
Can you remember what he _____ _____ ten years ago?
13. 你能教我如何更换频道吗?
Can you _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____?
14. 我几乎每天用笔记本电脑收发电子邮件。
I almost use a notebook computer to _____ _____ _____ _____ every day.
15. 现在因特网使得搜索信息快多了。 (呼和浩特改编)
The Internet makes it much quicker to _____ _____ _____ now.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A Around the World in Eight Hours

课文朗读A

Daniel is looking at a website called "Around the World in Eight Hours". Here is what the website's guide says.

Tour Camera Print

Asia Africa Europe America Others	the USA	Miami New York San Francisco Seattle

Welcome to "Around the World in Eight Hours". ❶ I'm your tour **guide**/gaɪd/❷, Robin. Have you noticed the "Tour" icon at the top of the page? Just click on it, and you can visit **Asia**/'eɪʒə; 'eɪʃə/❸, Africa/'æfrɪkə/, Europe/'jʊərəp/, America/ə'merɪkə/ and more in only eight hours!

YOU HAVE CHOSEN:

NEW YORK

Let's go!

Here we are in "the Big Apple"—New York, the biggest city in the USA.

Wall Street, the **world-famous**❹ trade/treɪd/ centre, is here at the southern/'sʌðən/ end of Manhattan Island. There are many big companies and international/ˌɪntə'næʃnəl/ banks here.

Further on❺ is Times Square. Every year, **thousands of**❻ people gather here on New Year's Eve. It's exciting to see the **huge**/hjuːdʒ/❼ glass ball falling through the darkness!

In the centre of the island/'aɪlənd/ is Central Park. With **several**/'sevrəl/❽ lakes, hills and a large green lawn, it's a good place to **relax**/rɪ'læks/❾ after a **hard**/hɑːd/❿ day's work.

When you visit New York, don't miss Broadway. It has **been famous for**⓫ its theatres since the early twentieth century. Have you ever heard of the song "Memory"? It comes from the famous Broadway musical *Cats*.

OK, so much for New York. ⓬ There's a "Back" icon at the **bottom**/'bɒtəm/⓭ of the page. Click on it, **pick**/pɪk/⓮ another city and then start your new tour!

B A fun way to travel

B1 Daniel does not know the meanings of some words on the web page. Help him match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. trade (line 7) _____

阅读

A 八小时环游世界

丹尼尔正在看一个叫做"八小时环游世界"的网站。下面就是网站向导说的话。

旅行 照相机 打印

亚洲 非洲 欧洲 美洲 其他	美国	迈阿密 纽约 旧金山 西雅图

欢迎来到"八小时环游世界"。我是你的导游，罗宾。在这一页的顶部你注意到"旅游"这个图标了吗？只要点击它，仅在八小时内你就可以参观亚洲、非洲、欧洲、美洲和更多的地方。

你已经选择了：

纽约

让我们出发吧！

我们到了"大苹果"这里——纽约，美国最大的城市。

华尔街，闻名于世界的贸易中心，位于曼哈顿岛的南端。这儿有许多大型公司和国际银行。

再往前走就是时代广场。每年除夕，成千上万的人聚集在这里。看到巨大的玻璃球在黑暗中落下真是让人兴奋！

在岛中央是中央公园。公园内有几个湖，几座小山以及一大片绿草坪，这是一个辛苦工作一天后放松的好去处。

当你参观纽约的时候，不要错过百老汇。自20世纪早期开始，它就以剧院闻名。你曾经听说过"回忆"这首歌吗？它来自著名的百老汇音乐剧《猫》。

好的，关于纽约到此为止。在这一页的底部有个"返回"图标。点击它，挑选另一个城市，然后开始你的新旅程！

B 一种有趣的旅游方式

B1 丹尼尔不知道网页中一些单词的意思。帮助他把左边的单词与右边的意思搭配起来。在空格处写上正确的字母。

1. 贸易（第7行）_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. international (line 10) _____
3. gather (line 11) _____
4. huge (line 12) _____
5. several (line 14) _____
6. relax (line 15) _____
7. century (line 19) _____
8. musical (line 21) _____

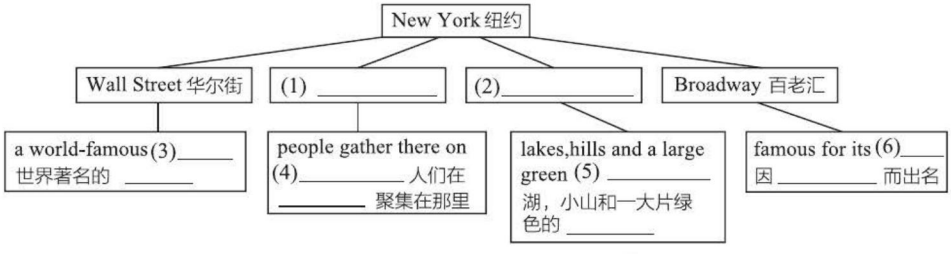
a. a play/pleɪ/ **filled with**[15] many songs
b. rest after work
c. come together
d. a period of 100 years
e. more than two
f. the activity of buying and selling
g. two or more countries taking part
h. very large

B2 Daniel is introducing the website to Millie. Millie is trying to find out what people can see in New York. Help her fill in the blanks below.

2. 国际的（第10行）_____
3. 聚集（第11行）_____
4. 巨大的（第12行）_____
5. 几个（第14行）_____
6. 放松（第15行）_____
7. 世纪（第19行）_____
8. 音乐剧（第21行）_____

a. 含有许多歌曲的一个戏剧
b. 工作后休息
c. 一起来
d. 一百年的时间
e. 超过两个
f. 买和卖的活动
g. 两个或更多的国家参加
h. 很大

B2 丹尼尔正在给米莉介绍这个网站。米莉在尽量找出在纽约人们能看到什么。帮助她完成下面的填空。



B3 Amy is also interested in travelling around the world. She is telling her mum about the website. Check whether what she says is correct or not. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. The website helps people buy tickets to different places. _____
2. There is a "Tour" icon at the bottom of the page. _____
3. New York is also called "the Big Apple". _____
4. Wall Street is at the northern end of Manhattan Island. _____
5. A big apple falls from the sky on New Year's Eve at Times Square. _____
6. There are no hills or lakes in Central Park. _____
7. The song "Memory" comes from the musical *Cats*. _____
8. Click on the "Back" icon and you can start a new online tour. _____

B3 埃米也对环游世界感兴趣。她正在给她的妈妈讲述有关网站的事。检查一下她说的对还是错。如果句子正确写T，如果错误写F。

1. 这个网站帮助人们买去不同地方的票。_____
2. 在这一页的底部，有个"旅游"的图标。_____
3. 纽约也被称作"大苹果"。_____
4. 华尔街在曼哈顿岛的北端。_____
5. 在时代广场，一个大苹果在新年前夕从空中落下。_____
6. 中央公园中没有小山和湖水。_____
7. "回忆"这首歌来自于音乐剧《猫》。_____
8. 点击"返回"图标，你可以开始新的网上旅游。_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B4 Kitty also wants to know about the website. She is asking Daniel about it. Complete their conversation below.

Kitty: Daniel, what's the website/ˈwebsaɪt/ called?

Daniel: It's called "(1) _____".

Kitty: It gives people (2) _____ tours, right?

Daniel: Yes. It can show you cities in (3) _____, Africa, (4) _____, America and other places.

Kitty: Can we find more information about a city?

Daniel: Of course. Look, here's New York, and here's Wall Street.

Kitty: I see. Wall Street is on Manhattan Island. There are many big (5) _____ and (6) _____ there.

Daniel: Yes, and Times Square is another great place to visit. Every year, many people gather there to welcome the (7) _____.

Kitty: That sounds great. Look! That's Central Park. People like to (8) _____ there after work.

Daniel: Yes, and don't miss Broadway. It has been famous for its theatres since the early (9) _____.

B4 基蒂也想了解这个网站。她正在问丹尼尔关于网站的事。完成下面他们的对话。

基蒂：丹尼尔，这个网站叫什么？

丹尼尔：它叫做"（1）_____"。

基蒂：它带给人们（2）_____旅游，对吗？

丹尼尔：是的。它可以给你展示在（3）_____，非洲，（4）_____，美洲和其他的地区的城市。

基蒂：我们可以找出更多关于一个城市的信息吗？

丹尼尔：当然。看，这儿是纽约，这儿是华尔街。

基蒂：我明白了。华尔街在曼哈顿岛。那儿有许多大的（5）_____和（6）_____。

丹尼尔：是的，并且时代广场是另一个参观的好地方。每年，许多人聚集在那里迎接（7）_____的到来。

基蒂：那听起来很棒。看！那是中央公园。人们喜欢在工作后去那儿（8）_____。

丹尼尔：是的，而且不要错过百老汇。自从（9）_____早期以来它便以剧院闻名。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶开门见山法：文章开头直接用 Welcome to "Around the World in Eight Hours". 点明了本文的要点。在写这类文章时，通常在开头用类似的句子，说明文章的主题。

❷guide /gaɪd/ *n.* **导游，向导**

eg: My cousin wants to be a **guide** when he grows up. 我的堂兄长大后想成为一名导游。

考向：guide 还可作动词，意为"引路；带领；指导"。

eg: He **guided** us through the forest. 他领我们穿过了森林。

拓展 guidebook *n.* 旅行指南

❸Asia /ˈeɪʒə; ˈeɪʃə/ *n.* **亚洲**

eg: He comes from **Asia**. 他来自亚洲。

考向：Asia 的形容词形式为 Asian，意为"亚洲的"。

拓展 类似的词还有：

Africa *n.* 非洲 — African *adj.* 非洲的

Europe *n.* 欧洲 — European *adj.* 欧洲的

America *n.* 美洲 — American *adj.* 美洲的

❹world-famous *adj.* **世界著名的，举世闻名的**

eg: Charles Chaplin is a **world-famous** comedy actor. 查理斯·卓别林是世界著名的喜剧演员。

考向：world-famous 是由 world 与 famous 构成的复合词。常用搭配有：world-famous university 世界著名大学；become world-famous 扬名天下；world-famous writer 世界知名的作家。

❺further on 再向前

eg: If you walk **further on**, you can see the beautiful view.

如果你再往前走，你会看到美丽的风景。

考向[重点]：辨析 further 与 farther

相同点	都是 far 的比较级形式，在涉及地点、方向和距离时二者意义区别不大，均可使用。 **eg**: He jumped **farther** than any other student in the sports meeting. 在运动会上他跳得比其他任何学生都远。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

不同点	further 还可以用来表示程度，表示“进一步，更多”，此时不可用 farther 来替代。 **eg**: Nancy will go to England to study **further** next year. 明年南希将去英国深造。

【考题在线 1】 Our English teacher will go abroad for _____ (far) education next month. (扬州)

点拨：本题用题眼法。题干中 education 表示抽象概念，故用 further 修饰。

【考题在线 2】 —Is Lily's home _____ away from school than Linda's?
—Yes, it is. Lily lives two miles away but Linda lives nearby. (益阳)
A. far B. farther
C. farthest

点拨：本题用语法判定法。根据答句：莉莉住在离学校两公里远而琳达住在附近，可以判断出问句应该用 far 的比较级形式。

6 thousands of 数千，成千上万

eg: There are **thousands of** books in our school library.
我们学校的图书馆有成千上万本图书。

考向：thousand, hundred, million 等词，前面有具体数字修饰时，后不加-s，前面没有具体数字修饰时，后加-s，再加 of 后才能接名词。

eg: Last year, **three hundred** English teachers took part in the two-month English Training.
去年，三百名英语老师参加了为期两个月的英语培训。
Thousands of people attended the meeting. 数千人参加了这次会议。

【考题在线 3】 _____ people visited Hongyadong, Chongqing on May Day this year. (重庆 B 卷)
A. Thousand
B. Thousands
C. Thousand of
D. Thousands of

7 huge /hjuːdʒ/ *adj.* **巨大的**

eg: There are lots of **huge** buildings in Beijing.
北京有许多巨大的建筑物。

考向：辨析 huge, big, large 与 great

单词	用法
huge	一般用于表示体积大，指程度、数量、规模等，不强调重量。
big	表示面积、范围、重量、体积等大。
large	侧重数量、容积或面积大，一般不用于指人，修饰物时，能与 big 互换，但比 big 正式。
great	常用于指抽象事物，带有主观色彩。可表示数量、距离或程度。修饰人时，意为“伟大的”。

eg: These **huge** stones are hard to carry away.
这些大石头很难被运走。
I'd like to have a house with a **big/large** garden. 我想拥有一个带有大花园的房子。
Mo Yan is a **great** writer.
莫言是一位伟大的作家。

8 several /ˈsevrəl/ *det.* **几个，数个**

eg: I've seen that film **several** times.
那部电影我已经看过好几次了。

考向：several 后接可数名词的复数形式。还可以作代词。

【考题在线 4】 If you look for photos of Alice, you will find _____ (几个) here.

9 relax /rɪˈlæks/ *vi.* **放松**

eg: Let's stop working and **relax** for twenty minutes. 让我们停止工作，放松二十分钟。

考向：relax 的派生词：relaxed *adj.* (人)感到放松的；relaxing *adj.* 令人放松的(修饰物)

速记小筏

一语辨异：What a **relaxing** afternoon! Everyone feels **relaxed**. 一个多么轻松的下午啊！每个人都感到很放松。

10 hard /hɑːd/ *adj.* **辛苦的；艰难的**

eg: It is **hard** work. Can you finish it on time?
这是艰难的工作。你能按时完成吗？

考向：hard 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
形容词	硬的；坚固的。	The stone is very **hard**. 这块石头很坚硬。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

副词	努力地，猛烈地，相当于 heavily。	My brother has worked **hard** this term. 我弟弟这学期学习很用功。 How **hard** it blows! 风好大呀！

速记小筏

一语辨异：He worked very **hard**. But it was **hard** to push the **hard** stone to the top of the mountain.
他很努力地去做，但是很难把那块坚硬的石头推到山顶上。

⓫**be famous for** 以……著名，因……而出名

eg：(兰州中考) Lao She was a great writer and he's especially **famous for** his play, *Teahouse*.
老舍是一位伟大的作家，尤以他的剧本《茶馆》而出名。

考向：辨析 be famous for 与 be famous as

词条	含义	示例
be famous for	表示“因……而出名”，for 后接出名的原因。	China is **famous for** the Great Wall. 中国以长城而出名。
be famous as	表示“以……身份而著名”，as 后接职业、身份或地位。	She is **famous as** a writer. 她是著名的作家。

速记小筏

一语巧记：Zhou Runfa is **famous as** a movie star. He is **famous for** his fine acting.
周润发是一位著名的影星，他因演技精湛而出名。

【考题在线5】Stephen Hawking was famous _____ a scientist, he made a great contribution to the world, and he died _____ March 14th, 2018. (龙东改编)
A. for; on　　B. as; in
C. as; on　　D. for; in

⓬**段落分隔法**：用此句结束上一段的话题，然后开启下一个话题。so much for … 意为“关于……就讲这么多，……到此为止”。

⓭**bottom** /ˈbɒtəm/ *n.* 底，底部

考向：bottom 的反义词为 top，意为“顶部”。
搭配：at the bottom of 在……的底部；from the bottom of one's heart 从某人心底
eg：I waited for them **at the bottom of** the hill.
我在山脚下等他们。

⓮**pick** /pɪk/ *vt.* 挑选

eg：When I buy tomatoes, I always try to **pick** the red ones.
我买西红柿时总是尽量挑红色的。

考向一：pick 还有“摘；采摘”的意思。
eg：The children were **picking** tomatoes in the garden then.
那时孩子们正在花园里摘西红柿。

考向二：辨析 pick 与 pick up

词条	含义	示例
pick	pick 为及物动词“采摘，挑选”	I am **picking** the apples. 我正在摘苹果。
pick up	动副短语，意为“捡起”，宾语为代词放中间，为名词放中间、后边均可	I am **picking up** the apples. 我正在捡苹果。

⓯**fill with** 装满；充满

eg：He **filled** the bottle **with** water.
他将瓶子装满了水。

考向：be filled with 和 be full of 同义，可以互相转换，注意 fill 是动词，full 是形容词。
eg：The bottle **was filled with** water. = The bottle **was full of** water.
瓶子里装满了水。

【考题在线6】If you read a lot, your life will be full _____ pleasure. (莱芜)
A. by　　B. of　　C. for　　D. with
点拨：本题考查固定短语。句意：如果你阅读很多，你的生活将会充满乐趣。固定短语 be full of = be filled with 充满。

考题在线答案
1. further　2. B　3. D　4. several　5. C　6. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见228页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. China is the biggest country in _____ (亚洲). (随州改编)
2. The little girl is _____ (摘) flowers in the garden.
3. As a tour _____ (导游), I am always friendly to everyone.
4. On March 14th, 2018, the _____ (举世闻名的) British scientist, Stephen Hawking, died at 76 in Cambridge, UK.
5. There are a number of _____ (巨大的) stones on the top of the mountain.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. I felt _____ (relax) after reading the funny story.
7. Each year, _____ (thousand) of visitors come to Huai'an to enjoy Huaiyang food. (淮安)
8. Yang Jiang, a well-known writer, went to England for _____ (far) study in 1935. (淮安)
9. Qiannan is in the _____ (south) part of Guizhou province. (黔南州)
10. The World Mall is another great place _____ (visit).

三、单项选择

11. My teacher has given me useful suggestions and I want to thank him from the _____ of my heart. (包头)
A. bottom B. condition
C. way D. surface

12. Lady Gaga is famous _____ her beautiful voice.
A. as B. with
C. for D. on

13. _____ visitors came to take photos of Hongyadong during the vacation. (重庆A)
A. Thousand
B. Thousand of
C. Thousands
D. Thousands of

14. —The box is too heavy to carry. What's in it?
—Oh, it is _____ books. (十堰)
A. filled with B. covered with
C. used for D. asked for

15. You can see the Statue of Liberty in _____.
A. Britain B. China
C. Denmark D. America

16. The workers in the Emei Mountains have to _____ rubbish to keep the mountains clean.
A. turn up
B. pick up
C. set up
D. give up

四、同义句转换

17. A few famous writers will come to our school next week.
_____ famous writers will come to our school next week.

18. The park is full of people every day in the morning.
The park _____ _____ _____ people every day in the morning.

19. That's all for today's fashion show.
_____ _____ _____ today's fashion show.

20. You will realize your dream if you work hard at your lessons.
_____ _____, _____ you will realize your dream.

五、根据汉语意思完成句子

21. 请把这个瓶子装满水。
Please _____ the bottle _____ water.

22. 再向前约两英里就是那个村庄。
The village is about two miles _____ _____.

23. 一天辛苦的工作之后,中央公园是一个放松的好地方。
Central Park is a good place _____ _____ after _____ _____ _____ _____.

24. 这个城市以美丽的园林而出名。 (苏州改编)
The city _____ _____ _____ its beautiful gardens.

25. 看!有个女孩站在楼顶。
Look! A girl is standing _____ _____ _____ _____ the building.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

Simple past tense and present perfect tense

There are some differences between the simple past tense and the present perfect tense.

· We use the simple past tense to tell what happened in the past.

Daniel went to Beijing two years ago.

past present

We use the present perfect tense to talk about an action that started in the past and continues to the present.

Daniel has lived in Beijing for two years.

past present

TIP

We often use these time expressions with the present perfect tense.

yesterday the other day last … …ago

· We use the simple past tense to tell what happened in the past.

Daniel bought a new computer last month.

past present

We use the present perfect tense to talk about the result of an action. When the action happened is not very important. It may have just happened or happened some time ago.

Daniel has bought a new computer.

(Daniel has a new computer now.)

past present

TIP

We often use these time expressions with the present perfect tense.

already ever just recently

(not) yet so far up to now

until/till now

· We use the simple past tense to tell what happened in the past.

Mr Wu visited Canada in 2010 and 2011.

past present

We use the present perfect tense to tell how many times an action has happened till now.

Mr Wu has been to Canada twice.

past present

语法

一般过去时和现在完成时

一般过去时和现在完成时之间有一些不同的地方。

· 我们用一般过去时述说过去发生的事。

丹尼尔两年前去过北京。

过去 现在

我们用现在完成时谈论一个从过去开始发生并持续到现在的动作。

丹尼尔住在北京两年了。

过去 现在

提示

在一般过去时中，我们常用这些时间表达。

昨天 前几天 上一个…… ……前

· 我们用一般过去时述说过去发生的事。

丹尼尔上个月买了一台新电脑。

过去 现在

我们用现在完成时谈论动作的结果。这个动作什么时候发生不是非常重要。它可能是刚刚发生或一段时间之前发生的。

丹尼尔买了一台新电脑。

（丹尼尔现在有一台新电脑。）

过去 现在

提示

在现在完成时中，我们常常用这些时间表达。

已经 曾经 刚刚 最近

还（没有） 到目前为止 到目前为止 直到现在

· 我们用一般过去时讲述过去发生的事。

吴先生在 2010 年和 2011 年拜访了加拿大。

过去 现在

我们用现在完成时来讲述一个动作到现在为止已经发生了多少次。

吴先生去过加拿大两次了。

过去 现在

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Differences between the two

A Simon is showing Millie some pictures. Complete her sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

1. I _____ (visit) the Palace Museum with my grandparents the other day.
2. I _____ (climb) Mount Huang last Summer.
3. _____ you ever _____ (try) the famous Tianjin Baozi?
4. I am happy that I _____ (learn) to swim.

B Mr Wu is asking the students to make sentences with the correct tenses. Help them complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

1. I _____ (finish/just) my homework.
   Millie _____ (finish) her homework 20 minutes ago.
2. I _____ (write) an email to my friend yesterday.
   Daniel _____ (write/already) two emails.
3. I _____ (be) in Hainan last month.
   Some of our classmates _____ (not be) to Hainan yet.
4. I _____ (live) in Sunshine Town since I was born.
   Daniel _____ (live) in Nanjing in 2007.

C Millie has never been to Nanjing. She is asking Simon about the city. Complete their conversation with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Millie: (1) _____ (you/be/ever) to Nanjing?
Simon: Yes. I (2) _____ (be) there three times.
Millie: When (3) _____ (you/go) there last?
Simon: Last summer. I (4) _____ (spend) a week there.
Millie: (5) _____ (you/like) it?
Simon: Oh yes. I (6) _____ (have) a great time there. I (7) _____ (visit) many places of interest and (8) _____ (eat) lots of local food.
Millie: Lucky you! I (9) _____ (be/never) there.

D Millie is writing about the USA in her diary. Complete her diary entry with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

be	buy	read	return	see	show

Saturday, 15 March

Have you ever **dreamt**/dremt/ **of**[1] travelling around the world without a passport/pɑːspɔːt/? Yes, you can realize your dream **by taking an online tour**[2]. Yesterday

两者之间的不同

A 西蒙正在给米莉看一些照片。用括号中所给词的正确形式完成她的句子。

1. 前几天，我和我的外祖父母_____（参观）故宫博物馆。
2. 去年夏天，我_____（爬）黄山。
3. 你曾经_____（尝试）著名的天津包子吗？
4. 我很高兴，我_____（学习）游泳。

B 吴老师正在让同学们用正确的时态造句子。帮助他们用括号中所给词的正确形式完成句子。

1. 我_____（完成/刚刚）我的家庭作业。
   米莉 20 分钟前_____（完成）她的家庭作业。
2. 我昨天给我的朋友_____（写）一封电子邮件。
   丹尼尔_____（写/已经）两封电子邮件。
3. 上周，我_____（是）在海南。
   我们的一些同学_____（不是）去过海南。
4. 自从我出生以后，我_____（住）在阳光镇。
   丹尼尔于 2007 年_____（住）在南京。

C 米莉从未去过南京。她正在问西蒙关于那座城市的事。用括号里所给词的正确形式完成他们的对话。

米莉：（1）_____（你/是/曾经）去过南京吗？
西蒙：是的。我（2）_____（是）那儿三次了。
米莉：最后一次（3）_____（你/去）是什么时候？
西蒙：去年夏天。我在那儿（4）_____（度过）一周的时间。
米莉：（5）_____（你/喜欢）它吗？
西蒙：哦，是的。我在那儿（6）_____（有）很愉快。我（7）_____（参观）许多的名胜古迹，还（8）_____（吃）许多当地的食物。
米莉：你真幸运！我（9）_____（是/从未）去过那儿。

D 米莉正在她的日记里写关于美国的事。用方框中所给动词的正确形式完成她的日记。

是	买	读	返回	看	展示

3 月 15 日，星期六

你曾经想象过没有护照而环游世界吗？是的，你可以通过网上旅游实现你的梦想。昨天，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Daniel (1) _____ me an online tour of the USA. I (2) _____ never _____ so many wonderful pictures before.

Last week, I (3) _____ a book about the places of interest in the USA. I (4) _____ 20 pages already. It's really interesting. My dad (5) _____ just _____ from the USA, but I (6) _____ never _____ there. I hope I can visit the USA some day.

丹尼尔向我 (1) _____美国的网上旅游。我之前从未 (2) _____如此多漂亮的图片。

上周，我 (3) _____一本关于美国的名胜古迹的书。我已经 (4) _____20页。它真的很有趣。我的爸爸刚从美国 (5) _____，但是我从未 (6) _____那儿。我希望有一天我可以参观美国。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 dream of 梦想；想象

eg: The boy **dreams of** becoming a pilot.
那男孩一心渴望当飞行员。

考向: dream of 也可用 dream about 替换。

eg: We all **dream about** things that we would like to do, and things we hope to achieve in the future.
我们都梦想过要做什么，而且也希望在将来能圆梦。

拓展 dream 也可作名词，意为“梦”，梦想。

eg: It was only a **dream**, after all.
这不过是一场梦而已。

派生词：dreamer *n.* 梦想家

速记小筏

一语巧记: I **dreamed** a sweet dream. I **dreamed of** being a pilot. 我做了个很甜美的梦。我梦想自己成为一名飞行员。

【考题在线 1】 Hold on to your _____ (梦想), one day it may come true. （莱芜）

【考题在线 2】 Whenever I see the birds, I'll _____ flying in the sky.

A. think up　　B. dream of
C. work on　　D. pick up

点拨: think of“想出”；dream of“梦想，梦见”；work on“从事于”；pick up“捡起”。句意为“无论何时我看到鸟，我都会梦想在蓝天上飞翔”。四个选项中只有 dream of 有“梦想”的意思。

2 by taking an online tour 通过在线旅游

考向: by 此处表示“通过……，靠……的方式”，后面接动词的-ing 形式，表示“通过某种方式获得某种结果”。

eg: My cousin learns English **by** watching an English TV programme.
我的表妹通过看一个英文电视节目学英语。

【考题在线 3】 You can improve (提高) your English _____ reading more. （鞍山）

A. in　　B. with
C. by　　D. of

点拨: 本题用**语法判定法**。by 后面接动词的-ing 形式，表示“通过某种方式获得某种结果”。句意：你可以通过多读书提高你的英语。

考题在线答案

1. dream
2. B
3. C

III. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

一般过去时和现在完成时都可以表示过去发生的动作，但是在具体的语境中，这两种时态有明显的区别。

考点 1: 一般过去时

考向: 表示过去某时间发生的动作或存在的状态，说话的侧重点在陈述过去发生的动作或状态。常与 last night, yesterday, last week, some years ago, in 2000, in the past, at that time, just now 等时间状语连用。

eg: They **visited** our school **last week**.
他们上周参观了我们学校。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

（重庆中考）The girl **bought** lots of clothes on the day of Double 11 **last year**. 去年“双11”那一天这个女孩买了好多衣服。

【考题在线1】—The bread is really delicious.
—Thank you. I _____ it myself. （河北）
A. make　　B. made
C. will make　　D. am making
点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：——这面包真的很可口。——谢谢。这是我自己做的。根据语境知，“做面包”的动作发生在过去，应用一般过去时态。

【考题在线2】—Jerry, have you ever been to the Great Wall?
—Yes. I _____ there with my parents last year. （天津）
A. go　　B. went
C. will go　　D. have gone
点拨：本题用题眼法。句意：——格里，你去过长城吗？——是的，我去年和我父母亲去过。答语的时间状语 last year 属于一般过去时的标志词，故选 went。

考点2：现在完成时

考向：表示到说话时为止已经发生或完成（不一定结束）的动作或状态，强调造成的结果或对现在产生的影响。句中常有 just, ever, never, before, since + 从句/时间点，for + 时间段，等状语。

eg: I **have bought** a new mobile phone.
我买了一部新手机。（指有新手机可用）
I **have been** to china many times.
我去过中国很多次。（指对中国熟悉）

【考题在线3】—Look! Somebody _____ the lights.
—Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it. （连云港）
A. turns off
B. is turning off
C. was turning off
D. has turned off
点拨：本题用语境法。句意：——看！有人把灯关了。——哦，不是我。我没做。由后文大意“我没做”可推知：此处强调已经发生的动作，且对现在造成了影响，故用现在完成时。

【考题在线4】—Yunnan is very beautiful. I _____ there last year.
—Yes, I _____ there twice. （广安）
A. went; have gone
B. went; have been
C. have gone; went
D. have been; went
点拨：考查动词的时态。句意：——云南非常美丽。我去年去过那里。——是的，我去过那里两次了。last year 与一般过去时连用，故排除 C、D 两项；再由 twice 可知，表“曾经去过”用现在完成时态 have been。

考点3：一般过去时与现在完成时的其他区别

考向：现在完成时强调动作的结果或对现在的影响，属于现在时的范畴；一般过去时强调动作所发生的时间，属于过去时的范畴。因此，过去时须跟过去时间连用或跟有表示过去时间的上下文连用，而现在完成时不能与过去时间连用。

eg: I read the book two weeks ago.
我两周前读了这本书。

【考题在线5】—Are you a basketball player in your school?
—Yes. I _____ the team 3 years ago. I _____ in it for 3 years. （眉山）
A. joined; was
B. was joined; am
C. have joined; have been
D. joined; have been
点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：——你在你们学校是个篮球运动员吗？——是的。三年前我加入了这个队，我加入这个队已经三年了。3 years ago 是一般过去时的时间状语，第一个空用一般过去时，且用主动语态；时间状语 for 3 years 为一段时间，作状语时谓语动词应为可持续性动词且应用现在完成时。

考题在线答案
1. B
2. B
3. D
4. B
5. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见228页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. We _____ (begin) to learn English three years ago. We _____ (learn) it for three years.
2. Some of Lucy's classmates _____ (not be) to Hainan yet.
3. My aunt _____ (visit) some places of interest in America and _____ (eat) some local food in 2013.
4. —_____ you _____ (see) my iPad anywhere?
   —Yes. I _____ (see) it on your desk a moment ago.
5. Lucy _____ (go) to Shanghai. She _____ (leave) this morning.
6. I _____ (buy) the bike two months ago. I _____ (buy) it for two months.
7. Her father _____ (drop) her off at the school gate and then drove to work. (包头)
8. —Is your father at home?
   —No, I'm afraid he _____ (go) out. (盐城)

二、单项选择

9. —Has your daughter come back from Australia?
   —Yes. She _____ there for three years. (包头)
   A. has stayed B. stays
   C. stayed D. had stayed
10. —I still don't know what _____ while I was away from home.
    —You'll know it all some day, I believe. (武汉)
    A. had happened
    B. would happen
    C. has happened
    D. happened
11. —Excuse me, look at the sign NO PHOTOS!
    —Sorry, I _____ it. (呼和浩特)
    A. don't see B. didn't see
    C. haven't seen D. won't see
12. —Great changes have taken place in our hometown over the past years.
    —Yeah. Things _____ different when we were young. (泰州)
    A. have been B. are
    C. will be D. were
13. —I have seen the film *The Jurassic World* Ⅱ《侏罗纪世界Ⅱ》. It's very interesting.
    —Really? When _____ you _____ it? (哈尔滨)
    A. have; seen B. did; see
    C. will; see
14. —Your new watch is so nice! When did you buy it?
    —In April. I _____ it for two months. (黄冈)
    A. have had B. had
    C. have bought D. bought
15. My uncle has taught in this school _____ he was twenty years old. (鞍山)
    A. since B. for
    C. until D. after
16. —Where is Tom? We can't find him anywhere.
    — Perhaps he _____ home. (黄冈)
    A. has gone B. is going
    C. went D. was going
17. —The town of Huarong _____ a lot in the past five years.
    —That's true. It's becoming more and more beautiful. (鄂州)
    A. changed
    B. has changed
    C. had changed
    D. is changing
18. Julie's father _____ to London last month. He _____ there three times. (连云港)
    A. went; had gone
    B. has gone; has been
    C. went; has been
    D. has been; had gone

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Travelling at home

A1 Daniel and Peter are planning an online tour of Sydney, Australia. Listen to their conversation and help Peter complete his notes.

课文听力A1音频及材料

How to use the website

The website takes you to different places around the world. To learn about a city, just find it in the menu (1) _____ of the page and click on it. If you click on the "(2) _____" icon, you will see some (3) _____ of the city first. Further down at the (4) _____ of the page, you can also find other information about the city.

A2 Peter took some notes of Sydney. Listen to Daniel and Peter's second conversation. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

课文听力A2音频及材料

☐ 1. Sydney is on the north-east coast /kəʊst/[1] of Australia.

☐ 2. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.

☐ 3. Sydney is near a lake.

☐ 4. The Sydney Opera House looks like a ship with many sails.

☐ 5. It takes about 30 minutes to climb the Harbour Bridge.

☐ 6. In April, it is spring in Australia.

A3 Peter is writing about the online tour. Listen to their second conversation again and help him complete his article.

课文听力A3音频及材料

Today Daniel and I took an online tour on the website "Around the World in Eight Hours".

Sydney is on the (1) _____ coast of Australia. It is the (2) _____ city in Australia.

On the website, we saw lots of pictures of Sydney. Sydney is near the (3) _____. There are many beautiful (4) _____ there. We also saw a wonderful building called the (5) _____. It is a (6) _____ and looks like a (7) _____ with many sails. Near the Sydney Opera House is the famous (8) _____. People can climb it. It takes about (9) _____. It is really cool!

综合技能

A 在家旅行

A1 丹尼尔和彼得正在计划一次到澳大利亚悉尼的网上旅游。听他们的对话并帮助彼得完成他的笔记。

如何使用网站

这个网站把你带到全世界不同的地方。要了解一个城市，只要在页面里的菜单(1) _____中找到它，并点击它。如果你点击"(2) _____"图标，首先你将会看见一些这座城市的(3) _____。更进一步在这一页(4) _____，你也可以找到关于这座城市的其他信息。

A2 彼得对悉尼做了记录。听丹尼尔和彼得的第二次对话。如果句子正确写T，如果错误写F。

☐ 1. 悉尼在澳大利亚的东北海岸。

☐ 2. 悉尼是澳大利亚最大的城市。

☐ 3. 悉尼在一个湖的附近。

☐ 4. 悉尼歌剧院看起来像一个带有许多船帆的轮船。

☐ 5. 爬上港湾大桥需要大约30分钟。

☐ 6. 在四月，澳大利亚是春天。

A3 彼得正在写关于网上旅游的文章。再次听他们第二部分对话，并且帮助他完成他的文章。

今天，丹尼尔和我进行了一个"八小时环游世界"的网上旅游。

悉尼在澳大利亚的(1) _____海岸。它是澳大利亚(2) _____城市。

在网站上，我们看到许多关于悉尼的图片。悉尼在(3) _____的附近。那有许多漂亮的(4) _____。我们也看到一个很棒的建筑叫做(5) _____。它是一个(6) _____，看起来像一个带有许多船帆的(7) _____。在悉尼歌剧院附近是著名的(8) _____。人们可以爬。这要花费大约(9) _____。这是非常酷的！

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Australian/ɒˈstreɪliən; ɔːˈstreɪliən/ seasons are the **opposite**/ˈɒpəzɪt/❷ of ours. For example, in April, it is (10) _____ in Australia!

澳大利亚的季节和我们的是相反的。比如，在四月，澳大利亚是（10）_____！

B Speak up: My pleasure.

Sandy is asking for Millie's help with the online tour. Talk to your partner about the problems you may have. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

B 大声说：别客气。

桑迪正在向米莉求助关于网上旅游的知识。与你的同伴一起讨论你可能会有的问题。用下面的对话作为例子。

Sandy: Would you **mind**/maɪnd/❸ showing me how to start this online tour?

桑迪：你介意告诉我怎样开始网上旅行吗？

Millie: Of course not. Just click on the "Tour" icon and it'll start.

米莉：当然不介意。只要点击"旅游"图标，它就开始了。

Sandy: Oh, good! It's starting. I want to look at some pictures first.

桑迪：哦，好的！开始了，我想先看一些图片。

Millie: That's easy. If you click on the "Camera" icon, you can see many pictures of the city.

米莉：很简单。如果你点击"照相机"图标，你可以看到这个城市的许多图片。

Sandy: Great! These pictures are so clear.

桑迪：真棒！这些图片是如此清晰。

Millie: Yes. Click on the "Print" icon when you want to print/prɪnt/.

米莉：是的。当你想把它打印出来的时候，点击"打印"图标。

Sandy: Thanks for your help, Millie.

桑迪：谢谢你的帮助，米莉。

Millie: My **pleasure**/ˈpleʒə(r)/❹.

米莉：不客气。

Study skills

学习技巧

Making charts

制作图表

We can use charts to organize our ideas when we write. This helps us see and understand the ideas better. We can also use charts to make notes of a piece of writing.

当我们写作的时候，我们可以用图表来组织我们的观点。这帮助我们更好地看到和理解观点。我们也可以用图表来对写作做记录。

We can use the following chart to show people what the website "Around the World in Eight Hours" is about.

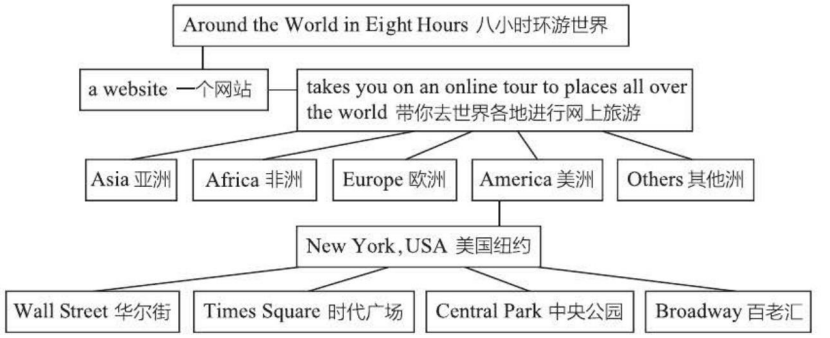
我们可以用下面的图表向人们展示网站"八小时环游世界"是关于什么的。

TIP

提示

When we make charts, we do not need to use complete sentences.

当我们制作图表时，我们不需要用完整的句子。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Millie is making a chart to introduce an online course to her classmates. Help her use the chart to organize her ideas. Write the letters in the boxes.

a. an online course
b. asking the way
c. booking/bʊkɪŋ/ tickets and hotels
d. Daily English
e. ordering meals
f. seeing a doctor
g. shopping
h. using English in daily communication

米莉正在制作一个图表介绍网上课程给她的同学。帮助她使用图表组织她的想法。在方框里写下字母。

a. 网上课程
b. 问路
c. 订票和旅馆
d. 日常英语
e. 订餐
f. 看病
g. 购物
h. 在日常生活中用英语交流

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶coast /kəʊst/ *n.* 海岸

eg: My hometown is on the **coast**.
我的家乡在海岸上。

搭配: on the coast 在海岸上;
the West Coast(美国)西海岸

❷opposite /ˈɒpəzɪt/ *n.* 对立的人(或物)

eg: Good is the **opposite** of bad.
好是坏的反义词。

考向: opposite 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
形容词	对面的	I saw Peter on the **opposite** side of the road. 我看见彼得在马路的对面。
	相反的;对立的	North is the **opposite** direction to south. 北是南的反方向。
介词	在……的对面	The hospital is **opposite** the post office. 医院在邮局对面。

【考题在线1】 The big old tree _____ (在……对面) the school in my hometown has left many sweet memories. (湖州改编)

❸mind /maɪnd/ *vt.* & *vi.* 介意

eg: Do you **mind** my sitting here?
你介意我坐在这儿吗?

考向一[重点]: mind 后接动名词形式作宾语,即 mind doing sth.,意为"介意做某事"。

【考题在线2】 Would you mind _____ (借) me your eraser? I can't find mine. (凉山州)

特色土方法

接动名词作宾语的动词速记口诀

Mrs. P Black missed a bag. (P·布莱克夫人丢了一个袋子。)

【妙语诠释】该句话中每个字母代表了一个动词或短语,这些动词要求后面跟动名词作宾语。这些动词分别是:

M = mind, r = risk, s = succeed in,
P = practice, B = be busy,
l = look forward to, a = admit,
c = can't help, k = keep on,
m = miss, i = insist on,
s = suggest, s = stop, e = enjoy,
d = delay, a = avoid, b = be worth,
a = advise, g = give up

考向二[易错点]: Would/Do you mind doing sth.? 通常用来表示请求允许或客气地请他人做某事,意为"你介意……吗?"。回答表示不介意时,通常用: Of course not./Not at all./Certainly not. 等。表示反对时,可以说: Sorry, I...

eg: —**Would you mind** my **turning** on TV?
你介意我打开电视吗?
—Certainly not./Sorry, I want to sleep now.
当然不。/对不起,我现在想睡觉了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 3】—Do you mind my smoking here?
—_____. Look at the sign. It says, "No smoking." （乐山）
A. Never mind　　B. Of course not
C. You'd better not

❹**pleasure** /ˈpleʒə(r)/ *n.* 高兴，乐事
eg：The work is a **pleasure** to me.
这份工作对我来说是一个乐趣。
考向一：pleasure 可以用在交际用语中。
eg：It's a **pleasure**. /My **pleasure**.
不用谢/别客气。
With **pleasure**. 愿意为您效劳。

【考题在线 4】—So kind of you to give me a ride to the bus stop.
—_____ （泸州）
A. My pleasure.　　B. Never mind.
C. It doesn't matter.　　D. That's nothing to do.

考向二［难点］：pleasure 还有"愉快的事；乐趣"的意思。pleasure 作"高兴，快乐"讲时为不可数名词；表示"乐趣，高兴的事"时是可数名词。
拓展 pleasant *adj.* 令人愉快的，美好的；
pleased *adj.* 高兴的，愉快的

考题在线答案
1. opposite　2. lending　3. C　4. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见 228 页）

单项选择

1. We will achieve our China Dream _____ we work hard and never give up. （资阳）
A. and　　B. so　　C. if　　D. but

2. —Could you please help me carry the heavy bag?
—_____. （抚顺）
A. It's a pleasure　　B. With pleasure
C. You're welcome　　D. It doesn't matter

3. —It's too hot. Would you mind my _____ the window?
—_____. Do it as you like, please. （梅州）
A. to open; OK　　B. opening; Certainly not
C. opening; Of course　　D. open; Good idea

4. —Let's get Laurie a gift for his birthday.
—OK. Shall we _____ a book online for him? （荷泽）
A. afford　　B. order　　C. offer

5. —Tom, have you ever read the book *A Tale of Two Cities* _____ by Charles Dickens?
—Yes, I finished reading it last winter vacation. （安顺）
A. wrote　　B. to write　　C. writing　　D. written

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

Introducing a country

Ⓐ **Amy wants to introduce the UK to her friends. She collected some information on the Internet and made a chart.**

The UK	About the country	An island country	**England**/ˈɪŋglənd/❶, Wales …
		London, the capital	Big and modern
		Long history	Kings and **queens**/kwiːnz/❷ were once its rulers/ˈruːlə(r)z/

任务

介绍一个国家

Ⓐ 埃米想向她的朋友介绍英国。她在互联网上收集了一些信息，并且制作了一个图表。

英国	关于国家	一个岛国	英格兰，威尔士……
		首都伦敦	大且现代化
		悠久的历史	曾经国王和女王为统治者

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The UK	Places to visit	Palaces and castles	Buckingham Palace
		Museums	the British Museum
		Places of natural beauty	the Lake District
	Others	Best time to visit	May to September
		Weather	Changes often
		Money	**Pounds**/paʊndz/❸

英国	可游览的地方	宫殿和城堡	白金汉宫
		博物馆	大英博物馆
		自然美景	湖区
	其他	参观的最好时节	从五月到九月
		天气	经常变化
		钱	英镑

Useful expressions

It is a/an ...country.

..., the capital city, is big and modern/beautiful.

There are/is ...on/in ...

It has always been famous for ...

The best time to visit ...is ...

The weather often/seldom changes ...

有用的表达

它是一个……国家。

……,首都城市,很大,而且是现代化的/美丽的。

在……有……

它总是因为……而著名。

参观……的最好时间是……

天气常常/很少变化……

B Amy has written an introduction to the UK. Read her article.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, also called the UK, is an island country. It **is made up of**❹ England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. London, the capital city, is big and modern. Like China, the UK has a long history. Kings and queens were once its rulers.

课文朗读B

There are many palaces and castles in this old European /ˌjʊərəˈpiːən/ country. Buckingham Palace is the most famous one. It has been the home of kings and queens for a long time. The UK has always been famous for its museums. Among them is the British Museum. You can learn a lot about the world's culture there. The UK also has many places of natural beauty, such as the Lake District. You can see swans and other wild birds on the lakes there.

The best time to visit the UK is from May to September because its winter is wet and cold. The weather changes often there. It is sunny one minute, but rainy the next, so prepare for it before you go there. Moreover, remember that people use pounds there, not RMB or dollars/ˈdɒlə(r)z/!

TIP: You can search for information on the Internet or in the library.

C Pick a country that interests you and make a chart to organize your ideas. Then write an introduction. You can add some pictures to make it more interesting.

B 埃米写了一篇介绍英国的文章。阅读她的文章。

大不列颠及北爱尔兰联合王国,也叫英国,是一个岛国。它由英格兰、苏格兰、威尔士和北爱尔兰组成。首都城市伦敦很大而且是现代化的。就像中国一样,英国有着悠久的历史。国王和女王都曾是它的统治者。

在这个古老的欧洲国家里有很多宫殿和城堡。白金汉宫是最著名的一个。它成为国王和女王的住所已经很长一段时间。英国一贯因为它的博物馆而著名。大英博物馆就是其中之一。你可以在那儿了解许多关于世界的文化。英国也有许多自然美景,例如,湖区。在湖上,你可以看到天鹅和其他的野生鸟类。

参观英国最好的时间是从5月到9月,因为那儿的冬天是潮湿和寒冷的。那儿的天气是多变的。前一刻还是晴天,但是接下来就是雨天,因此去那儿之前你应该准备充分。而且,记住那儿的人使用英镑,不是人民币或美元!

提示:你可以在网上或图书馆里搜索信息。

C 选择一个使你感兴趣的国家,并且制作一个图表去组织你的观点。然后写一个介绍。你可以插入一些图片,使它更加有趣。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about an introduction to New York.		
2. to use the new words to talk about a place.		
3. the differences between the simple past tense and the present perfect tense.		
4. to use a chart to organize ideas.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

自我评价

我已经学会了	细节	结果
1. 关于对纽约的介绍。		
2. 用新的单词去谈论一个地方。		
3. 一般过去时和现在完成时之间的区别。		
4. 用图表组织观点。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 England /ˈɪŋgl ənd/ *n.* （英国）英格兰
eg: His friend comes from **England**.
他的朋友来自英格兰。
考向: England 的形容词形式为 English，意为“英国的”。
eg: I know something about **English** history.
我懂一些英国历史。

2 queen /kwiːn/ *n.* 女王
eg: She met the **Queen** last week.
上周她受到了女王的接见。
拓展 king *n.* 国王

3 pound /paʊnd/ *n.* 英镑
eg: I have only got five **pounds**.
我只有五英镑了。
考向: pound 为可数名词，还可作重量单位，意为“磅”。
eg: How many **pounds** do you weigh?
你体重多少磅？

4 be made up of 由……组成
eg: The group **was made up of** doctors and nurses. 这个团体是由医生和护士组成的。
拓展 be made of 由……制成（看得出原材料）；be made from 由……制成（看不出原材料）；be made by 由……制作；be made in 在……制造。
eg: （菏泽中考）When you go abroad, you'll find that so many products in local shops **are made in** China.
当你出国时，你会发现在当地的商店里有许多中国制造的产品。

知识微课：be made...

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：三步两要素法介绍某个城市
三步：步骤一：点明所介绍的城市
步骤二：介绍城市的主要景点
步骤三：感受或愿望
两要素：要素一：景点的位置
要素二：其他（历史、用途等）

易错点提示
1. 注意时态。介绍某地的位置时应用一般现在时。
2. 注意地理位置及景点介绍的准确性。

参考词汇和句型

单词	gather; exciting; centre; garden; relax
短语	take an online tour; the capital of; thousands of; in the centre of; places of interest
句型	It is exciting to …; It has been one of the …; It has a history of …; It is a good place to …

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典例

假如你在“八小时环游世界”网站游览了中国首都北京，请根据以下要点写一篇短文，可适当发挥。词数100左右，开头已给出，不计入总词数。

(1)天安门广场(Tian'anmen Square)是世界上最大的广场，参观升旗仪式很有趣。

(2)故宫(the Palace Museum)位于北京市中心，是世界五大宫之一。

(3)北海公园(Beihai Park)是中国最古老的公园之一，已有超过一千年的历史。

An Online Tour

Today I took an online tour of Beijing on the website "Around the World in Eight Hours".

Beijing is the capital of China. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

【范文欣赏】

An Online Tour

Today I took an online tour of Beijing on the website "Around the World in Eight Hours".

Beijing is the capital of China. Tian'anmen Square is the biggest square in the world. Every year, **thousands of** people gather here on National Day. **It's exciting to** see the flag-raising ceremony.

In the centre of the city is the Palace Museum. **It has been one of** the five greatest palaces in the world. Beihai Park is one of the oldest gardens in China. It has a history of 1,000 years. It is also a good place to relax after a day's hard work.

OK. So much for Beijing. There are many places of interest in Beijing. I **dream of visiting** it some day.

【点评】

本文用“三步两要素法”介绍某个城市。首句点明所介绍的城市：北京。第二、三段介绍了北京的三个景点：天安门，故宫和北海公园。并介绍了景点的位置、地位、历史等。最后一段表达了自己的愿望。

添彩点：1. one of the..., thousands of, dream of等短语的运用体现了作者活学活用的能力。

2. It's exciting to..., It has been...等句式的运用彰显了作者的写作功底。



“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见229页)

一、根据汉语提示完成单词

1. The _____(女王) smiled and walked past.
2. How many _____(美元) do you need?
3. When you think of Venice, does it bring any other _____(欧洲的) city to your mind? (扬州)
4. Everyone is crazy about football in _____(英格兰).
5. This pen cost me ten _____(英镑).

二、根据汉语意思完成句子

6. 这座高楼是由数百万块石头建成的。
   The tall building _____ _____ _____ _____ millions of stones.
7. 英国是个岛国，英国的首都是伦敦。
   The UK is _____ _____ _____. _____ _____ _____ the UK is London.
8. 我们周一到周五上学。
   We go to school _____ Monday _____ Friday.
9. 中国有着悠久的历史。
   China _____ _____ _____ _____.
10. 英国的天气变化无常。
    The weather in the UK _____ _____.

三、单元知识浓缩

New York is the b_____[11] city in the USA. Wall Street is the w_____[12] trade centre. It is at the s_____[13] end of Manhattan Island. There are many big companies and i_____[14] banks here. Every year, thousands of people g_____[15] on Times Square on New Year's Eve. It's exciting to see the h_____[16] glass ball falling t_____[17] the darkness. Central Park is in the c_____[18] of the island. It's a good place to r_____[19] after a hard day's work. Broadway is f_____[20] for its theatres.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 A good read

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠句法分析法(76 页)
写作方法	◇三段五要素法介绍某人的阅读习惯(91 页)
解题方法	1语法判定法(77,83,219 页)　2固定短语法(77,82 页) 3句意理解法(82,219,229 页)　4题眼法(87 页) 5语境联想法(87,219,229 页)　6词语应用法(88,219 页) 7交际法(219 页)　8语境理解法(219 页) 9上下文联系法(219 页)　10推理判断法(219,229 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论优秀的读物		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	read *n.* 读物　cooking *n.* 烹饪,烹调　Germany *n.* 德国 knowledge *n.* 知识　spare *adj.* 空闲的;多余的 French *adj.* 法国(人)的　writer *n.* 作家,作者 ugly *adj.* 丑陋的　touch *vt.* 感动,触动	give sth. to sb. 给某人某物 be interested in … 对……感兴趣 spare time 空闲时间
	Period 2	against *prep.* 紧靠,碰,撞　tie *vt.* 捆,绑 over *prep.* 从一边到另一边　stomach *n.* 腹部;胃 until *conj.* 直到……为止　finger *n.* 手指 tiny *adj.* 极小的　continue *vt.* & *vi.* 继续 either *adv.* 也　manage *vt.* & *vi.* 勉强完成;管理 lift *vt.* 举起,抬高;提高　army *n.* 大批,大群 must *v.* 应该,必须;一定　unable *adj.* 不能的;不会的 shoulder *n.* 肩膀	as … as I can 尽我所能地…… by the time…到……的时候 be tired out 筋疲力尽 fall over 摔倒　wake up 醒来 go to sleep 入睡 the same …as … 与……一样…… shout at sb. 对某人大喊 manage to do sth. 设法做成某事 run away from 突然离开,逃离
	Period 3	hand *vi.* 交;递,给　review *n.* 评论 return *vt.* 归还	ask for 要求,请求 hand in 上交,递交 and so on ……等等 on time 准时
	Period 4	refuse *vt.* & *vi.* 拒绝,回绝　success *n.* 成功 translate *vt.* & *vi.* 翻译　sales *n.* [复]销售量 copy *n.* 一本(份,册);副本 Canadian *adj.* 加拿大(人)的　experience *n.* 经历,经验	so far 到目前为止 at a time 每次,依次
	Period 5	advice *n.* 建议,忠告,劝告　habit *n.* 习惯 opposite *prep.* 在……对面;与……相反	open up 开启;开创;开辟
句型	①What do you like to …? 你喜欢……? ②Millie has decided what to …米莉已经决定……什么。 ③You must (not)…你(不)应该…… ④She has to …她不得不…… ⑤I spend …hours a week reading. 我一周花……小时读书。 ⑥I love reading because …我喜欢读书,因为……		
语法	1. 特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式　2. must 与 have to		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—Have you decided what to **do with**❶ these books, Hobo?
—Not yet.
—Give them to me then.
—OK. I didn't know you liked books!
—Oh yes. I have to use them to **reach**❷ the box on the fridge.

课文朗读 Comic strip

We love reading!

The Class 1, Grade 8 students are enjoying their Reading Week. They are talking about their favourite books.

Task

Complete a survey on reading habits and write a report on it.

Welcome to the unit

What type of book do you like?

A **Mr Wu is showing the Class 1, Grade 8 students some books. Write the type of book under each picture. Then put a tick (√) in the box if you have read this type of book before.**

cooking/ˈkʊkɪŋ/❸	culture	health	novel	
science	travel			

B **Sandy and Daniel are talking about what they like to read. Work in pairs and talk about the type of book you like. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

Sandy: What are you reading, Daniel?
Daniel: I'm reading a book about **Germany**/ˈdʒɜːməni/❹ in World War Ⅱ. I'm interested in history books. They improve my knowledge/ˈnɒlɪdʒ/ of the past.
Sandy: But I think they're boring.
Daniel: What do you like to read in your **spare**/speə(r)/❺ time?
Sandy: I like reading novels and plays. *The Hunchback of Notre Dame* by the French/frentʃ/ **writer**/ˈraɪtə(r)/❻ Victor Hugo is great.
Daniel: I've read that book. The story of the **ugly**/ˈʌgli/❼ man Quasimodo really touched/tʌtʃt/ me.
Sandy: Me too.

卡通漫画

——霍波，你已经决定怎样处理这些书了吗？
——还没有。
——那么把它们给我。
——好的。我不知道你喜欢书！
——哦，是的。我得用它们来够冰箱上的盒子。

我们爱阅读！

八年级一班的学生正在享受他们阅读周的乐趣。他们正在讨论他们最喜爱的书。

任务

完成一个阅读习惯的调查，并且写一个关于它的报告。

单元导入

你喜欢什么类型的书？

A 吴老师正在向八年级一班的学生展示一些书。在每幅图片下写出书的类型。如果你以前已经看过了这种类型的书，就在方框里打√。

烹饪 文化 健康 小说 科学 旅游

B 桑迪和丹尼尔正在讨论他们喜欢读什么（书）。两人一组练习并且讨论你喜欢的书的种类。用下面的对话作为例子。

桑迪：丹尼尔，你正在读什么？
丹尼尔：我正在读一本关于德国在第二次世界大战中的书。我对历史书感兴趣。它们增加我（关于）过去的知识。
桑迪：但是我认为它们没趣。
丹尼尔：你喜欢在你的空闲时间读什么？
桑迪：我喜欢读小说和戏剧。法国作家维克多·雨果的《巴黎圣母院》是很棒的。
丹尼尔：我已经读过那本书了。那个丑陋的男人卡西莫多的故事真的感动了我。
桑迪：我也是。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] do with 对付，处理

考向：do with 相当于 deal with，do with 常与 what 连用，deal with 常与 how 连用。

eg：**What** should I **do with** this old computer?
我应该怎么处理这台旧电脑？
How do we **deal with** these new challenges?
我们如何处理这些新挑战呢？

【考题在线1】It took me almost a whole day to _____ so many emails. （南京）
A. deal with　　B. cut in
C. cheer for　　D. run out

❷reach /riːtʃ/ *v.* 伸手（脚）够到；到达

eg：The little girl can't **reach** the apples on the table.
那个小女孩够不到桌上的苹果。


知识微课：get,reach与arrive

考向[易错点]：辨析 get，arrive 与 reach

词条	含义及用法	示例
get	不及物动词，常和介词 to 连用。但当到达的地点为副词（here，there，home）时，to 要省略。	I **got** home late yesterday. 我昨天到家迟了。
arrive	不及物动词，后面必须接介词 at（小地方）/ in（大地方），才能接表示地点的名词。	He will **arrive in** Beijing in an hour. 过一小时他将到达北京。
reach	及物动词，后面可接名词和副词。	We **reached** here on foot. 我们步行到这儿的。

【考题在线2】用所给单词的适当形式填空：
Hurry up，Tom. Grandma _____ (arrive) in half an hour. （温州）

❸cooking /ˈkʊkɪŋ/ *n.* 烹饪，烹调

eg：My mother likes reading books about **cooking**.
我妈妈喜欢看关于烹饪的书。

考向：cooking 的动词形式为 cook，意为“烹调；煮”。

eg：—Could you show me the method of **cooking** the tasty cookie? 你能给我展示一下做这种美味的甜饼的方法吗？
—Please follow the instruction on the cookbook. 请按照烹饪书上的说明做。

注意：cook 既可以是动词“烹饪”，也可以是名词“厨师”，而 cooker 则是指“厨具”。

【考题在线3】根据句意及首字母提示，拼写单词：
He cooks very well and he is a c_____. （铜仁）

❹[高频] Germany /ˈdʒɜːməni/ *n.* 德国

eg：He was born in **Germany**, but he has made China his home.
他出生在德国，但他已经把中国当成他的家乡。

考向[难点]：Germany 的形容词形式为 German，意为“德国的”。German 还可作名词，意为“德国人；德语”，其复数形式为 Germans。

拓展

国家	国家人	复数
China	Chinese	Chinese
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
England	Englishman	Englishmen
France	Frenchman	Frenchmen
America	American	Americans
Australia	Australian	Australians
Canada	Canadian	Canadians

特色土方法

国人复数变化形式：中日不变，英法变，其他-s 加后边。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 4】—Are all the students from _____ in your class?
—No, there are only 3 _____ in our class. The others are from other countries. (眉山)
A. Germany; Germen
B. Germany; Germans
C. German; Germans
D. German; Germany
点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查名词辨析。句意:——你班里所有的学生都来自德国吗?——不,我们班只有 3 个德国人。其他人来自其他国家。Germany"德国";German"德国人",其复数形式为 Germans。

5 spare /speə(r)/ *adj.* 空闲的,多余的
spare 作形容词时,意为"空闲的",与 free 同义,两词可相互替换。
eg:(贵港中考) I often help my mother feed chickens on rice in my **spare** time.
在我的空闲时间里,我经常帮助我母亲给小鸡喂稻米。
拓展 spare 还可作动词,意为"抽出;腾出"。常构成固定短语:spare some time for sb. 为某人抽出一些时间。
eg:Perhaps he cannot **spare** any time except on Sunday.
他大概除了星期天不能抽出任何时间了。

6 writer /ˈraɪtə(r)/ *n.* 作者,作家
eg: Why didn't the **writer** come here?
作者为什么没来这儿?
考向:writer 的动词形式为 write,意为"写"。writing *n.* 写作。
eg:The writer **wrote** his ninth book when he was fifty. 这位作家五十岁时写了他的第九本书。

速记小筏
一语巧记:The writer is good at **writing**. Now he is **writing** to his friends. 这位作家擅长写作。现在,他正在给他的朋友们写信。

7 ugly /ˈʌgli/ *adj.* 丑陋的
eg:He has a very ugly face.
他有一张非常丑陋的脸。
考向:ugly 的反义词:beautiful, good-looking, pretty *adj.* 漂亮的。
其比较级为 uglier,最高级为 ugliest。

考题在线答案
1. A 2. will arrive 3. cook 4. B

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 229 页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空
1. Laoshe was a famous _____ (write).
2. Please put away those _____ (Germany) keys to cars. They are going swimming. (镇江市区二模)
3. As students, we should try to master more _____ _____ (know) to build our motherland better. (鄂州)
4. It's _____ (bore) for me to stay at home all day long. (宿迁改编)
5. You can use this _____ (reach) that box.

二、单项选择
6. Fans all over the country are talking about _____ this football team has never won any match and _____ to do with it. (无锡锡北区一模)
A. whether; how B. why; how
C. whether; what D. why; what

7. The film _____ many people and some of them couldn't help crying while watching it. (南京联合体一模)
A. touched B. caught
C. felt D. reached

8. Mr. Smith will arrive at our school next week. The underlined part "arrive at" means _____. (梧州)【导学号:9577700】
A. get B. go C. come D. reach

9. —Excuse me. Could you tell me _____ my car?
—Sure. Park it right here. I'll help you. (青岛)
A. how to stop B. where to park
C. where to stop D. when to park

10. —Will you please help me to repair the computer now?
—Sorry. I'm too busy and I haven't a minute to _____.
A. spare B. take C. spend D. save

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入　拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A Gulliver in Lilliput

课文朗读A

Sandy loves reading novels. She is reading a book called *Gulliver's Travels*, by Jonathan Swift (1667 – 1745). Here is an extract from the book.

After our ship crashed **against** /əˈgenst/❶ the rocks, I swam **as far as I could**❷. By the time I finally felt the land under my feet, I was tired out. I fell down on the beach and **went to sleep**❸.

I woke up as the sun was rising❹, but I found I could not move. My arms, legs and hair were **tied**/taɪd/❺ to the ground!

Then I felt something on my leg. It moved up over my **stomach**/ˈstʌmək/❻ and neck **until**/ənˈtɪl/❼ it was standing near my face. I looked down and saw a very small man. He was **the same** size **as**❽ my little finger/ˈfɪŋgə(r)/! Where was I? Who was this tiny/ˈtaɪni/ person?

Soon more small men started climbing all over me. There were around 40 of them. I shouted at them—the loud noise made them all **fall over**❾. However, they soon got up again and **continued**/kənˈtɪnjuːd/❿ moving across my body.

One of these small men began talking to me, but I could not understand him. I did not know what to say **either** /ˈaɪðə(r)/⓫. I tried to pull one hand free and finally **managed**/ˈmænɪdʒd/⓬ to break the ropes. When I **lifted** /lɪftɪd/⓭ my left hand into the air, the small men began to shout. I looked down and saw a huge army/ˈɑːmi/ of tiny people. They were coming straight towards me. "I must /məst; mʌst/ run away from them," I thought, but I did not know how to get away.

B A strange world

B1 Sandy is not sure about the meanings of some words in the story. Help her match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. against (line 1) _____
2. tired out (line 2) _____
3. tie (line 5) _____
4. tiny (line 9) _____
5. continue (line 13) _____

a. keep doing something
b. very small
c. finish what you have tried to do
d. very tired
e. hitting something

阅读

A 格列佛在小人国

桑迪爱看小说。她正在阅读一本乔纳森·斯威夫特（1667 – 1745）写的叫《格列佛游记》的书。这是书中的一段摘录。

在我们的船撞到岩石坠毁之后，我奋力前游。当我最终感到大地在我的脚下时，我已经筋疲力尽了。我倒在沙滩上并且睡着了。

当太阳升起时我醒来了，但是我发现我动弹不得。我的胳膊、腿和头发被拴在地上了！

然后，我感觉有东西在我的腿上。它在我的肚子和脖子上移动直到它站在离我的脸很近的地方。我向下看并且看到一个很小的人。他不过就我的小手指那么点大！我在哪里？这个小人儿是谁？

很快更多的小人开始在我身上到处爬。他们大约40个。我朝他们大叫——巨大的声音把他们全都震倒了。然而，他们很快又起身，并继续在我身上走过。

这些小人中的一个开始和我谈话，但是我不明白他的话。我也不知道说什么。我试着解开一只手，最后终于成功地弄断了绳索。当我把我的左手举向空中时，小人们开始大叫。我向下望去，看到一大群小人儿。他们径直向我走来。"我必须逃离他们"，我想，但是我不知道如何离开。

B 一个奇怪的世界

B1 桑迪不确定故事中一些单词的意思。帮助她将左边的单词和右边的意思配对。在空白处写出正确的字母。

1. 碰，撞，紧靠（第1行）_____
2. 筋疲力尽（第2行）_____
3. 捆，绑（第5行）_____
4. 极小的（第9行）_____
5. 继续（第13行）_____

a. 继续做某事
b. 非常小
c. 完成你尽力做的事
d. 非常累
e. 碰撞某物

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

6. manage (line 16) _____ f. hold things together with ropes

B2 Sandy wants to explain what happened to Gulliver. She wrote down some notes on a piece of paper, but her mother tore it up by mistake. Help her match the events with their causes.

1. Gulliver fell down on the beach and went to sleep. _____
2. Gulliver found himself **unable**/ʌnˈeɪbl/[14] to move. _____
3. The tiny men all fell over. _____
4. Gulliver got one hand free. _____
5. Gulliver wanted to run away. _____

a. He managed to break the ropes.
b. His arms, legs and hair were tied to the ground.
c. He was tired out after swimming for a long time.
d. He saw a huge army of tiny people coming towards him.
e. Gulliver shouted at them.

B3 Sandy made some notes of Gulliver's story. Help her check for mistakes. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. Gulliver's ship crashed against the rocks. _____
2. When Gulliver woke up, it was almost evening. _____
3. A tiny man climbed onto Gulliver's body and stood on his shoulder/ˈʃəʊldə(r)/. _____
4. Gulliver shouted at the tiny men, but they did not care. _____
5. Gulliver talked with those small men. _____
6. Gulliver finally pulled his right hand free. _____

B4 Kitty is also interested in the story. She is asking Sandy about it. Help Sandy answer her questions.

1. **Kitty**: What did Gulliver do after their ship crashed against the rocks?
   Sandy: _____
2. **Kitty**: What did Gulliver find after he woke up?
   Sandy: _____
3. **Kitty**: How big was the small man?
   Sandy: _____
4. **Kitty**: Could Gulliver communicate with the small men?
   Sandy: _____

B5 Gulliver came to a strange land after their ship crashed against the rocks. Tell your partner how strange it was in your own words.

6. 设法；勉强完成；管理（第16行）_____ f. 用绳子把某物捆在一起

B2 桑迪想解释格列佛发生了什么事。她在一张纸上写了一些笔记，但是她的妈妈无意中把它撕碎了。帮她将事件和它们的原因配对。

1. 格列佛跌倒在沙滩上并睡着了。_____
2. 格列佛发现他自己不能动了。_____
3. 极小的人都跌倒了。_____
4. 格列佛解开了一只手。_____
5. 格列佛想逃跑。_____

a. 他成功地弄断了绳子。
b. 他的胳膊，腿和头发被拴在地上。
c. 他游了很长一段时间后筋疲力尽。
d. 他看见一大群小人儿向他走来。
e. 格列佛朝他们大叫。

B3 桑迪对格列佛的故事做了一些笔记。帮她检查错误。如果句子是对的写T，如果句子是错误的写F。

1. 格列佛的船撞到岩石坠毁了。_____
2. 当格列佛醒来时，几乎是晚上了。_____
3. 一个小人儿爬到格列佛的身体上，并站在他的肩膀上。_____
4. 格列佛朝那些小人儿大喊，但他们不在乎。_____
5. 格列佛与那些小人们谈话。_____
6. 格列佛最终解开了他的右手。_____

B4 基蒂也对这个故事感兴趣。她正在问桑迪关于它的事。帮助桑迪回答她的问题。

1. 基蒂：格列佛在他们的船撞上岩石坠毁后做了什么？
   桑迪：_____
2. 基蒂：格列佛在他醒后发现了什么？
   桑迪：_____
3. 基蒂：小人有多大？
   桑迪：_____
4. 基蒂：格列佛可以跟小人们交流吗？
   桑迪：_____

B5 格列佛在他们的船撞上岩石坠毁后来到奇怪的陆地上。用你自己的话告诉你的同伴它有多奇怪。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] **against**/ əˈgenst/ *prep.* 反对,对抗;紧靠;倚;碰,撞

eg: The rain beat **against** the windows.
雨点击打着窗户。

考向[重点]:against 为介词,表示“与……对抗;反对……”时,必须和 be 或其他动词连用。be against 后接名词、代词或动名词,其反义词组为 be for,意为“赞成,支持”。

eg: One of the opinions **against** smoking is that it is harmful to people's health.
反对吸烟的观点之一认为它对人们的健康有害。

拓展 与 against 相关的短语:fight against 同……打仗;play against 与……比赛/对抗;be against doing sth. 反对做某事;against one's will 违背某人的意愿。

【考题在线 1】 Let's put the piano over there, _____ the wall. (无锡)

A. above B. against
C. across D. around

点拨:本题用辨析法。句意:让我们把钢琴放在那里,靠着墙。此处应用 against 表示“倚在,紧靠”之意。

【考题在线 2】 When you play sport, you need to guard _____ accidents. (沈阳)

A. over B. against
C. with D. at

点拨:本题用固定短语法。句意:当你做运动的时候,你需要防护_____事故。guard against 防止;防范;提防。

❷**as ... as sb. can/ could** 尽某人所能地……

eg: We run **as** fast **as we can.**
我们拼命地跑。

考向[重点]:as ... as sb. can 相当于 as ... as possible“尽可能……”。两个 as 之间用形容词或副词原级。

eg: Please come to school **as** early **as you can.** = Please come to school **as** early **as possible.** 请尽可能早地来学校。

【考题在线 3】 我们最好尽快想出一个好主意。
We'd better think of a good idea _____ _____ _____.

❸**go to sleep** 入睡

eg: If you're tired every morning, you can **go to sleep** a little earlier.
如果你每天早晨感觉很累,你可以睡早一点。

考向[易错点]:辨析 go to sleep 与 go to bed

go to sleep	强调“入睡;睡着;进入梦乡”相当于 fall asleep。	She was so tired that she **went to sleep** soon. 她是如此累,以至于很快就睡着了。
go to bed	强调“上床睡觉”的动作及过程,但人不一定睡着。	I **went to bed** at eleven last night. 昨晚我 11 点上床睡觉。

培养健康睡眠习惯

睡眠对人的免疫力和健康状况(health condition)非常重要。经科学家们研究:晚上 11 点到凌晨 5 点是睡眠的黄金时间(prime time)。因为 23 点至凌晨 5 点为各个脏器排毒的时期,排毒在人体熟睡中进行最佳。错过了排毒的最佳时间,白天睡眠所起的作用远不如晚上睡眠所起的作用。所以,并不是睡足 8 小时就够了,而是要保证不要熬夜(stay up late)。

【素养行动】从今天开始,晚上争取在 23 点之前睡觉,并持之以恒。

【素养行动结果】从小树立健康理念(health idea),养成健康的生活方式。

❹**句法分析法**:本句为时间状语从句,句子 as ... 意为“当……的时候”。

❺**tie**/taɪ/ *vt.* 捆,绑

eg: Please **tie** the dog to the stone.
请把狗拴在石头上。

考向一:tie 的现在分词形式为 tying,过去式为 tied,过去分词 tied。类似此变化的动词还有:die – dying – died; lie – lying – lied。

考向二:固定搭配 tie ... to ... 意为“把……拴/系到……上”。

eg: He **tied** the horse **to** the tree.
他把马拴在树上了。

拓展 tie 还可作名词,意为“领带”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg:I want to buy a silk **tie** for my dad as a birthday present. 我想给我爸爸买一个丝绸领带作为生日礼物。

❻**stomach**/ˈstʌmək/*n.* 胃;肚子

eg:There's something wrong with my **stomach**. 我的胃有毛病。

考向:stomach 为可数名词,其复数形式为 stomachs。

拓展 派生词 stomachache,意为"胃疼;肚子痛"。

【考题在线 4】Delicious traditional Chinese snacks have won the hearts and _____ (stomach) of all the foreigners coming to China. (南京玄武区二模)

❼[高频]**until**/ənˈtɪl/*conj.* & *prep.* 直到……为止

eg:Last night, my brother didn't go to bed **until** he finished his work.
昨天夜里,我哥哥直到完成工作才睡觉。

(海南中考)Bill usually gets home at 6:00, but today he didn't get home **until** 7:00.
Bill 通常 6 点到家,但是今天他直到 7 点才到家。



考向[难点]:辨析 till 与 until

相同点	不同点
till 与 until 都可用作介词或连词,一般情况下可通用。用在肯定句中,意为"到……(的时候)为止"。谓语动词一般是延续性的,表示这个动作一直延续到 **till**(**until**)所表示的时间为止。 **eg**: They talked **till/until** dawn. 他们一直谈到天亮。	until 可用于句首。 **eg**:**Until** you told me I had no idea of it. 在你告诉我之前,我对此事一无所知。
用在否定句中,意为"直到……才",表示这个动词的动作直到 till/until 所表示的时间才发生。 **eg**:Tom didn't leave his office **until/till** he finished the work. 直到完成工作,汤姆才离开他的办公室。	until 可用在以 not 开头的短语或从句里。 **eg**:**Not until** ten o'clock did we arrive in Nanjing. 我们直到十点才到达南京。

【考题在线 5】We don't know the love of our parents _____ we become parents ourselves one day. (云南)
A. until B. after C. when D. since
点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:直到有一天我们为人父母,我们才懂得我们父母的爱。until 直到……才,after 在……之后;when 当……的时候,since 自从……以来。表示"直到……才……",根据句意应用 not… until…。

❽**the same …as … 与……相同**

eg:Your bag is **the same** size **as** mine. 你的包和我的一样大。

考向:the same …as 的反义短语为 be different from,意为"与……不同"。

eg:The weather in Beijing **is different from** that in Guangzhou. 北京的天气与广州不同。

【考题在线 6】It's not necessary to find a friend who is the same _____ you. (孝感)
A. in B. as C. to D. from

❾**fall over 摔倒**

eg:I **fell over** and cut my knee. 我摔倒了,划破了膝盖。

拓展 fall down 倒下
fall behind 落后
fall asleep 睡着

❿[高频]**continue**/kənˈtɪnjuː/*vt.* & *vi.* 继续

eg:He ate lunch and then **continued** his work. 他吃了午饭,然后继续他的工作。

考向:continue 后可接名词、代词、不定式或动词-ing形式作宾语。

搭配:continue to do/doing sth. 继续做某事
to be continued (未完)待续

【考题在线 7】根据句意和汉语提示,在空白处填入一个适当的单词:
Researchers say temperatures in North Africa will continue _____ (上升) this summer. (连云港)
点拨:本题用固定短语法解题。"继续做某事"用 continue to do sth. 或 doing sth.,此句要求只填一词,故应用动名词形式。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

11 either/ˈaɪðə(r)/*adv.* 也

考向[重点]：辨析 either，also 与 too

词条	用法	示例
either	常用于否定句。	He didn't come to school, **either**. 他也没来学校。
also	常置于实义动词之前，be 动词之后，通常不用于句末。	She is **also** my friend. 她也是我的朋友。
too	常用于口语中，多置于句末。	I like watching TV, **too**. 我也喜欢看电视。

【考题在线 8】I don't like watching TV, and my brother doesn't like watching TV, _____.

A. too　　B. also

C. either　　D. neither

12 manage/ˈmænɪdʒ/*vt. & vi.* 设法完成；勉强完成；管理

eg：She **managed** the house very well.
她把家管得很好。

考向：搭配：manage to do sth. 设法做成了某事

eg：Paul **managed** to get to the UK on his own.
保罗成功地独自到达了英国。

13 lift/lɪft/*vt.* 举起，提起，抬高；提高

eg：Tom is strong enough to **lift** the box.
汤姆足够强壮，能提起那个箱子。

考向[难点]：辨析 lift，rise 与 raise

lift	指用体力或机械把某物“举”到一定的高度。	This box is too heavy for me to **lift**. 这个箱子对我来说太重了，我提不起来。
rise	不及物动词，表示自然升起，说明主语自身由低到高的变化过程。	The sun has not **risen** yet. 太阳还没升起。
raise	表示在外力作用下“升起”，强调抬高的姿势。	He **raised** his glass and said, “Your health, Carl.” 他举起他的杯子说：“祝你健康，卡尔。”

拓展 lift 还可作名词，意为“电梯”。lift 作“电梯”讲时，为英式英语，美式英语中用 elevator。

eg：We take a **lift** to go up and down.
我们乘电梯上下楼。

搭配：take a lift；by lift 乘电梯

14 unable/ʌnˈeɪbl/*adj.* 不能的，不会的

eg：I regret being **unable** to help.
我很遗憾不能帮忙。

考向一[重点]：be unable to do sth. 意为“不能做某事”；其肯定形式为：be able to do sth. “能够做某事”。

eg：I'm very sorry I am **unable** to play tennis with you after school.
很抱歉，放学以后我不能和你一起去打网球了。

考向二[重点]：辨析 be able to 与 can

be able to	强调通过努力而获得的能力，可用于多种时态。	The workers **are able to** improve the machine. 工人们能改进这台机器。
can	强调自身已具有的能力，只用于一般现在时和一般过去时，且 can 还可以表示猜测。	I **can** play the guitar. 我能弹吉他。

【考题在线 9】Finish your homework first, then you'll _____ watch TV for an hour.　（白银）

A. can　B. be able to　C. able　D. could

点拨：will 是助动词，其后应该用动词的原形，can 也是情态助动词，不能与 will 连用。

考题在线答案

1. B　2. B　3. as soon as possible　4. stomachs
5. A　6. B　7. rising　8. C　9. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见229页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. You can't _____ (拴) the dog to the young tree.
2. Can you _____ (提起) the heavy box?
3. Although he was very tired, he _____ (继续) working in his office. (天津改编)
4. He kicked Bill in the _____ (腹部).
5. We should be _____ (反对) killing animals.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. How many _____ (foot) does a dog have?
7. Without your support, I am _____ (able) to complete this documentary on time. (盐城)
8. Finally, we managed _____ (hand) out all the 1,000 posters with others' help. (常州改编)
9. Tom thought he must run away, but he didn't know how _____ (get) away.
10. Please go back home as _____ (early) as you can.

三、单项选择

11. Never put off _____ tomorrow what you can do today. (武威)

A. until B. before

C. when D. as

12. Millie couldn't understand the small man, _____.

A. also B. too

C. either D. as well

13. Although he was _____ my opinion, the old professor didn't come up with his own. (无锡)

A. against B. on

C. for D. in

14. —Didn't you see the zebra crossing? You _____ slow down, son!

—Sorry, sir. Am I going to fail the test? (无锡)

A. can't B. can

C. mustn't D. must

15. —Bill, did you see Tom?

—Yes, he just parked his car here and then hurried _____ the street. (连云港)

A. through B. over

C. past D. across

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 当你第一次学骑自行车时,你可能会摔倒。

When you first learn to ride a bike, you may _____ _____.

17. 一辆汽车昨晚撞到了墙上。

A car _____ _____ the wall last night.

18. 完成工作后,我筋疲力尽了。

After I finished my work, I _____ _____ _____.

19. 他们设法成功地到达了山顶。

They _____ _____ _____ the top of the mountain.

20. 黛安娜已经离开家乡十年了,她希望尽快回来。(淮安)

Diana _____ _____ _____ _____ her hometown for ten years and she hopes to come back _____ _____ _____ possible.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using question words + to-infinitives

We can use a question word with a to-infinitive after a verb.

Millie has decided what to read.

Daniel did not say who to talk to about this book.

Simon forgot when to meet his friends.

Kitty cannot decide which to choose first.

Sandy is wondering where to ask for help.

Amy does not know how to write the report.

All question words can be used in this way, except why.

✗ Suzy will explain why to recommend this book.

√ Suzy will explain why she recommends this book.

We can use a verb and an object before a question word with a **to**-infinitive.

advise	ask	decide	discuss	find out
forget	know	learn	remember	say
show	teach	think	understand	wonder

Mr Wu advised us which to choose as after-school activities.

The students asked their teacher when to hand in their work.

Millie showed us what to do next.

Daniel taught himself how to use a computer to draw.

Don't forget to tell your mum where to meet you.

We can use a noun after what, which, whose, how many and how much.

They are discussing which colour to paint the walls.

You can ask your parents how much money to take with you.

We can also use an adjective like sure or clear before a question word.

Suzy was not sure who to ask for help.

Are you clear when to meet at the gate tomorrow?

About Reading Week

Amy and Daniel are talking about their Reading Week. Complete their conversation. Use the correct question words and to-infinitives.

how	what	when
where	which	who

ask for	find	**hand**/hænd/ **in**[1]
read	speak	write about

语法

A 使用疑问词 + 动词不定式

我们可以在动词之后用一个疑问词和动词不定式。

米莉已经决定读什么。

丹尼尔没有说和谁谈论这本书。

西蒙忘记什么时候见他的朋友。

基蒂不能决定先选择哪一个。

桑迪想知道到哪里寻求帮助。

埃米不知道怎样写这个报告。

所有的疑问词都可以用这种方式，除了 why。

✗ 苏西将解释为什么推荐这本书。

√ 苏西将解释为什么她推荐这本书。

我们可以在一个疑问词和动词不定式前用一个动词和一个宾语。

建议	询问	决定	讨论	找出
忘记	知道	学习	记住	说
展示	教	想	明白	想知道

吴老师建议我们选择哪些作为课外活动。

学生们询问他们的老师什么时候交他们的作业。

米莉向我们展示接下来做什么。

丹尼尔自学了如何用电脑画画。

不要忘记告诉你的妈妈在哪里见你。

在 what, which, whose, how many 和 how much 后我们可以用一个名词。

他们正在讨论把墙涂成哪个颜色。

你可以询问你的父母你带多少钱。

我们在疑问词前也可以用一个例如 sure 或 clear 的形容词。

苏西不确定向谁寻求帮助。

你清楚明天什么时候在门口见面吗？

关于阅读周

埃米和丹尼尔正在讨论关于他们的阅读周。完成他们的对话。运用正确的疑问词和动词不定式。

如何	什么	何时
何地	哪个	谁

寻求	找到	上交
阅读	说	写关于

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Amy: Mr Wu has recommended so many interesting books. Have you decided (1) _____ first, Daniel?

Daniel: Yes. I want to read *Black Beauty* first. But I don't know (2) _____ the book.

Amy: You can try our school library or Sunshine Library. Oh, did you know Peter is reading *Around the World in Eighty Days*? He wants to find out (3) _____ around the world in such a short time.

Daniel: Wow, that's amazing! By the way, can you tell me (4) _____ our book report?

Amy: Before next Friday. I'm still not sure (5) _____ in the report.

Daniel: You can write anything about your book—what the book is about, what you think of it **and so on**[2]. You should read some reviews/rɪ'vjuːz/ about the book before writing.

Amy: Thank you. Anyway, I know (6) _____ help with writing. Mr Wu is always there to help us.

埃米：吴老师已经推荐了这么多有趣的书。你已经决定先读（1）_____了吗，丹尼尔？

丹尼尔：是的。我想先读《黑骏马》。但是我不知道（2）_____这本书。

埃米：你可以试试我们学校图书馆或者阳光图书馆。哦，你知道彼得正在阅读《八十天环游地球》吗？他想在这么短的时间里找出（3）_____全世界。

丹尼尔：哇，那太令人惊奇了！顺便问一下，你可以告诉我（4）_____我们的读书报告吗？

埃米：下周五之前。我仍然不确定（5）_____在报告中。

丹尼尔：你可以写关于你的书的任何东西——这本书关于什么，你认为它怎么样等等。你在写之前应该读一些关于书的评论。

埃米：谢谢你。无论如何，我知道（6）_____帮助写作。吴老师总是在那里帮助我们。

B Using *must* and *have to*

We use **must** and **have to** to say that it is necessary to do something. We use **must** when the speaker feels that something is necessary.

"I **must** run away from them," Gulliver thought.

We use **have to** when the situation makes something necessary.

I **have to** use them to reach the box on the fridge.

She **has to** take her daughter from school in the afternoon.

TIP

Have to has different forms.
has to　had to　will have to
have/has got to

We use **must not** to say that something is not allowed.

You **must not** smoke in the library.

We use **do not have to** to say that it is not necessary to do something.

We **do not have to** go to school at weekends.

TIP

must not = mustn't
do not have to = don't have to

B 使用 must 和 have to

我们用 must 和 have to 来说有必要做某事。当说话人觉得某事是有必要的时候，我们用 must。

"我必须逃离他们"，格列佛想。

当情况使某事有必要时，我们用 have to。

我不得不用它们来够冰箱上的盒子。

她下午不得不把她的女儿从学校带走。

提示

Have to 有不同的形式。
has to　had to　will have to
have/has got to

我们用 must not 来说某事是被禁止的。

你不能在图书馆抽烟。

我们用 do not have to 来说做某事是没有必要的。

周末我没有必要去学校。

提示

禁止 = 禁止
没有必要 = 没有必要

Library rules

Amy is telling her cousin Shirley some library rules. Complete what she says with must, must not, have to or do not have to.

You (1) _____ keep quiet in the library.

You (2) _____ keep the books clean and tidy.

图书馆的规则

埃米正在告诉她的表妹雪莉图书馆的一些规则。用 must，must not，have to 或 do not have to 来完成她说的话。

你在图书馆（1）_____保持安静。

你（2）_____保持书本干净和整洁。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

You (3) _____ draw or write on the books.
You (4) _____ eat or drink in the library.
You (5) _____ return/rɪˈtɜːn/ the books **on time**❸. If you want to keep them longer, you (6) _____ renew them.
You (7) _____ bring your student card every time you go to the library, but remember to bring your library card.

你(3)_____在书上画画或写字。
你(4)_____在图书馆吃或喝东西。
你(5)_____按时还书。如果你想借更长时间，你(6)_____续借它们。
你(7)_____每次去图书馆带你的学生证，但是记住带你的图书证。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶hand in 上交

eg: All of you must **hand in** your homework tomorrow morning.
你们所有人明天早上必须上交你们的家庭作业。

考向[重点]：hand in 为动词加副词结构，若后接代词 it 或 them 作宾语时，则放在 hand in 中间，即 hand it/them in。

【考题在线 1】完成下列句子：
明天请把作业交上来。（天津）
Please _____ _____ your homework tomorrow.
点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。“上交”用 hand in 表达，因该句是祈使句，谓语动词应用动词原形。

❷and so on 等等

eg: This shop sells clothes, shoes, hats **and so on**. 这个商店卖衣服、鞋、帽子等等。

考向：and so on 之前的举例都是用逗号隔开的，不能用 and 连接。

eg: I like many sports, such as football, basketball, badminton, table tennis **and so on**. 我喜欢很多运动，例如像足球、篮球、羽毛球、乒乓球等等。
We discussed everything—when to go, what to see **and so on.** 我们什么都商量过了——什么时候走、看什么等等。

❸on time 准时

eg: We get there **on time**. 我们准时到达那里。

拓展 in time 及时；at times 有时

【考题在线 2】Nick is never late for work. He always gets to the office _____.（牡丹江）
A. on time　　B. in time　　C. at times
点拨：本题用句意理解法。on time 意为“准时”；in time 意为“及时”；at times 意为“有时”。根据句意“尼克上班从不迟到。”可知“他总是准时到达办公室”。

考题在线答案
1. hand in　2. A

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点 1：疑问词 + 动词不定式

考向一：“疑问词 + 动词不定式”可在句中用作宾语、主语和表语。

eg: Can you tell me how to spell the word?
你能告诉我怎么拼写这个单词吗？
How to go there is a question.
如何去那里是个问题。

考向二：“疑问词 + 动词不定式”作宾语是初中阶段的重点。在“疑问词 + 动词不定式”结构中，只有疑问词 why 不能与不定式连用。有些疑问词，其后可先接名词再接动词不定式。作宾语时，此结构常用于 know, learn, see, hear, ask, tell, advise, decide, explain, find out, forget, remember, think, understand, wonder 等动词或动词短语中。也可用于 sure, clear 等形容词之后。

eg: The teacher is telling the students what to do.
老师正告诉学生们要做什么。
Have you found out what time to start?
你查清楚什么时间开始了吗？
I am not sure which way to take.
我不确定走哪条路。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 1】—Mr Wu has recommended many books. Have you decided _____ first?
—Yes. *The Little Prince*. （扬州）
A. how to read B. which to read
C. when to read D. where to read
点拨：本题用**语法判定法**。此题考查“特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式”在句中作宾语，前文 many books 提示用 which 和动词不定式连用，表示“读哪一本”。

考向三：“疑问词 + 动词不定式”结构可以改写为该疑问词引导的从句。
eg：We do not know what to do. = We do not know what we should do.
我们不知道该做什么。

考点 2：must 和 have to
考向一：must 的用法
must 为情态动词，后接动词原形。must 侧重于表示说话人的主观意愿；must not 语气比较强，表示“禁止，不允许”。Must I ...? 的否定回答用“No, you needn't.”或“No, you don't have to.”。

【考题在线 2】From March 23rd 2013, anyone under the age of 14 _____ go into Disney's US parks alone. （连云港）
A. couldn't B. mustn't C. needn't D. mightn't
【考题在线 3】—Must I finish reading the book today, Mr. Brown?
—No, you _____. You can finish it in two days. （黄冈）
A. needn't B. mustn't C. can't D. couldn't
点拨：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：——布朗先生，我必须今天看完这本书吗？——不，你_____。你可以在两天之后看完。在英语中 must 表示“必须”之意的一般疑问句，其否定回答用 needn't 意为“没有必要”。

考向二：have to 的用法
have to“不得不”，侧重于表示客观需要；第三人称单数形式为 has to。

【考题在线 4】—Hi, class! You _____ come to school tomorrow.
—Wow, great news! （曲靖）
A. wasn't able to B. won't have to
C. shouldn't D. mustn't

考题在线答案
1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 229 页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空
1. We really don't know what _____ (do) during the holiday.
2. Let's discuss where _____ (go) after our exam. （天水改编）
3. Millie does not know which dress _____ (choose) for her mother. （赤峰改编）
4. She has to _____ (stay) at home and look after her sister.
5. You mustn't _____ (cross) the road when the lights are red.

二、单项选择
6. —Dad, must we wait until the light becomes green?
—Yes, I'm afraid we _____. That's the traffic rule. （河南）
A. can B. may C. have to D. need
7. I _____ go now, or I'll miss my train. （北京）
A. can B. might C. must D. could
8. —Hurry, Mum! The bus is coming.
—Wait a minute, dear. You _____ cross the street until the traffic lights are green. （衢州）
A. must B. need
C. mustn't D. needn't
9. —Mom, _____ I play computer games this evening?
—Sure, but you _____ finish your homework first. （咸宁）
A. can; must
B. can; mustn't
C. may; could
D. may; can't
10. The girl students are discussing _____ the walls in the classroom. （宿迁）
A. what to paint color
B. to paint what color
C. which color to paint
D. to paint which color

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Recommending a book

A1 The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about what they have read recently. Listen to them and match each student with the type and name of the book they have read.

课文听力A1音频及材料

Student	Type of book	Name of the book
Kitty	novel	*Three Men in a Boat*
Millie	history	*Notes from a Small Island*
Daniel	science	*Moment in Peking*
Simon	travel	*Flags of Our Fathers*
Sandy		*A Brief History of Time*

A2 Suzy plans to read the Harry Potter series. She is telling her classmates about the books. Listen to what she says and complete her notes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

J. K. Rowling	
A British writer	
Date of birth	(1) _____
As a child	often wrote (2) _____ and read them to her sister
In 1990	got the idea for the first Harry Potter story on a (3) _____ trip to London
In (4) _____	finished the first Harry Potter book
In 2007	finished the (5) _____ book of the series
Harry Potter series	
At first	all the British publishing houses **refused**/rɪˈfjuːzd/❶ to publish it
A year later	a small publishing house in (6) _____ accepted it
So far❷	a great success/səkˈses/ has been **translated**/trænsˈleɪtɪd/❸ into about (7) ____languages
Sales/seɪlz/❹	over (8) _____ million copies/ˈkɒpiz/ in over (9) _____ countries and areas

综合技能

A 推荐一本书

A1 八年级1班的学生们正在讨论他们最近已经读过的书。听他们的录音并且将每个学生和他们已经读过的书的种类及书名相匹配。

学生	图书种类	书名
基蒂	小说	《三人同舟》
米莉	历史	《哈！小不列颠》
丹尼尔	科学	《京华烟云》
西蒙	旅游	《父辈的旗帜》
桑迪		《时间简史》

A2 苏西打算阅读哈利·波特系列。她在告诉她的同班同学关于这本书。听她说并且完成她的便条。

J. K. 罗琳	
一位英国作家	
出生日期	(1) _____
小时候	经常写(2) _____并且读它们给她姐姐听
在1990年	在去伦敦的一个(3) _____旅程，有第一个哈利·波特故事的想法
在(4) _____	完成第一本哈利·波特书
在2007年	完成(5) _____系列书
哈利·波特系列	
开始	所有的英国出版社都拒绝出版它
一年后	在(6) _____的一个小出版社接受了它
目前	一个巨大的成功已被翻译成约(7) _____(种)语言
销售量	超过(8) _____百万本，覆盖超过(9) _____城市和地区

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A3 **Millie made some notes of the Harry Potter series. However, she has made some mistakes. Listen to Suzy again. Help Millie underline the mistake in each sentence and write the correct words in the blanks.**

课文听力A3音频及材料

1. J. K. Rowling is a Canadian/kə'neɪdiən/ writer. _____
2. Rowling's birthday is on 30 July. _____
3. When she was a child, Rowling often shared toys with her sister. _____
4. The eighth Harry Potter book is the last one of the series. _____
5. The first Harry Potter book was a great success in the very beginning. _____
6. The Harry Potter series is popular only in Britain. _____

B **Speak up: I want some history books.**

Daniel is talking to Mrs Li, the school librarian. Work in pairs and take turns to borrow books from a library. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Daniel: Excuse me, I want some history books, but I don't know where to find them.
Mrs Li: Don't worry. You can search for information on the computer here.
Daniel: Thank you. How many books can I borrow **at a time**[5]?
Mrs Li: You can borrow one Chinese book and one English book.
Daniel: I see. How long can I keep the books?
Mrs Li: For two weeks. You must return them on time.
Daniel: Could you tell me how to renew them?
Mrs Li: You don't have to come to our desk every time. Just renew them online. It's easy.
Daniel: OK. Thanks for your help.
Mrs Li: You're welcome.

Study skills

Transitions between ideas

When we write an article, we have different ways to connect the ideas in it. Here are some common transitions.

Usage	Transitional words and phrases	Example
To show time	before, after, while, at first, soon, later, when,...	**After** our ship crashed against the rocks, I swam as far as I could.

A3 米莉对哈利·波特系列做了一些笔记。但是，她犯下了一些错误。再听苏西的话。帮助米莉用下划线画出每个句子中的错误并在后面的空格中写出正确的单词。

1. J. K. 罗琳是一个加拿大作家。 _____
2. 罗琳的生日在7月30日。 _____
3. 当她是小孩时，罗琳经常和她的姐姐分享玩具。 _____
4. 第八本哈利·波特书是这个系列的最后一本。 _____
5. 起初第一本哈利·波特书很成功。 _____
6. 哈利·波特系列只在英国流行。 _____

B 大声讲：我想要一些历史书。

丹尼尔正和学校图书管理员李太太说话。两人一组练习，并且轮流从图书馆借书。用下面的对话做一个例子。

丹尼尔：打扰了，我想要一些历史书，但我不知道在哪里找到它们。
李太太：别担心。你可以在这里的电脑上搜索信息。
丹尼尔：谢谢您。我每次可以借多少本书？
李太太：你可以借一本汉语书和一本英文书。
丹尼尔：我明白了。我可以借（这些书）多久？
李太太：两周。你必须按时归还（它们）。
丹尼尔：您可以告诉我如何续借吗？
李太太：你不需要每次都来到柜台。只要在网上续借。这很容易。
丹尼尔：好的，谢谢您的帮助。
李太太：不客气。

学习技巧

观点之间的过渡

当我们写一篇文章时，我们有不同的方式连接其中的观点。这些是一些常见的过渡。

用法	过渡单词和短语	例子
表示时间	在……之前，在……之后，当……时，起初，很快，之后，当……时，……	在我们的船撞上岩石后，我奋力前游。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

To show sequence	first, second, next, then, finally,...	**First**, we had fun on Space Mountain **Next**, we hurried to a restaurant.
To add more information	and, also, too, again, and then, either, moreover,...	I could not understand him. I did not know what to say **either**.
To give an example	for example,...	They are now in danger. **For example**, it is difficult for pandas to have babies.
To show cause and effect	because, since, as, so, as a result,...	I can tell her anything because she can keep a secret.
To emphasize	never, in fact,...	He says he knows everything about DIY. **In fact**, I know much more than he does.
To compare or contrast	but, however, on the one hand ... on the other (hand), while, otherwise,...	Many birds live in Zhalong all year round, **while** some go there only for a short stay.

表明顺序	首先，其次，接着，然后，最后，……	首先，我们在太空山玩得很愉快。接着，我们匆忙去了一家餐馆。
补充更多的信息	和，也，也，再次，然后，也，而且，……	我不明白他的意思。我也不知道说什么。
给出例子	例如，……	它们现在处于危险中。例如，对于熊猫来说，有宝宝是困难的。
表明原因和结果	因为，既然，由于，所以，结果，……	我可以告诉她任何事，因为她能保守秘密。
强调	从不，事实上，……	他说他知道关于自己动手做的一切。事实上，我知道的比他更多。
比较或对比	但是，可是，一方面……另一方面，当……的时候，否则，……	许多鸟全年都生活在扎龙，然而一些只在那里呆很短的一段时间。

I like novels

Sandy is writing about her love for novels. Read her article and underline the transitional words and phrases.

I like novels. I enjoy reading the books of Robert Louis Stevenson because I find them really exciting. For example, *Treasure Island* tells the story of a young boy who sailed the sea to look for hidden treasure. Jim, the main character in the book, is very brave. His story gave me a lot of confidence. After reading the book, I am not as shy as I used to be and I am willing to try new things. I also want to travel and have exciting **experiences**/ɪkˈspɪərɪənsɪz/[6] in the future. Moreover, I have decided to write my own stories. Maybe I can become a writer when I am older!

我爱小说

桑迪正在写她对小说的喜爱。阅读她的文章，并且画出过渡词和短语。

我喜爱小说。我喜欢阅读罗伯特·路易斯·史蒂文森的书，因为我发现它们真的令人激动。例如，《金银岛》讲的是一个小男孩出海寻找宝藏的故事。吉姆，这本书的主角，非常勇敢。他的故事给了我许多自信。阅读这本书后，我不像以前那样害羞，并且我乐意尝试新事物。我也想在将来旅游，并且有激动人心的经历。而且我已经决定写我自己的故事。或许我长大以后会成为一名作家！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶refuse/rɪˈfjuːz/*vt.* & *vi.* 拒绝，回绝

eg:（泰安中考）—How is George now?
乔治现在怎么样了？
—I hear the manager offered him a good job, but he **refused** it.
我听说经理提供给他一份不错的工作，但是他拒绝了。

考向：refuse to do sth. 拒绝做某事

eg: I invited him, but he **refused to come**.
我邀请他了，但他拒绝来。

注意：英语中没有 refuse doing sth. 结构。

【考题在线1】根据句意和汉语提示，在空白处填入一个适当的单词：
Just now John didn't _____（拒绝）to go to Lisa's party, did he?（贵港）

点拨：考查“拒绝”用 refuse，因前有 didn't，此处应该用动词原形。

拓展 refuse 的反义词为 accept，意为“接受”；say no to 拒绝，与 refuse 意义相近。

❷so far 到目前为止

eg: I haven't seen that film **so far**.
到目前为止我还没看过那部电影。

考向：一般情况下，so far 用于现在完成时。

【考题在线2】Ben is a foreign teacher. So far, he _____ in Shiyan for five years.（十堰）
A. was teaching
B. has taught
C. will teach
D. taught



点拨：本题用题眼法。根据时间状语 so far“到目前为止”可知要用现在完成时态。

❸translate/trænsˈleɪt/*vt.* & *vi.* 翻译

eg: Don't **translate** word for word, sentence for sentence.
不要逐字逐句翻译。

考向：translate …into …
把……翻译成……

eg: Who can **translate** this sentence **into** English?
谁能把这个句子译成英语？

拓展 translate 的名词形式为 translation，意为“翻译”。translator 名词，意为“翻译家”。

❹sales/seɪlz/*n.* [复数]销售量

eg: The **sales** of the book is over 40 million copies.
这本书的销售量已经超过40,000,000册。

考向：on sale 意为“出售”。

eg: The computers will be **on sale** here next week.
这些电脑下周将在这里出售。

拓展 sell *v.* 出售；
salesman/saleswoman 销售员

❺at a time 每次

eg: You can borrow two books **at a time**.
你每次可以借两本书。

考向：time 作“时间”讲时通常是不可数名词，作“次数”讲时是可数名词。

拓展 类似的短语还有：at all times 总是，一直；
(at) any time 随时，无论何时；
at the same time 同时；
at the time 当时，在那个时候；
at times 有时；
all the time 一直，总是

【考题在线3】—Have you solved your problem?
—I've kept on thinking about that matter _____, but I have had no idea.
A. at times
B. some time
C. at a time
D. all the time

点拨：本题用语境联想法。at times 有时；some time 一段时间；at a time 每次；all the time 一直。句意：——你把问题解决了吗？——我一直在考虑那件事，却没有办法。

❻[高频]experience/ɪkˈspɪərɪəns/*n.* 经历

eg: He had many interesting **experiences** while travelling in Africa.
他在非洲旅行时，有很多有趣的经历。

考向一[重点]：experience 作“经历”讲时，为可数名词，还可作“经验”讲，为不可数名词。

eg: He has many years' teaching **experience**.
他有多年的教学经验。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线4】—Mrs. Zhang was sent to teach English in a poor mountain village last year.
—She said she would never forget some pleasant _____ while working there. （咸宁）
A. experiments　B. expressions
C. experiences　D. emotions

点拨：本题用**词语应用法**。experiment 意为“实验”，expression 意为“表达，表情”，experience 意为“经历”，emotion 意为“情绪，情感”。句意“她说她将永不会忘记在那里工作时的一些美好的经历。”

考向二：experience 还可作动词，意为“经历，体验”。

eg：Summer camp is a place for kids to have fun, make new friends and **experience** new things. 夏令营是一个让孩子们开心、交新朋友、体验新事物的地方。

拓展 experienced *adj.* 有经验的

eg：Gong Li is an **experienced** actress, and she is well-known all over the world.
巩俐是一名有经验的女演员，并且她在全世界非常出名。

考题在线答案
1. refuse　2. B　3. D　4. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见229页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. It is said that the _____（销售量）of *A Brief History of Time* have been up to 300 millions copies.
2. This machine can _____（翻译）simple messages into 24 different languages. （南京改编）
3. I will send you a _____（副本）of the letter.
4. Don't give up. You know hard work leads to _____（成功）. （济宁）
5. I'd like to give my thanks to Alice for sharing her exciting _____（经历）in Africa.（无锡改编）

二、选用方框中的短语并用其适当形式填空

at a time, and so on, so far, date of your birth, at first

6. I haven't heard from him _____.
7. You can read many kinds of books, such as maths, English, science _____.
8. How many books can I borrow _____?
9. _____, the little girl felt a little afraid.
10. Please write the _____ on the paper.

三、单项选择

11. —I offered Sandy a helping hand. However, she _____ it.
—Maybe she can manage herself. （扬州）
A. received　B. returned
C. refused　D. rewarded

12. Pollution has harmed our lives in many different ways until now. （黔南州）
A. so much　B. so far
C. as usual　D. as before

13. Linda's performance at the art festival was a(n) _____ and was loved by her teachers and classmates. （淮安）
A. success　B. dream
C. chance　D. idea

14. Man's understanding of nature is developing _____. It never stays at the same level. （无锡）
A. at the right time
B. for the first time
C. from time to time
D. all the time

15. The clothing store _____ a sale. The clothes there are very cheap.
A. has
B. had
C. is having
D. was having

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

A survey on reading habits

A Mr Wu wants to find out about his students' reading habits. He drafted the following questions for the survey. Complete it with your own information.

1. How much time do you spend reading each week?
   a Less than 1 hour. b 1 – 2 hours.
   c 3 – 4 hours. d More than 4 hours.
2. When do you usually read books?
   a Any time I can. b Every night.
   c At weekends. d During holidays.
3. What is your favourite type of book?
   a Novel. b Science. c History. d Travel.
   Other: _____
4. How do you get most of your books?
   a Borrow from libraries. b Buy at bookshops.
   c Borrow from friends. d Receive as gifts.
5. Why do you usually read?
   a To relax.
   b To improve my knowledge.
   c To collect information for a report.
   d Because someone has recommended a book.
6. Who do you usually ask for **advice**/ədˈvaɪs/[1] on books?
   a Teachers. b Parents. c Friends. d Librarians.

Useful expressions

I spend …hours a week reading.
On weekdays, I usually …
I …at the weekend.
I am interested in …books. My favourite book is …
I get most of my books from …
My friend(s)/teacher(s) often …
I love reading because …

B Millie is writing about her reading habits. Here is her report.

My reading habits/ˈhæbɪts/[2]


课文朗读B

I love reading. I spend over seven hours a week reading different types of books. On weekdays, I usually read for about half an hour before going to bed. I read a lot at the weekend. I am interested in history books, but I like novels best. The four great classical Chinese novels are my favourite.

任务

关于阅读习惯的调查

A 吴先生想要找出他学生的阅读习惯。他设计了下面供调查的问题。用你自己的信息完成它。

1. 你每周花多长时间阅读?
   a 不足1小时。 b 1—2小时。
   c 3—4小时。 d 超过4小时。
2. 你通常什么时候读书?
   a 任何时间我都能。 b 每晚。
   c 周末。 d 假期期间。
3. 你最喜爱哪种类型的书?
   a 小说。 b 科学。
   c 历史。 d 旅游。
   其他的: _____
4. 你怎样得到你大多数的书?
   a 从图书馆借。 b 在书店买。
   c 向朋友借。 d 收到的礼物。
5. 你为什么经常阅读?
   a 为了放松。
   b 为增加我的知识。
   c 为报告收集信息。
   d 因为某人已推荐一本书。
6. 你经常向谁询问关于书的建议?
   a 老师。 b 父母亲。
   c 朋友。 d 图书管理员。

有用的表达

我一周花……小时阅读。
在工作日,我通常……
在周末,我……
我对……书感兴趣。我最爱的书是……
我从……得到大部分的书。
我朋友(们)/老师(们)经常……
我喜爱阅读因为……

B 米莉正在写她的阅读习惯。这是她的报告。

我的阅读习惯

我爱阅读。我一周花超过7小时看不同种类的书。在工作日,睡觉前我常常阅读大约半小时。在周末我阅读很多。我对历史书感兴趣,但是我最喜欢小说。中国四大名著是我的最爱。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I get most of my books from Sunshine Library—it is just opposite/ˈɒpəzɪt ; ˈɒpəsɪt/ my home. My friends give me lots of advice on books. We often meet together and discuss what to read.

Reading is always a wonderful time. Good books are good friends. They help me relax after a busy day. They also open up a whole new world to me.

C Write a report on your own reading habits. You can make some notes to organize your ideas first. Use Millie's report in Part B as a model.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about part of the book *Gulliver's Travels*.		
2. to use the new words to retell Gulliver's story.		
3. to use question words + **to**-infinitives. to use **must** and **have to**.		
4. how to make transitions between ideas when writing an article.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

我大多数的书都来自阳光图书馆——它就在我家对面。我的朋友给我许多关于书的建议。我们经常见面，并且一起讨论读什么。

阅读总是一个使人愉快的时间。好的书是好朋友。在忙碌的一天后，它们帮我放松。它们也为我打开一个全新的世界。

C 写一个关于你自己阅读习惯的报告。首先，你可以做一些笔记来组织你的观点。用 B 部分米莉的报告作为一个范例。

自我评价

我已经学过	细节	结果
1. 关于《格列佛游记》这本书的一部分。		
2. 用新的单词复述格列佛的故事。		
3. 用疑问词 + 动词不定式。用 must 和 have to。		
4. 当写一篇文章时，怎样在观点间过渡。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 advice/ədˈvaɪs/*n.* 建议，忠告，劝告

eg: He often gives us some **advice** on study.
他经常给我们一些关于学习的建议。

考向：advice 为不可数名词，其动词形式为 advise。

搭配：give advice 提出建议；ask one's advice 征求某人的意见；a piece of advice 一条建议；take one's advice 采纳某人的意见

拓展 advice 的同义词为 suggestion，但 advice 为不可数名词，而 suggestion 是可数名词。advice 的动词形式为 advise。

eg: Mr. Green **advises** us to keep a diary. His **suggestion** is good for our writing.
格林先生建议我们经常写日记。他的建议对我们的写作有好处。

【考题在线 1】 Can you give me some _____, please? （绥化）
A. message
B. suggestion
C. advice
点拨：本题用辨析法。some 后跟可数名词复数或不可数名词，message，suggestion 是可数名词单数，排除。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线2】—Miss Li, could you give me _____ on English learning?
—Certainly. First you should speak English every day. （广安）
A. any advices
B. many advices
C. some advice
点拨：本题考查名词的用法。advice 意为“建议”，为不可数名词，some 可用在表示委婉语气的疑问句中。

❷**habit**/ˈhæbɪt/*n.* 习惯
eg: It's my **habit** to get up early every morning.
每天早上早起是我的习惯。
考向：habit 为可数名词，表示习惯或习性。固定短语有：good/bad habits 好/坏习惯；strange habits 怪异的习惯；have the habit of 有……的习惯；get into a habit 养成一种习惯
eg: Don't let yourself **get into bad habits**.
不要让你自己沾染上恶习。

【考题在线3】It's a good _____ (习惯) to exercise every day. （新疆）
点拨：“习惯”的英文表达为“habit”。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. C 3. habit

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：三段五要素法介绍某人的阅读习惯
直入主题：某人喜欢阅读
主体部分：某人的阅读习惯“五要素”
结论部分：阅读的感受与意义
“五要素”
1. How much time do/does... spend reading ...?
2. When do/does... read books?
3. What is one's favourite book?
4. How do/does... get the books?
5. Who do/does... ask for advice on books?

易错点提示
1. 注意时态。写爱好习惯用一般现在时。
2. 注意所提示的要点。
3. 恰当地运用一些短语和句式。

参考词汇和句型

单词	habit; reading; spend; novel; advice; knowledge
短语	be interested in; so far; such as; and so on; get ... from ...; give sb. advice; open up
句型	I spend ... doing ... I usually read ...before ... I am interested in ... Reading is ...

典例
以“My Reading Habits”为题写一篇词数不少于80的短文。
要点：①花多长时间读书；
②什么时间读书；
③你最喜欢的书；
④书从哪儿来的；
⑤向谁征求建议。

【范文欣赏】

My Reading Habits

I love reading.

I spend more than half an hour **reading** books every day. I usually read after lunch or before going to bed. I read a lot at the weekend. I **am interested in** Geography books, because I like travelling. I also like reading novels. **So far**, I have read many famous novels, **such as** *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*, *Gulliver's Travels*, *Around the World in Eighty Days*. I get most of the books from our school library. My parents give me a lot of advice on books.

Reading is a good way to improve our knowledge. Good books are good friends. They open up a new world to us.

【点评】
本文应用了“三段五要素法”介绍“我”的阅读习惯。1. 直入主题（某人喜欢阅读）；2. 主题部分（五要素），3. 结论部分（阅读的感受与意义）。
添彩点：1. 运用了一个结构：spend some time doing sth. 某人花费多长时间做某事。
2. 运用了多个短语：be interested in 对……感兴趣；so far 到目前为止；such as 例如。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见230页)

单元知识浓缩

I swam as far as I could after our ship crashed a_____[1] the rocks. I was tired out when I reached the land. I fell down and went to sleep. My arms, legs and hair were t_____[2] to the ground as I woke up. There was a t_____[3] man moved up over my s_____[4] and neck. Soon more small men came. I shouted at them and made them all f_____[5] over. But soon they got up and c_____[6] moving across my body. I m_____[7] to break the ropes. But I saw a huge a_____[8] of tiny people coming straight t_____[9] me. I wanted to run away, but I didn't know how to g_____[10] away.

Project 1

课文原文及译文

An information folder

The Class 1, Grade 8 students wish to visit other countries. They have decided to make an information folder about different countries around the world. Your class wants to do the same thing. You need to choose a country and find out more information about it. Then you can make the folder.

A Planning and preparing

1. Think of a country that you find interesting and wish to visit. Talk about it and its places of interest with a partner.
2. Work alone. Think of a set of questions about the country you have chosen. If you need help, you can use the questions below to give yourself some ideas.
3. When you have the questions ready, look for the information you need. You may use the library and the Internet.
4. Design an information folder about the country of your choice. Collect some pictures, postcards, posters and leaflets about that country and put them in the folder.
5. Write about some special places of interest in that country.

TIP

You may also collect information from travel agencies.

The country of my choice

What is the name of the country?

How big is it?

一个信息文件夹

八年级一班的同学希望参观其他国家。他们已经决定制作一个关于世界上不同国家的信息文件夹。你们班想做同样的事。你需要选择一个国家，并找出更多有关这个国家的信息。然后你可以制作这个文件夹。

A 计划与准备

1. 想出一个你觉得有趣而且希望去参观的国家。和一个同伴谈论它及它的名胜古迹。
2. 单独工作。想一些关于你选择的国家的问题。如果你需要帮助，你可以用下面的问题给你一些想法。
3. 你准备好问题时，找一找你需要的信息。你可以使用图书馆或因特网。
4. 设计一个关于你所选择国家的信息文件夹。收集一些关于那个国家的图片、明信片、海报和传单，把它们放在文件夹里。
5. 写一些关于那个国家的特别的名胜。

贴士

你也可以从旅行社收集信息。

我所选择的国家

国家的名称是什么？

有多大？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

What is its capital?
How many people live there?
Does it have any famous mountains or rivers?
Is it near the sea? What are the most famous places there?
What language do most people speak?
What is the weather like?
When is spring/summer/autumn/winter?
What is the time difference between China and that country?
What special foods do people eat there?
What special festivals do people celebrate there? When are they?

B Tips for preparing your information folder

Writing

- Group your ideas into different sections.
- Each paragraph should have one main point.
- Use facts to support each point.
- Keep each paragraph short and interesting.

Using pictures

- You may want to design an attractive cover for your information folder.
- Collect as many interesting pictures, maps, drawings, postcards, photos and posters as possible. You can use them to explain some of the points more clearly.

Drafting and checking

- Write your first draft.
- Check for spelling and grammatical mistakes.
- Ask your partner to check your work.

Presenting

- Put your writing and pictures in the folder. You may use the computer to help you arrange the text and pictures nicely.
- Put the name of the country you have chosen on the cover of the folder.
- If you like, stick a picture of the country on the cover.
- Show your folder to your partner and talk about the country.

它的首都是哪儿?
有多少人口住在那?
它有一些著名的山脉和河流吗?
它靠近海吗?
它最出名的地方是什么?
大部分人讲什么语言?
天气怎么样?
什么时候是春天/夏天/秋天/冬天?
中国与那个国家的时间有什么不同?
那儿的人吃什么特殊的食物?
那儿的人庆祝什么特殊的节日? 是什么时候?

B 有关准备信息文件夹的贴士

写作

- 把你的想法分成不同的部分。
- 每一段应该有一个主要点。
- 用事实来支持每一个要点。
- 使每一段简单有趣。

使用图片

- 你可能想为你的信息文件夹设计一个吸引人的封面。
- 尽可能多地收集一些有趣的图片、地图、绘画、明信片、照片和海报。你可以用它们来更清晰地解释你的一些要点。

起草及检查

- 写出你的第一份草稿。
- 检查拼写和语法错误。
- 请你的同伴检查你的工作成果。

呈现

- 把你所写的和图片放进文件夹。你可以使用电脑来很好地帮助你组织文章和图片。
- 把你所选择的国家的名称写在文件夹的封面上。
- 如果你喜欢，在封面贴一张这个国家的图片。
- 向你的同伴展示一下你的文件夹，并谈论这个国家。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Good manners

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠套用谚语法(103 页)
写作方法	◇三步法写一写积极参与的活动(115 页)
解题方法	1交际法(97,220 页) 2结构分析法(105,106 页) 3词语应用法(106,112,220 页) 4句意理解法(110 页) 5固定搭配法(111 页) 6常识法(220,221 页) 7辨析法(220 页) 8把握语境法(220 页) 9语境联想法(220 页) 10题眼法(220 页) 11上下文联系法(221 页) 12推理判断法(221 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论良好的礼仪		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	politely *adv.* 礼貌地 litter *n.* 垃圾,杂物 run *vi.* 流动 pick *vt.* 采,摘 turn *n.* 轮流,顺序	share sth. with sb. 与某人分享某物 cut in (on sb./sth.)打断(谈话),插嘴 learn about 了解 drop litter 扔杂物 keep quiet 保持安静 leave the tap running 使水龙头一直开着 obey rules 遵守规则 queue for one's turn 排队等候轮到某人
	Period 2	proper *adj.* 符合习俗的;正确的 kiss *n.* 亲吻 close *adj.* 亲密的;严密的 conversation *n.* 交谈,谈话 subject *n.* 话题;主题 public *n.* 民众,群体 push *vi.* & *vt.* 推,挤 touch *vt.* 触摸,碰 excuse *vt.* 原谅,宽恕 avoid *vt.* 避免 till *conj.* 到……时,直到……为止 loudly *adv.* 大声地 as *conj.* 正如,如同	talk about 谈论 excuse me 劳驾 the proper way to do…做……的正确方法 shake sb.'s hand 与某人握手 in public 公开地,在别人面前 push in 插队,加塞 in one's way 挡住某人的路 as well (as)也,还有 all the time 始终,一直 by accident 偶然,意外地
	Period 3	discussion *n.* 讨论 express *vt.* 表达	on one's own 独自 express oneself 表达自己 be busy with 忙于
	Period 4	public *adj.* 公共的,公开的 explain *vt.* & *vi.* 解释 warn *vt.* & *vi.* 警告,告诫 parking *n.* 停车 litter *vi.* & *vt.* 乱丢杂物 successful *adj.* 成功的 sometime *adv.* 在某时 risk *vt.* 冒险做 pain *n.* 痛,疼痛 practice *n.* 练习;训练;实践 candle *n.* 蜡烛	keep sb. from sth. 保护,使免受 soon after 不久以后 in fact 事实上 take photos 照相 warn sb. not to do sth. 警告某人不要做某事
	Period 5	purpose *n.* 目的 guest *n.* 客人,宾客 impolite *adj.* 不礼貌的	above all 首要的是 take place 发生
句型	①You are old enough to …. 你足够大能……。 ②You are too …to …. 你太……而不能……。 ③You should learn about …. 你应该了解……。 ④The purpose of the talk is …. 报告的目的是……。 ⑤It's impolite to …. ……是不礼貌的。		
语法	1. …enough to …的用法 2. too …to …的用法		

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—You're old enough to learn about **manners**[1] now, Hobo.
—Eh? What do you mean?
—First, always share your things with others.
—Second, ...
— Hey! That's my cake!
—Second, don't **cut in on others**[2]. Always wait **politely**/pəˈlaɪtli/[3].
—You should learn about manners too. You're never too old to learn.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Learning about manners

The Class 1, Grade 8 students are learning about manners. They are making a web page about a talk on good table manners.

Task

Make your web page about a talk on good manners.

Welcome to the unit

Doing the right things

A **The Class 1, Grade 8 students are discussing the right and wrong things to do in public places. Look at the pictures below and match them with the phrases.**

a. drop **litter**/ˈlɪtə(r)/[4] everywhere
b. leave the tap running/rʌnɪŋ/
c. keep quiet in the library
d. pick/pɪk/ flowers in the park
e. **obey**[5] traffic rules
f. queue for your **turn**/tɜːn/[6]

B **Amy and her cousin Shirley are discussing what they should and should not do in the library. Work in pairs and discuss what we should and should not do in a public place. Use the conversation below as a model.**

Shirley: Can we chat in the library?
Amy: **I'm afraid not.**[7] We should keep quiet.
Shirley: Anything else?
Amy: Don't drop litter everywhere. Always keep the library clean.
Shirley: I see. Can we eat in the library?
Amy: No, we can't eat there.
Shirley: Can we write in the books?
Amy: No, we shouldn't write in the books, and we should put them back after reading.

课文朗读B

卡通画

——霍波，现在你足够大了，要学习有关礼仪的内容了。
——呃？ 你什么意思呀？
——首先，要总是和别人分享你的东西。
——第二，……。
——喂！ 那是我的蛋糕！
——第二，不要打断别人讲话。 要总是有礼貌地等待。
——你也应该学学礼仪。 活到老，学到老。

学习礼仪

八年级一班的学生们正在学习有关礼仪的内容。 他们正在制作一个关于好的餐桌礼仪的讨论的网页。

任务

制作一个关于好的礼仪的讨论的网页。

单元导入

做正确的事情

A 八年级一班的学生们正在讨论在公共场合做的正确的和错误的事。 看下面的图片，把它们与短语搭配起来。

a. 随地扔垃圾
b. 使水龙头一直开着
c. 在图书馆里保持安静
d. 在公园里摘花
e. 遵守交通规则
f. 排队等候轮到你

B 埃米和她的表姐雪莉正在讨论在图书馆里应该和不应该做什么。 两个人一组讨论在公共场合里我们应该和不应该做什么。 用下面的对话作为例子。

雪莉：我们可以在图书馆里聊天吗？
埃米：恐怕不行。 我们应该保持安静。
雪莉：还有其他什么吗？
埃米：不要随地扔垃圾。 一直要保持图书馆干净。
雪莉：我知道了。 我们可以在图书馆里吃东西吗？
埃米：不，我们不能在那儿吃东西。
雪莉：我们可以在书上写字吗？
埃米：不，我们不该在书上写字，并且我们看完书后应该把它们放回原处。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶manners /ˈmænəz/ *n.*［复数］礼貌，礼仪；规矩

考向［重点］：manner 是可数名词，意为“礼貌，礼仪，礼节”，但多以复数形式出现。常用短语：good manners 有礼貌　bad manners 没礼貌　table manners 餐桌礼仪

eg：It's bad **manners** to interrupt others.
打断别人讲话是不礼貌的。

了解中西方餐桌礼仪

中西方礼仪（manners）文化差别很大。餐桌礼仪更是如此：中国人吃饭时用筷子（chopsticks），西方人用刀叉（a knife and fork）；中国人习惯聚餐，西方人喜欢分餐制；中国人吃饭喜欢谈事情，西方人吃饭一般保持安静。西方人吃西餐使用刀叉时，要从外侧往内侧取食物，左手拿叉按住食物，右手拿刀切成小块，用叉子往嘴里送，刀刃不可以朝外。

【素养行动】吃西餐时记得遵从西餐礼仪；吃中餐时，充分展现优秀的中餐文化。

【素养行动结果】了解餐桌礼仪，培养跨文化交际意识。

❷cut in（**on sb./sth.**）打断（谈话），插嘴

eg：It's impolite to **cut in** on others.
打断别人是不礼貌的。

拓展 cut 的常用短语
cut up 切碎
cut in line 插队
cut one's hair 理发

【考题在线 1】我们等公共汽车时插队是不礼貌的。（烟台改编）
It's _____ to cut in _____ when we are waiting for the bus.

❸politely /pəˈlaɪtli/ *adv.* 礼貌地

eg：We should speak to the old man **politely**.
我们应该有礼貌地和那位老人说话。

考向：politely 的形容词形式为 polite，意为“有礼貌的”。比较级为 more politely，最高级为 most politely。

eg：When it happens, I usually talk to the person because I want to be **polite**.
当发生这种事情时，我通常会与这个人说上几句，因为我想表现得有礼貌。

拓展 impolite *adj.* 没礼貌的；rude *adj.* 粗鲁的

eg：It's **impolite** to stare at anyone or to talk loudly in public. 盯着别人看或者在公共场合大声说话是不礼貌的。

【考题在线 2】Asking for help _____（礼貌地）is very important.（天水）

❹litter /ˈlɪtə(r)/ *n.* 垃圾，杂物

eg：It's too dirty in the street. You can see **litter** everywhere.
街道上太脏了。你到处都能看到垃圾。

考向：litter 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
不及物动词	乱扔废弃物	Don't **litter** up the floor with scraps of paper. 别往地上乱丢纸屑。
及物动词	使……乱七八糟	Don't **litter** your room. 不要把你的房间弄得乱七八糟。

【考题在线 3】The sign on the wall means “No _____（乱扔垃圾）”.

【注意】注意区分两个单词的拼写：表示“垃圾，杂物”用 litter；而表示“少量的，小的”则用little。

❺obey /əˈbeɪ/ *v.* 服从；遵守

eg：What are some of the rules that a teenager should **obey**?
一个青少年应该遵守哪些规则？

考向：常用词组：obey rules 遵守规则
obey traffic rules 遵守交通规则

eg：Everybody must **obey traffic rules**!
人人都必须遵守交通规则！

拓展 其反义词为 disobey 或 break，意为“违背，打破”。

❻［高频］**turn** /tɜːn/ *n.* 轮流，（轮流的）顺序

eg：It's your **turn** to clean the classroom.
轮到你打扫教室了。

考向［重点］：常用句型：
It's one's turn. 轮到某人了。
It's one's turn to do sth.
轮到某人做某事了。
常用短语：take turns in（doing）sth. = take turns to do sth. 轮流做某事

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

in turn 依次,轮流

eg:Put your cards on the desk **in turn**.
把你们的卡片依次放在桌子上。

拓展 turn 用作动词,意为"旋转,转动"。还可以用作连系动词,意为"变成"。

eg:He **turned** the key and opened the door.
他转动钥匙,把门打开了。
We must wait until the traffic light **turns** green when we cross the road.
当我们过马路的时候,我们必须等到交通灯变成绿色。

【考题在线4】In our class, we _____(轮流) to clean the blackboard. Today is my turn.

⑦I'm afraid not. 恐怕不行。

常用于回答对方,表示其所说的事不可能发生,是一种委婉语气。与之对应的是:**I'm afraid so.** 恐怕是这样。

eg:—Will it be fine tomorrow?
明天天气会好吗?
—I'm afraid not.
恐怕不会。

拓展 I hope so. 表示肯定的希望(其中的so代表上文所提到的事情),意为:"希望如此。"而 I hope not. 表示否定的希望(其中的not 代表上文所提到的事情),意为:"希望不会如此。"如:

—Will it be fine tomorrow?
明天会天晴吗?
—I hope so. 希望如此。
—Will it rain tomorrow? 明天会下雨吗?
—I hope not. 希望不要下雨。

【注意】习惯上不能将 I hope not. 改为 I don't hope so.

【考题在线5】—Maybe you can catch the last bus.
—_____. If not, I'll have to walk home. (重庆B)
A. Good job B. Just so-so
C. Not at all D. I hope so

点拨:本题用交际法解题。考查情景交际。good job 干得不错,just so-so 一般,not at all 不客气,I hope so 希望如此。根据题干语境提示 If not, I'll have to walk home. 可知"我"希望能赶上最后一班车。

考题在线答案
1. impolite; line 2. politely 3. Littering 4. take turns 5. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见230页)

一、根据句意及提示填空

1. For example, dropping _____(杂物) is almost never allowed.
2. We should _____(遵守) the traffic rules to stay away from accidents on the road.
3. It's bad _____(礼貌) to ask others personal questions, such as age and marriage. (滨州改编)
4. I think it's our _____(轮流) to drive the kids to school this week. (苏州)
5. When we left, the kids said goodbye to us _____(礼貌地). (济宁)

二、单项选择

6. —Would you like to see a movie with me tonight?
—_____. I have to do chores. (昆明)
A. Good luck B. Let's go
C. No problem D. I'm afraid not

7. I mop the floor every day to keep my home _____. 【导学号:9577700】
A. clean B. cleaning
C. cleans D. to clean

8. —_____ But your father has come, Mrs Lin.
—Really? Thanks.
A. I am really sorry.
B. Excuse me for cutting in.
C. Hold on for a minute.
D. What's up?

9. —Can I use the dictionary on the shelf?
—Sure. Remember to _____ after you use it.
A. put it out B. put it back
C. put out it D. put back it

10. It's not _____ to be friendly. You have to be a friend. Go and talk to Sam. (无锡)
A. good enough B. late enough
C. too good D. too late

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入　拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A When in Rome

课文朗读A

Daniel is hosting the school radio show this week. He is interviewing Jenny, a Grade 9 student, who has recently visited the UK.

Daniel: Hi, everyone. Today we've invited Jenny to talk about manners in the UK. What's the **proper**/ˈprɒpə(r)/[1] way to greet people there, Jenny?

Jenny: Well, British people say "hello" or "nice to meet you" and **shake your hand**[2] when they meet you for the first time.

Daniel: Do they greet people with a **kiss**/kɪs/[3]?

Jenny: No. British people only greet relatives or close /kləʊs/ friends with a kiss.

Daniel: How do people start a **conversation**/ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃn/[4]?

Jenny: They talk about the weather, holidays, music, books or something else. But please **avoid**/əˈvɔɪd/[5] **subjects** /ˈsʌbdʒɪkts/[6] like age, weight or money.

Daniel: Do people there behave politely in **public**/ˈpʌblɪk/[7]?

Jenny: Yes, they do. They always queue. They think it's rude to **push**/pʊʃ/[8] in before others. Also, if they bump into someone in the street, they'll say "sorry".

Daniel: Anything else?

Jenny: If you're **in their way**[9], they won't **touch**/tʌtʃ/[10] you or push past you. They'll say "**excuse**/ɪkˈskjuːz/ **me**[11]" and be polite enough to wait till/tɪl/ you move.

Daniel: British people are very polite at home **as well**[12], aren't they?

Jenny: Yes. They say "please" and "thank you" all the time!

Daniel: Any other tips for us if we're going to the UK?

Jenny: Let me see. Oh, keep your voice down in public. British people don't like to shout or laugh **loudly**/ˈlaʊdli/[13].

Daniel: OK. Thanks, Jenny. Now we've learnt more about manners in the UK. I'm sure they're helpful to us.

Jenny: I hope so. Just **as**/əz; æz/[14] the saying goes, "**When in Rome, do as the Romans do.**[15]"

B Good manners in the UK

阅读

A 当在罗马时

丹尼尔本周正在主持学校的广播节目。他正在采访珍妮，一个不久前参观过英国的九年级学生。

丹尼尔：嗨，大家好。今天我们邀请到珍妮谈谈英国的礼仪。珍妮，在那儿和人们打招呼的正确方式是什么？

珍妮：噢，当英国人第一次和你见面时，他们说"你好"或"见到你很高兴"，并且和你握手。

丹尼尔：他们与人打招呼时亲吻吗？

珍妮：不。英国人只和亲戚或亲密的朋友们打招呼时亲吻。

丹尼尔：人们怎样开始一次交谈？

珍妮：他们谈论有关天气、假期、音乐、书籍或其他某些事情。但请避免像年龄、体重或金钱这样的话题。

丹尼尔：那里的人们在公共场合表现得有礼貌吗？

珍妮：是，他们表现得有礼貌。他们总是排队等候。他们认为插队到别人前面是粗鲁的。而且，如果他们在街上撞到某人，他们会说"对不起"。

丹尼尔：还有其他什么吗？

珍妮：如果你挡住他们的路了，他们不会碰你或从你身边挤过去。他们会说"劳驾一下"并且很有礼貌地等待，一直到你移开为止。

丹尼尔：英国人在家里也很有礼貌，是吗？

珍妮：是的。他们总是说"请"和"谢谢你"！

丹尼尔：如果我们去英国，还有其他要点要告诉我们吗？

珍妮：让我想想。噢，在公共场合保持低音量。英国人不喜欢大声地喊叫或笑。

丹尼尔：好的。谢谢你，珍妮。现在我们已经学到了更多英国的礼仪了。我确信它们对我们是很有帮助的。

珍妮：我希望如此。就像谚语说的"入乡随俗。"

B 英国的好礼仪

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B1 **Simon does not know some of the words in the interview. Help him match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.**

1. proper (line 2) _____
2. greet (line 2) _____
3. conversation (line 7) _____
4. avoid (line 9) _____
5. push in (line 11) _____
6. bump (line 12) _____

a. a small talk
b. try not to do something
c. go in front of other people who are waiting
d. hit someone or something **by accident**[16]
e. right or correct
f. say hello to someone or welcome them

B2 **Simon is trying to make sure that he remembers what Jenny talked about on the radio. Help him tick ☺ for what British people do and ☹ for what they do not do.**

Greeting: say "hello" or "nice to meet you" ☺☹
shake hands ☺☹
usually greet people with a kiss ☺☹
talk about the weather, holidays, music or books ☺☹
talk about age, weight or money ☺☹

In public: queue for something ☺☹
push in before others ☺☹
say "sorry" if they bump into others ☺☹
push past people ☺☹
shout or laugh loudly ☺☹

At home: say "please" and "thank you" all the time ☺☹

B3 **Jenny is writing an article about good manners in the UK for the school newsletter. Help her complete her article with the correct words.**

Good manners in the UK

British people usually say "hello" or "nice to meet you" and (1) _____ when they meet you for the first time. They only greet (2) _____ or close friends with a kiss. They like to start a (3) _____ with subjects like the weather, holidays, music or books. They (4) _____ talking about age, weight or money.

B1 西蒙不了解采访中的一些单词。帮助他把左边的单词和右边的意思搭配起来。在横线上写上正确的字母。

1. 正确的(第二行) _____
2. 打招呼(第二行) _____
3. 交谈(第七行) _____
4. 避免(第九行) _____
5. 插队(第十一行) _____
6. 撞、碰(第十二行) _____

a. 一次简短的谈话
b. 尽量不去做某事
c. 走到正在等候的其他人前面
d. 偶然撞到某人或某物
e. 对的或正确的
f. 与某人打招呼或欢迎他们

B2 西蒙正尽力确保他记住珍妮在收音机里谈论的内容。帮助他用☺标注出英国人做的事，用☹标注出他们不做的事。

打招呼：说"你好"或"见到你很高兴" ☺☹
握手 ☺☹
通常用亲吻与人打招呼 ☺☹
谈论天气、假期、音乐或书籍 ☺☹
谈论年龄、体重或金钱 ☺☹

在公共场合：为某事排队等候 ☺☹
插队到别人前面 ☺☹
如果他们撞到别人时会说"对不起" ☺☹
从人们身边挤过去 ☺☹
大声地喊叫或笑 ☺☹

在家：一直说"请"和"谢谢你" ☺☹

B3 珍妮正在为学校的简讯写一篇关于英国的好礼仪的文章。帮助她用正确的单词完成文章。

英国的好礼仪

英国人通常说"你好"或"见到你很高兴"，并且(1) _____，当他们和你第一次见面时。他们仅和(2) _____或亲密的朋友亲吻打招呼。他们喜欢以天气、假期、音乐或书籍为话题开始一次(3) _____。他们(4) _____谈论年龄、体重或金钱。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

British people think it is rude to (5) _____ before others. They always (6) _____. They say "sorry" if they (7) _____ you in the street. When they want you to (8) _____, they say "excuse me". They do not like to shout or laugh loudly (9) _____. British people are (10) _____ at home too. They say "please" or "thank you" (11) _____.

"When in Rome, do as (12) _____ do." When we are in a strange place, we should do as the local people do.

C Talking about manners in China

Daniel is thinking about the differences in manners between the UK and China. Work in pairs and discuss his questions below with your partner.

1. How do we greet each other?
2. How do we usually start a conversation?
3. Do we always queue?
4. What do we do if someone is in our way?
5. Do we shout or laugh loudly in public?
6. Do we say "please" and "thank you" at home?
7. Do we need to improve our manners?

英国人认为 (5) _____到别人前面是不礼貌的。他们总是 (6) _____。如果他们在街上 (7) _____你，他们会说"对不起"。当他们想要你 (8) _____，他们会说"劳驾一下"。他们不喜欢 (9) _____大声地喊叫或笑。英国人在家里也 (10) _____。他们 (11) _____说"请"或"谢谢你"。

"入乡随俗。"当我们在一个陌生的地方时，我们应该像当地人一样做事。

C 谈论中国的礼仪

丹尼尔正在思考英国和中国在礼仪方面的不同点。两人一组，并和你的同伴讨论以下他的问题。

1. 我们怎样相互打招呼？
2. 我们通常怎样开始一次交谈？
3. 我们总是排队等候吗？
4. 如果某人挡住了我们的路，我们会做什么？
5. 我们在公共场合大声地喊叫或笑吗？
6. 我们在家说"请"或"谢谢你"吗？
7. 我们需要完善我们的礼仪吗？

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 proper/ˈprɒpə(r)/*adj.* 符合习俗的；正确的

eg: You must learn to greet people in the **proper** way.
你必须学会用正确的方式打招呼。

考向：proper 还有"恰当的；合适的"的意思。

eg: It must be done in the **proper** way.
这件事必须以恰当的方式来做。

拓展 proper 的副词形式为 properly，意为"恰当地；合适地"。

【考题在线 1】Every coin has two sides. You should use the Internet in a _____ (正确的) way. （天水改编）

2 shake one's hand 握手

eg: He will **shake your hand** when he meets you.
当他见到你时，他会和你握手。

拓展 shake hands with sb. 和某人握手
shake one's head 摇头

【注意】shake 是不规则动词，其过去式是 shook，其过去分词是 shaken。

速记小筏

一语巧记：I went up and wanted to **shake** hands with her. But she **shook** her head and went away.
我走上前想和她握手。但是她摇摇头走开了。

3 kiss/kɪs/*n.* 亲吻

eg: She gave her mother a **kiss**.
她给了她母亲一个吻。

考向：kiss 还可作动词，意为"吻，亲吻"。

eg: She bent over the baby and **kissed** it.
她弯下身去吻了吻那个婴儿。

4 conversation/ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃn/*n.* 交谈，谈话

eg: I had an interesting **conversation** with my neighbour.
我和我的邻居进行了一次有趣的谈话。

考向：conversation 为可数名词时，复数形式为 conversations。常用搭配：have a conversation with sb. 与某人谈话

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

eg: In our English class, we are often divided into eight groups to practice **conversations**. 在英语课上,我们经常被分为八组练习对话。

【考题在线 2】If you want to speak English well, you need to have _____ (谈话) as much as possible with your friend. (枣庄)

5 avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ *vt.* 避免

eg: They all **avoided** mentioning that name.
他们都避免提及那个名字。

考向: avoid 后接名词或动名词。avoid 后不可以跟动词不定式。

eg: I crossed the street to **avoid meeting** him, but he saw me and ran towards me.
我穿过马路以便避开他,但他看到了我并朝我跑了过来。

【考题在线 3】Neil's coach gave him several suggestions to _____ (避免) getting lost. (宿迁)

6 subject /ˈsʌbdʒɪkt/ *n.* 话题;主题

eg: What is the **subject** of that book?
那本书的主题是什么?

考向: subject 还有"科目,学科"的意思。

eg: What **subject** does Mr Smith teach?
史密斯先生教哪门课?

【考题在线 4】The _____ (话题) we are going to talk about is "Online Manners".

7 public /ˈpʌblɪk/ *n.* 民众,群体

eg: (黄冈中考) —You aren't supposed to smoke in **public**. It's bad for our health.
你不应该在公众场合抽烟。这对我们的健康有害。
—Sorry, I will put out my cigarette right now.
对不起,我马上将烟熄灭。

考向: public 还可作形容词,意为"公众的,公共的"。

eg: You mustn't do that in a **public** place.
你一定不能在公共场所做那种事。

搭配: in public 公开地,在别人面前

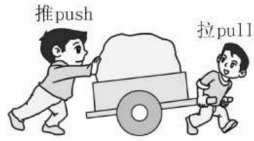
【考题在线 5】It's impolite to speak loudly _____ (当众). (随州改编)

8 push /pʊʃ/ *vi. & vt.* 推,挤

eg: He **pushed** her into the car.
他把她推进了车里。

考向: push 也可作名词,意为"推,推动"。其反义词为 pull,意为"拉"。

eg: I fell because he gave me a **push**.
我跌倒了,因为他推了我一下。



【考题在线 6】Once the actor Edwards told his fans, "Be yourself and don't let anybody _____ you around." (武汉)
A. pull B. push
C. take D. turn

点拨: push around 粗暴命令;任意摆布。后半句句意:做你自己,不要让任何人摆布你。

搭配: push in 插队,加塞,相当于 cut in。

9 in one's way 挡住某人的路

eg: Those stones are **in our way**.
那些石头挡住了我们的路。

考向[重点]: 与 way 相关的短语有:
all the way 一直,总是
by the way 顺便问一下
on one's way to 在某人去某处的路上
lose one's way 迷路

【考题在线 7】—If someone is _____ your way, what will you do?
—I will wait until he or she moves instead of pushing past. (泰州)
A. in B. on C. by D. along

10 touch /tʌtʃ/ *v.* 触摸,蹭

eg: Don't **touch** the broken glass. It may hurt your hand.
不要触摸坏玻璃杯,它可能会伤了你的手。
Don't **touch** the paint until it's dry.
油漆未干,切勿触摸。

拓展 touch 作动词时,还可意为"感动"。

eg: A true friend reaches for your hand and **touches** your heart. 一个真正的朋友会为你伸出援手,触动你的心。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线8】Which sign means "No touching"? _____ （天水）

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

⑪**excuse me 劳驾**

eg: **Excuse me**, can you tell me the way to the nearest hospital?
劳驾，你能告诉我去最近的医院的路吗？

考向[重点]：excuse me 与 sorry

词条	用法	示例
excuse me	常用的客套话。常用于句首，通常在打扰别人或要吸引别人注意时使用。	**Excuse me**, is there a hotel here? 打扰一下，这儿有旅馆吗？
sorry	常用于由于自己的过失给对方造成损失，或对别人的要求不能满足时。	I'm **sorry** but I can't help you. 对不起，我不能帮助你。
	还可以用来表示对别人的病情、身体不适、处于困境等感到同情、伤心、难过。	—Tom is ill. 汤姆病了。 —I'm **sorry** to hear that. 听到这事我真难过。

【考题在线9】—_____ Could you tell me where to park my car?
—Sure. There's an underground parking lot over there. （曲靖）
A. Let it go. B. Pardon me.
C. Excuse me. D. On the way.

⑫**as well 也，还有**

eg: Mr Li is our teacher and our friend **as well**.
李先生是我们的老师，也是我们的朋友。

考向：as well 相当于 too，是副词短语，一般放在句末。

eg: Tom likes music. I like it **as well**.
汤姆喜欢音乐，我也喜欢。

⑬**loudly**/ˈlaʊdli/*adv.* **大声地，响亮地**

eg: The guests all laughed **loudly**.
客人们都大声地笑了。

考向[易错点]：辨析 loudly，loud 与 aloud

loudly	只能作副词，含有"喧闹地"的意味。	She screamed as **loudly** as she could. 她声嘶力竭地尖叫着。
loud	可以作形容词，意为"大声的"，也可以作副词，意为"响亮地，大声地"，作副词时和 loudly 同义。	The television is too **loud**. Turn the volume down. 电视声音太响了，把音量调低一点儿。 He should not speak so **loud**. 他不该如此大声说话。
aloud	只能作副词，强调为使人听见而发声，声音不一定很大。	Please read **aloud** so that I can hear you. 请大声朗读，好让我能听到。

⑭**as**/əz；æz/*conj.* **正如，如同**

eg: It isn't so easy **as** you think.
这不像你想的那么容易。

考向[重点]：辨析 as 与 like

as	介词，"作为，以……身份"	He talked to me **as** a father. 他以父亲的身份跟我谈话。（他是我的父亲。）
like	介词，"像……一样"	He talked to me **like** my father. 他像父亲那样跟我谈话。（他不是我的父亲。）

搭配：as ... as 像……；如同……
as soon as possible 尽快地
as if 好像　　such as 例如
the same as 与……一样

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑮**套用谚语法**：When in Rome, do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗。这是一句谚语，文章最后套用了谚语作为最后的总结。

⑯**by accident 偶然，意外地**

eg：I met her **by accident**. 我偶然遇见了她。

考向：by accident 相当于 by chance。

速记小筏

一语巧记：He was killed in a car **accident by accident**. 他在车祸中意外丧生。

【考题在线 10】那个小孩在登山中意外地摔伤了腿。（兰州）

That child broke his leg _____ _____ when he was climbing the mountain.

考题在线答案

1. proper 2. conversations
3. avoid 4. subject
5. in public
6. B 7. A 8. D 9. C
10. by accident

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 230 页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Please follow the rules. Don't _____ (触碰) the photos in the museum. (安徽改编)
2. I'm new here, so I have no _____ (亲密的) friends.
3. He wants to have a _____ (交谈) with you.
4. Do you know the _____ (主题) of that activity?
5. He _____ (推) the door and came in.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Many people can hardly avoid _____ (buy) products made in China. (黄冈改编)
7. When I entered the room, everyone was laughing _____ (loud).
8. Do you think _____ (Britain) people are friendly?
9. You should avoid the subjects like age, _____ (weigh) or money.
10. You can shake her hand when you see her for the _____ (one) time.

三、单项选择

11. —Would you please not speak so loudly in _____ public?
—Sorry. I will remember to speak in _____ lower voice.
A. the; a B. /; a
C. the; the D. /; /

12. The speaker showed some _____ examples to make the science report easy to understand. (安徽)
A. awful B. stupid
C. proper D. thick

13. We should behave politely at home _____.
A. either
B. as well
C. also
D. as well as

14. You'd better fix the machine _____ I have told you. Otherwise, you may make more problems.
A. like B. with
C. as D. follow

15. —_____, could I take this seat?
—_____, it's taken.
A. Excuse me; Excuse me
B. Sorry; Sorry
C. Sorry; Excuse me
D. Excuse me; Sorry

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 他太害羞，以致不敢在公共场合说话。(益阳)
He was too shy to speak _____ _____.

17. 昨天，我在街上偶然遇到了我的一位老朋友。
Yesterday, I met an old friend of mine _____ _____ in the street.

18. 在中国，老朋友见面时通常彼此握手。
In China, old friends often _____ _____ _____ each other when they meet.

19. 去吧！没人挡你的路。
Go ahead! Nobody is _____ _____ _____.

20. 我们都认为插队到别人前面是粗鲁的。
We all think it's _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ others.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A Using *enough to*

We can use "to be + adjective + enough + to-infinitive" to describe a person's personality and abilities.

You are old enough to learn about manners.

If you are in their way, British people will be polite enough to wait till you move.

Suzy's friends

Suzy wants to tell her parents what she thinks about her friends. Help her make sentences using "to be + adjective + enough + to-infinitive".

1. Daniel his friends/kind/any time/help
Daniel is kind enough to help his friends any time.
2. Millie listen/patient/when others speak/carefully

_____

3. Sandy around her/careful/small changes/notice

_____

4. Kitty generous/with others/her things/share

_____

5. Simon queue/polite/in public

_____

6. Amy make everyone laugh/funny/after class

_____

B Using *too ... to*

We can use "to be + too + adjective + to-infinitive" to express a negative result.

British people are very polite. They do not shout loudly in public.

→ British people are too polite to shout loudly in public.

British people are very polite. They will not push past you.

→ British people are too polite to push past you.

Sometimes we need to add for someone before the to-infinitive.

The UK is very far away. Jenny cannot go there on her own.

→ The UK is too far away for Jenny to go there on her own.

After the radio show

The radio show is over. Millie wants to write about that day in her diary. Help her rewrite the sentences with "to be + too + adjective + to-infinitive".

语法

A 使用 *enough to*

我们可以用"to be + 形容词 + enough + 带 to 的不定式"来描述一个人的个性和能力。

你足够大可以来学习礼仪了。

如果你挡住他们的路，英国人将会足够礼貌地等候，直到你移开。

苏西的朋友们

苏西想要告诉她的父母她认为她的朋友们怎么样。帮助她用"to be + 形容词 + enough + 带 to 的不定式"来造句。

1. 丹尼尔 他的朋友/善良的/任何时候/帮助
丹尼尔足够善良，任何时候都帮助他的朋友。
2. 米莉 听/耐心的/当其他人说话时/仔细地

_____

3. 桑迪 在她周围/仔细的/小的变化/注意

_____

4. 基蒂 大方的/和其他人/她的东西/分享

_____

5. 西蒙 排队/有礼貌的/在公共场合

_____

6. 埃米 使每个人笑/滑稽的/课后

_____

B 使用 *too ... to*

我们可以用"to be + too + 形容词 + 带 to 的不定式"来表达否定的结果。

英国人很礼貌。他们不在公共场合大声地喊叫。

→ 英国人很礼貌而不在公共场合大声地喊叫。

英国人很礼貌。他们不会从你身边挤过去。

→英国人很礼貌而不会从你身边挤过去。

有时我们需要在带 to 的不定式前面增加 for someone。

英国很遥远。珍妮不能独自去那儿。

→ 对珍妮来说，英国太遥远，她不能独自去那儿。

在广播节目后

广播节目结束了。米莉想要在她的日记里写关于那天的情况。帮她用"to be + too + 形容词 + 带 to 的不定式"重写这些句子。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1. Suzy was very shy. She did not join the **discussion** /dɪˈskʌʃn/❶.

2. Simon was very excited. He did not **express**/ɪkˈspres/❷ himself clearly.

3. Peter was slow. He could not write down all the main points.

4. Amy was careless. She did not take her hat with her when she left.

5. Kitty was very busy with her dancing lessons. She did not listen to the radio.

Work out the rule!

We often use "to be + too + _____ (adjective, adverb) + to-infinitive" to express a negative result.

1. 苏西很害羞。她没有加入讨论。

2. 西蒙很兴奋。他没有清晰地表达他自己。

3. 皮特很慢。他不能写下所有要点。

4. 埃米很粗心。当她离开时她没有拿她的帽子。

5. 基蒂正忙于她的舞蹈课。她没有听收音机。

总结规律!

我们经常用"to be + too + _____(形容词,副词)+带 to 的不定式"来表达一个否定的结果。

Ⅱ.重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**discussion**/dɪˈskʌʃn/*n.* 讨论

eg: After two hours' **discussion**, they finally reached an agreement.
讨论了两个小时后,他们最终达成协议。

考向:have a discussion 讨论。discussion 的动词形式为 discuss,意为"讨论"。

eg: Mr Wood refused to **discuss** the matter.
伍德先生拒绝讨论这件事。

【考题在线】用所给词的适当形式填空:
Let's have a _____(discuss) about the wonders of the world. (南宁)

❷**express**/ɪkˈspres/*vt.* 表达

eg: Really, I hardly know how to **express** my thanks.
我真的几乎不知道我如何表达我的感谢之情。

考向:express 的名词形式为 expression,意为"表达"。

eg: I sent them flowers as an **expression** of thanks.
我给他们送去鲜花表示感谢。

搭配:express oneself 表达自己

eg: You can **express yourself** freely.
你可以畅所欲言。

考题在线答案
discussion

Ⅲ.语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1:enough to 的用法

考向一:Sb. is + (not) *adj.* + enough + to do sth. 某人足够/不够……做某事。

eg: The boy is strong **enough to** swim across the wide river.
这男孩足够的强壮,能游过这条宽阔的河。

【考题在线1】My little brother is 7 years old. He's old _____ to go to school. (考感)

点拨:本题用结构分析法。Sb. is + *adj.* + enough + to do sth. 某人够……做某事。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考向二：(1) enough 置于形容词之后。在使用本句型的时候，要注意主语和 be 动词的一致性。而且形容词前没有任何诸如 very，quite 等之类的修饰词。

eg：The room is **big enough to** hold all of us.
这房间足够大，能容纳我们所有人。

(2) 该句型可以和 so…that…句型互换。

eg：He is **clever enough to** work out the problem easily.
他足够聪明，能很容易地解出这道题。
= He is **so** clever **that** he can work out the problem easily.
他如此聪明，以至于他能很容易地解出这道题。

【考题在线 2】 Cathy checked her paper _____ so that she could get good grades this time.
A. careful enough　　B. enough careful
C. enough carefully　　D. carefully enough
点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：为了这次能取得好成绩，凯西足够认真地检查了她的试卷。修饰动词短语“checked her paper”需要用副词 carefully，而 enough 通常放在被修饰的词后。

考点 2：too …to … 的用法

考向一：too …to … 中 too 后接形容词或副词。


知识微课：too…to…

eg：I like this bike, but it's **too** expensive for me **to** buy. What a pity!
我喜欢这辆自行车，但是买它对我来说太贵了。太遗憾了！

【考题在线 3】 我太累了，什么都想不起来了。（湛江）
I'm _____ think of anything.
点拨：本题用结构分析法。“太……而不能……”的英文表达为 too …to …，又因 too 后接形容词或副词，本句空格前为 be 动词，故用形容词。

考向二：(1) “too …to …”句式可与“so …that …”以及“not… enough to…”进行转换，但要注意“too …to …”与“so …that…” 之间的形容词要与“not… enough to…”句型中的形容词或副词意思相反。(2) 在 too…to…句式中，句子的主语和不定式的宾语是指同一个事物，则宾语不能重复，必须省掉，有时甚至其后的 to do 也可以省去。

eg：这课桌太重，我搬不动。
This desk is **too** heavy for me **to** carry it.　(F)
This desk is **too** heavy for me **to** carry.　(T)
这台电脑太贵，他买不起。
The computer is **too** expensive for him **to** buy it.　(F)
The computer is **too** expensive for him (**to** buy).　(T)

【考题在线 4】 Little Cindy is not old enough to dress herself.（改为同义句）
Little Cindy is _____ _____ _____ dress herself.
Little Cindy is _____ _____ _____ she can't dress herself.

考题在线答案
1. enough　2. D　3. too tired to
4. too young to; so young that

Ⅳ. 随堂练习　稳拿中考基础20分　(答案见 230 页)

一、单项选择

1. She's not strong enough _____ walking up mountains.（杭州）
A. to go　　B. going
C. go　　D. went

2. —Sally, I went to the concert last night. How big the symphony hall is!
—So it is. It is _____ to hold more than one thousand people.（玉林）
A. big enough
B. enough big
C. too big
D. too small

3. This movie wasn't _____. He fell asleep half way through it.（贺州）
A. interesting enough
B. enough interesting
C. interested enough
D. enough interested

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. His joke is _____ to make us all _____. (天水)

A. enough funny; laugh
B. funny enough; laugh
C. enough funny; to laugh
D. funny enough; to laugh

5. Lucy isn't old enough to carry the box. (黔西南)

A. is so young that she can
B. isn't young enough to
C. is too young to
D. is so young to

6. Li Na is _____ famous _____ all the tennis fans in China know her. (滨州)

A. too; to
B. enough; to
C. as; as
D. so; that

7. The book is _____ for a seven-year-old boy _____.

A. enough easy; reading
B. enough easy; to read
C. easy enough; reading
D. easy enough; to read

8. The old man said he was _____ tired _____ walk any further.

A. enough; to
B. to; too
C. too; to
D. so; that

9. —*Harry Potter* is _____ an interesting novel _____ I want to read it again.
—I agree with you. (咸宁)

A. so; that B. too; to
C. such; that D. as; as

10. The bag of rice is _____ heavy for Tom to carry. Let's go and help him.

A. too B. so
C. very D. to

二、同义句转换

11. Amy is very outgoing and she can make friends easily.
Amy is _____ _____ _____ _____ friends easily.

12. The boy is very tall. He can reach the apples on the tree.
The boy is _____ _____ _____ _____ the apples on the tree.

13. He is kind. He helps me with my English.
He _____ _____ _____ _____ help me with my English.

14. The box is so heavy that we can't carry it. (孝感)
The box is _____ heavy for us _____ carry.

15. The problem is very difficult and he can't work it out.
The problem is _____ _____ _____ him _____ work out.
The problem isn't _____ _____ _____ him _____ work out.

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 踢完足球后,他太兴奋了以至于睡不着觉。
After the football game, he was _____ excited _____ sleep.

17. 这个男孩很聪明,他能很快解出这道数学题。
The boy is _____ enough to work out the math problem _____.

18. 约翰太粗心了,不能照看好他的宠物。 (宿迁)
John is _____ _____ _____ look after his pets well.

19. 我的弟弟有足够的耐心,他等半小时也不会生气。 (淮安)
My brother is _____ _____ to wait for half an hour without _____ _____.

20. 这个女孩太小不能清理她书包里的物品。 (黄冈)
The girl is too young _____ _____ _____ the things in her schoolbag. (clear)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Public signs

A1 Amy is talking with her cousin Shirley about signs used in public places. Listen to the first part of their conversation and help Shirley complete her notes.

课文听力A1音频及材料

Public/ˈpʌblɪk/ signs

- Are used in public places
- Often (1) _____ in colours
- Often have (2) _____ on them
- Help **explain**/ɪkˈspleɪn/❶ things and give us useful information
  - → Help us find our (3) _____
  - → Tell us about the (4) _____ around us
  - → **Keep** us (5) _____ **from**❷ danger
  - → **Warn**/wɔːn/❸ us (6) _____ something

A2 Listen to the second part of the conversation. Help Shirley write the missing information in the table below.

课文听力A2音频及材料

Sign	Meaning	Usually seen
	No smoking	in (1) _____
	No photos	in (2) _____
	No **parking**/ˈpɑːkɪŋ/❹	in (3) _____
	No littering/ˈlɪtə(r)ɪŋ/	in (4) _____

A3 Shirley is writing a report on public signs. Help her complete her report. Fill in the blanks with the information in Parts A1 and A2.

Public signs

We can see different public signs in places like (1) _____, (2) _____, streets and (3) _____. They are often bright in colours and have (4) _____ on them.

Public signs help (5) _____ things. Most of them give us (6) _____ information. They help us (7) _____, tell us about the (8) _____, keep us (9) _____ and warn us (10) _____.

Here are some examples:

(11) _____ (12) _____

(13) _____ (14) _____

综合技能

A 公共标志

A1 埃米和她的表姐雪莉正在谈论有关公共场合使用的标志。听她们对话的第一部分，帮助雪莉完成她的笔记。

公共标志

- 在公共场合使用
- 经常（1）_____颜色
- 经常有（2）_____在它们上面

- 帮助解释事情，给我们提供有用的信息
  - →帮助我们找到（3）_____
  - →告诉我们关于（4）_____在我们周围
  - →使我们（5）_____危险
  - →警告我们（6）_____某事

A2 听对话的第二部分。帮助雪莉在下面的表格里写出丢失的信息。

标志	含义	通常在某地看见
	禁止吸烟	在（1）____
	禁止拍照	在（2）____
	禁止停车	在（3）____
	禁止乱扔垃圾	在（4）____

A3 雪莉正在写一篇有关公共标志的报告。帮助她完成她的报告。用 **A1** 和 **A2** 部分的信息填空。

公共标志

我们可以在（1）_____、（2）_____、街道和（3）_____看到不同的公共标志。它们经常色彩明亮且上面有（4）_____。

公共标志帮助（5）_____事情。它们大部分给我们（6）_____信息。它们帮助我们（7）_____，告诉我们有关（8）_____，使我们（9）_____并警告我们（10）_____。

这儿是一些例子：

（11）_____ （12）_____

（13）_____ （14）_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Speak up: Please don't take photos.

Mr Zhao, Amy's father, is visiting an art museum with Amy and Shirley. They are talking softly in the museum. Work in groups and warn your group members not to do something. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Mr Zhao: Look at this famous painting by Picasso.
Amy: Wow! It's excellent! Let me take a photo of it.
Mr Zhao: Please don't take photos, Amy.
Amy: Why not?
Mr Zhao: Look at the sign. It says "No photos". We shouldn't take photos here.
Amy: Sorry, I didn't notice that sign just now.
Shirley: Come and see, Amy! I've seen this painting before.
Amy: OK. I'm coming, but we shouldn't shout in the museum, Shirley.

Study skills

Using English sayings

A saying is a short wise statement that usually gives advice or expresses some truth about life.

When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

(When you are in a foreign country or a situation you are not familiar with, you should behave in the way that the people around you behave.)

Many traditional sayings are still in general use today. Sometimes they are a great help if you need some wise words to express your ideas. They make what you say or write simple and vivid.

A Sandy collected some sayings. Help her match the sayings with their meanings. Write the correct letters in the boxes.

a. everybody will be lucky or successful/səkˈsesfl/❺ sometime/ˈsʌmtaɪm/❻ in their life
b. when one bad thing happens to you, other bad things happen **soon after**❼
c. you have to do something before others in order to be successful
d. if lots of people share the work, it will make a job easier to complete
e. what other people have always seems better than your own
f. risk/rɪsk/❽ losing everything all at one time

1. the early bird catches the worm ☐
2. it never rains but it pours ☐
3. many hands make light work ☐
4. every dog has its day ☐
5. put all your eggs in one basket ☐
6. the grass is always greener on the other side ☐

B 大声地说：请不要拍照。

赵先生，埃米的父亲，正在和埃米、雪莉参观一家艺术博物馆。他们正在博物馆里轻声地交谈着。小组合作并警告你的小组成员不要去做某些事。用下面的对话作为例子。

赵先生：看这幅毕加索的著名作品。
埃米：哇！它太美了。让我给它拍张照片吧。
赵先生：请不要拍照，埃米。
埃米：为什么不呢？
赵先生：看这个标志。它写着"禁止拍照"。我们不应该在这里拍照。
埃米：对不起，刚才我没有注意到那个标志。
雪莉：埃米，过来看一看！我以前看过这幅画。
埃米：好的。我来了，雪莉，但我们不应该在博物馆里大叫。

学习技巧

使用英语谚语

一句谚语是一句简短又有智慧的表述，通常是给出建议或表达一些有关生活的真理。

入乡随俗

（当你在外国或一种你不熟悉的情况下时，你应该表现得和你周围的人一样。）

许多传统的谚语通常现在仍然在使用。如果你需要一些充满智慧的话来表达你的想法，有时它们是有很大帮助的。它们使你说的或写的内容简洁生动。

A 桑迪收集了一些谚语。帮助她把谚语和它们的意思搭配起来。在方框中写上正确的字母。

a. 每个人都会在人生的某时是幸运的或成功的
b. 当一件坏事发生在你身上时，其他坏事不久后也发生了
c. 你必须在别人前面做某事以获得成功
d. 如果许多人分担工作，将会使一份工作更容易完成
e. 别人的东西似乎总是比你自己的更好
f. 冒着一次失去一切的危险

1. 早起的鸟儿有虫吃☐
2. 祸不单行☐
3. 人多力量大☐
4. 人人都有得意时☐
5. 孤注一掷☐
6. 这山望着那山高☐

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B **Mr Wu has prepared some sayings for the students. Help the students complete the sentences with the correct sayings.**

- actions speak louder than words
- no **pain**/peɪn/⑨, no gain
- a friend in need is a friend indeed
- **practice**/ˈpræktɪs/⑩ makes perfect
- burn the candle/ˈkændl/ at both ends

1. Just as the saying goes, "_____." My cousin has made his dream come true after years of hard work.
2. _____. If you keep practising speaking English every day, you will be better at it.
3. Do not try to do many things at one time. Otherwise, you will become tired out. Remember, you cannot _____.
4. He always gives his friends help when they need it because he knows that _____.
5. Dad never says that he is good at cooking, but in fact he is. He always cooks delicious meals for us, that is, _____.

B 吴老师已为学生们准备了一些谚语。帮助学生们用正确的谚语完成这些句子。

- 事实胜于雄辩
- 一分耕耘，一分收获
- 患难见真情
- 熟能生巧
- 两头点蜡烛（过分耗精力）

1. 就像谚语说的："_____。"我的表哥在多年的努力工作后实现了他的梦想。
2. _____。如果你每天不断地练习说英语，你将会更擅长它。
3. 不要试图一次做许多事情。否则，你将会变得筋疲力尽。记住，你不能_____。
4. 他总是在朋友们需要帮助时给予他们帮助，因为他知道_____。
5. 爸爸从不说他擅长于做饭，但实际上他擅长。他总是为我们做美味的饭菜，那就是，_____。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶explain/ɪkˈspleɪn/ *vt. & vi.* 解释

eg: It was difficult to **explain** the problem to beginners. 对初学者解释这个问题很难。

考向[重点]：固定短语 explain sth. to sb. "向某人解释某事"，而不能说 explain sb. sth.。当宾语较长时，可用 explain to sb. sth. 结构。

eg: First, I'll **explain** the rules of the game **to** you. 首先，我会向你说明一下游戏规则。

拓展 explain 的名词形式为 explanation，意为"解释"。

【考题在线 1】 Mr Wu _____ this Maths problem _____ him many times, but he still doesn't understand it.

A. explains; to
B. have explained; for
C. explained; with
D. has explained; to

点拨：本题用**句意理解法**。explain sth. to sb. 意为"向某人解释某事"，根据句意"吴先生已经把这道数学题解释了很多遍了，但是他仍然不明白。"可知是在强调产生的结果，所以用完成时。

❷keep sb. from sth. 保护，使免受

eg: We should **keep ourselves from** fire.
我们应该远离火。

考向[重点]：keep...from(doing)..."保护……免受……"，相当于 stop...from(doing)...。

eg: We must **keep/stop** the children **from** playing in the street.
我们必须阻止孩子们在街上玩。

【考题在线 2】 现在越来越多的人已经了解如何保护孩子远离危险。（南京改编）
More and more people have learned _____ kids _____ danger now.

❸warn/wɔːn/ *vt. & vi.* 警告，告诫

eg: The teacher **warned** us not to play in the street.
老师警告过我们别在街上玩。

考向：warn 的名词形式为 warning。

搭配：warn sb. (not) to do sth. 警告某人（别）做某事

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 3】The traffic signs warn people _____ after drinking. （青岛）

A. to drive

B. not to drive

C. driving

D. don't drive

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。考查非谓语动词的用法。句意为：交通标识警告人们酒后_____。由常识可知，酒后不能开车，排除 A、C；warn sb. not to do sth. 意为"警告某人不要做某事"。

④[高频] **parking**/ˈpɑːkɪŋ/*n.* 停车

eg：Can you see the sign "No **parking**"?
你能看到"禁止停车"的标志吗？

考向：parking 的动词形式为 park，意为"停放"。

eg：Where can we **park** the car?
我们可以在哪儿停车呢？

⑤**successful**/səkˈsesfl/*adj.* 成功的

eg：You will be **successful** if you work hard.
如果你努力学习，你会成功的。

拓展 success *n.* 成功
successfully *adv.* 成功地

eg：Can you tell me the secret of your **success**?
你能告诉我你成功的秘诀吗？

【考题在线 4】The _____ (success) writer has written many popular novels all his life. （黔南州）

⑥**sometime**/ˈsʌmtaɪm/*adv.* 在某时

eg：I met him **sometime** last month.
我在上个月的某个时间碰见过他。

考向[易错点]：辨析 sometime，some time，sometimes 与 some times



词条	含义及用法	示例
sometime	指将来或过去的某个不明确的时间，意为"某个时间"。	I'll go to see you **sometime** next week. 我下周某个时间将去看你。
some time	意为"一段时间"，其中的 time 为不可数名词。	I spend **some time** reading English every day. 我每天花一些时间读英语。
sometimes	频度副词，意为"有时"，在句中作状语。	**Sometimes** I go shopping with my friends. 有时我和朋友们一起去购物。
some times	意为"几次；几倍"，其中的 times 为可数名词，意为"次数；倍数"。	I have been there for **some times**. 我去过那儿几次了。

特色土方法

巧记 sometime，some time，sometimes 与 some times

相连是某时，分开是一段；
相连"s"是有时，分开"s"是次数。

【考题在线 5】I have spent _____ on this job. I think I can finish it _____ this afternoon.

A. sometime; sometime

B. sometimes; some time

C. some time; sometime

D. some times; some time

⑦**soon after** 不久以后

eg：Their daughter was born **soon after**.
很快，他们的女儿就出生了。

考向：辨析 soon after 与 after a while

词条	含义及用法	示例
soon after 不久以后	作连词时，后面加所要连接的成分。	**Soon after** you arrive there, call me. 你到那儿就给我打电话。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

soon after 不久以后	作副词时，可单独使用。	**Soon after**, they hit a wall. 不久之后，他们就碰壁了。
after a while 不久，过了一会儿	相当于 after a moment，是个完整的介宾短语，后面不能再加宾语。	He entered the room and **after a while** a strange sound came from the room. 他进入了房间，不久房间里传出了奇怪的声音。

8 risk/rɪsk/*vt.* 冒险做

eg: They **risked** losing their jobs.
他们冒着失去工作的风险。

考向：risk 还可作名词，意为“危险，风险”。

eg: He saved my life at the **risk** of losing his own. 他冒着生命危险救了我的性命。

搭配：risk one's life to do sth.
冒着生命危险做某事
risk doing sth. 冒险做某事
take a risk 冒险

eg: Don't **take a risk** with your life.
不要拿你的生命去冒险。

9 pain/peɪn/*n.* 痛，疼痛

eg: Her back gives her a lot of **pain**.
她的背疼得厉害。

10 practice/ˈpræktɪs/*n.* 练习；训练；实践

eg: It takes a lot of **practice** to play the piano well.
弹好钢琴需要大量的练习。

考向：在美式英语中 practice 既可作动词，也可作名词；在英式英语中 practice 为名词，practise 为动词。practice/practise 后接动名词形式。

【考题在线 6】Sue practises _____ the violin hard and often gives wonderful performances. （上海）
A. play　　B. played
C. to play　　D. playing

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：休用功地练习拉小提琴，并且经常给出精彩的表演。动词 practise 后面接动词的-ing 形式充当宾语。

特色土方法

后跟动名词作宾语的常见动词（词组）：喜欢（enjoy）不断（keep）提建议（suggest）；习惯（be used to）完成（finish）不介意（mind）；忍俊不禁（can't stop/ help）盼望（look forward to）去练习（practise）。

考题在线答案

1. D　2. how to keep; from　3. B
4. successful　5. C　6. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见 230 页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Mr Wu always spends a lot of time _____ (解释) things to us. （扬州）
2. He needs a birthday cake and eight _____ (蜡烛) for his son's birthday party.
3. It will be a dangerous trip. Are you sure you want to take the _____ (风险)? （无锡）
4. If I felt some _____ (疼), I'd stop exercising.
5. —Come on, Sandy. Everybody will be lucky or _____ (成功的) sometime in their life.
—Thanks. I'll try again. （镇江）

二、单项选择

6. A murder happened _____ yesterday afternoon in Moon Town.
A. any time　　B. sometimes
C. sometime　　D. some times

7. He works hard and is often _____. I hope he will have more _____ at his business.
A. success; successful
B. successfully; successful
C. successful; success
D. successful; successful

8. I will spend as much time as I can _____ English during this summer holiday.
A. practice speaking
B. practice listening
C. practicing speaking
D. practicing listening

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9. The teacher _____ us the difficult problem many times, but we still don't understand it.
A. has explained B. explained with
C. has explained to D. explains to

10. —I spent the whole night preparing my report.
—Don't stay up too late, or you will be tired out. Remember, _____. (苏州)
A. it never rains but it pours
B. you can't burn the candle at both ends
C. you can't put all your eggs in one basket
D. the grass is always greener on the other side

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 他们在五月份相遇,不久就成为了好朋友。
They met in May and became good friends _____ _____.

12. 作为一名登山运动员,亚历克斯习惯于冒险。 (黄冈改编)
As a mountain climber, Alex is used to _____ _____ _____.

13. 牌子上写着"禁止停车"。
The sign says "_____ _____".

14. 老师警告我不要再迟到了。
The teacher _____ _____ _____ _____ be late again.

15. 风通常能阻止我们走着去上学。
The wind can usually _____ us _____ walking to school.

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Table manners

A **The Class 1, Grade 8 students are going to give a talk on good table manners. They are making a plan for the talk. Read their plan below.**

Name of the talk—Good table manners
Purpose/ˈpɜːpəs/[1] of the talk—Teach students rules for eating
Time— 10. a. m. ,12 May
Place—The school hall
Content—Do not start eating until everyone is ready.
Do not make too much noise while eating or drinking.
Do not eat with your mouth open.
Do not talk with the food in your mouth.
Do not reach over someone's plate for something.
Wait for everyone to finish before you leave the table.
Conclusion—We should know these rules to make sure that both guests/gests/ and hosts are comfortable at the table.

Useful expressions

…is/are going to hold a talk on ….
The purpose of the talk is to teach …about ….
It will take place at/in …at …on ….
When you …, you should ….
You should not ….
It is impolite/ˌɪmpəˈlaɪt/ to ….
Always remember to ….

任务

餐桌礼仪

A 八年级一班的学生们正打算作一个有关餐桌礼仪的演讲。他们正在为这个演讲制订计划。阅读下面他们的计划。

演讲的题目—好的餐桌礼仪
演讲的目的—教给学生们吃饭的规则
时间—5 月 12 日上午 10:00
地点—学校礼堂
内容—在每个人准备好之前别开始吃。
吃饭或喝东西时别发出太大的声音。
吃东西时别张着嘴。
别嘴里含着饭说话。
别越过别人的盘子去够东西。
等每个人都吃完你再离开餐桌。
总结——我们应该懂这些规则,确保餐桌上客人和主人都感到舒服。

有用的表达

……将举行关于……的演讲。
演讲的目的是教……关于……。
它将在……举行。
当你……的时候,你应该……。
你不应该……。
……是不礼貌的。
要一直记着……。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B Amy and Daniel are making a web page about their talk on the school website. Read their plan on page 76 again. Then help them complete the page.

Good table manners

We are going to hold a talk on good table manners. The purpose of the talk is to teach students (1) _____.

It will take place at (2) _____ on (3) _____ at the school hall.

There will be a lot of advice on table manners. We hope you will find them useful. **Above all**[2], when you are sitting at the table, you should not start eating until (4) _____, and it is impolite to (5) _____ while eating or drinking. You should not eat with (6) _____ or talk with (7) _____. Also, do not reach over (8) _____ for something. Before you leave, wait for (9) _____.

These rules are important because we should make sure that both guests and hosts are comfortable at the table.

C Your class is planning a talk about other aspects of good manners. Work in pairs. Make a plan and create your own web page.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about good manners in the UK.		
2. to use the new words to talk about manners.		
3. to use **enough to**. to use **too ...to**.		
4. to use English sayings.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

B 埃米和丹尼尔正在学校的网站上制作一个有关他们演讲的网页。再读一遍76页上他们的计划。然后帮助他们完成这个网页。

好的餐桌礼仪

我们将要举行一个有关好的餐桌礼仪的演讲。这个演讲的目的是教学生们(1) _____。

演讲将在(2) _____在(3) _____在学校礼堂举行。

演讲将会有许多关于餐桌礼仪的建议。我们希望这些建议对你们有帮助。首先，当你坐在餐桌旁时，你应该(4) _____才开始吃东西。当吃东西或喝东西的时候，(5) _____是不礼貌的。你不应该(6) _____吃东西或(7) _____与人交谈。另外，不要超过(8) _____去够东西。在你离开之前，要等(9) _____。

这些规则很重要，因为我们应该确保客人和主人在就餐时都感到舒服。

C 你的班级正在计划作一个有关其他方面的好的礼仪的演讲。两人一组，制作一个计划并创建你自己的网页。

自我评价

我已经学习了	细节	结果
1. 关于英国好的礼仪。		
2. 使用新单词谈论礼仪。		
3. 使用 enough to。 使用 too ...to。		
4. 使用英语谚语。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！

我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

[1] purpose /ˈpɜːpəs/ *n.* 目的

eg: What was the **purpose** of your journey to New York? 你去纽约的目的是什么？

拓展 同义词：aim *n.* 目的

搭配：on purpose 故意地

【考题在线1】他来访的目的是什么？

What is _____ his visit?

点拨："……的目的"的英文表达为 the purpose of ...。

[2] above all 首先，首要的是

eg: **Above all**, you must be independent.

首要的是，你必须独立。

考向：同义短语 at first，意为"首先"。

【考题在线2】他首先是一位优秀的作家。

He was _____ a good writer.

点拨："首先"的英文表达为above all。

考题在线答案

1. the purpose of 2. above all

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：三步法写一写积极参与的活动

Step 1：活动

Step 2：我们应该做什么

Step 3：结论

易错点提示

（一）短文应包括所提供的信息及要点，可适当发挥；

（二）语句通顺，意思连贯；

（三）文中不可出现真实的人名、地名和校名。

参考词汇和句型

单词	respect; obey
短语	be polite to; traffic rules; zebra crossing; for example; try our best to ...
句型	What should we...; We should ...; We must ...; We mustn't ...

典例

“南充是我家，文明靠大家！”作为中学生，应积极参与文明城市（civilized city）的建设。

请根据以下提示，写一篇120词左右的短文。

（1）尊敬老师，对人礼貌；

（2）帮助他人，友善待人；

（3）遵守交规，过马路走斑马线，不闯红灯；

（4）保护环境，不乱扔垃圾，不乱踏草坪。

范文欣赏

Nanchong is now making its effort to become a civilized city. As students, **what should we do**?

We must respect our teachers and **be polite to** others. We should also help those who are in need and be friendly to the people around us. Besides, we must **obey traffic rules**. When we cross the street, we should walk on the zebra crossing. And we mustn't go across the street when the traffic lights are red. What's more, we should protect our environment. For example, we mustn't step on the grass or climb the trees. Litter mustn't be thrown everywhere.

Nanchong is our hometown. Let's try our best to make it a civilized city.

【点评】

本文应用了“三步法”写一写积极参与的活动。1. 活动（参与“文明城市”的建设）；2. 我们应该做什么（四个提示的内容）；3. 结论（提出倡议）。

添彩点：1. ...what should we do? 以提问的方式承接上下文，过渡自然。2. be polite to, obey traffic rules 等本单元知识的运用体现了作者活学活用的能力。



“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见231页)

单元知识浓缩

British people are polite. They say “hello” or “nice to meet you” and s_____[1] your hand when they meet you for the first time. They greet their relatives or c_____[2] friends with a k_____[3]. They start their c_____[4] with the weather, holidays, music, books or something else. But they a_____[5] subjects like age, weight or money. They always queue. They think it's rude to p_____[6] in. If you're in their way, they won't touch you or push past you. They'll say “e_____[7] me” and be polite enough to wait t_____[8] you move. They say “please” or “thank you” all the time. British people don't like to shout or laugh l_____[9]. So they keep their voice down in p_____[10].

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 Sunshine for all

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠开门见山法(122 页)
写作方法	◇①四步三要素法写一封信(135 页)
解题方法	1句意理解法(119 页)　2结构分析法(128,129,221 页)　3固定短语法(134,221 页) 4词语应用法(221 页)　5固定句型法(221,231 页)　6上下文联系法(222 页) 7推理判断法(222 页)　8逻辑推理法(222 页)　9细节理解法(222 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论世界特殊奥林匹克运动会		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	train *vi & vt.* 接受训练;培训,训练 support *vt.* 支持　meaningful *adj.* 有意义的 blind *adj.* 瞎的　deaf *adj.* 聋的　elderly *adj.* 年老的　homeless *adj.* 无家可归的	provide for 供给,提供 the Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会 some more 再来一些
	Period 2	expect *vt. & vi.* 期待,指望;预料 chance *n.* 机会　similar *adj.* 同样的,类似的 necessary *adj.* 必需的,必要的 training *n.* 培训,训练　task *n.* 任务,工作 coach *n.* 教练　gold *n.* 黄金;金牌 silver *n.* 银;银牌　background *n.* 背景 closely *adv.* 密切地　achieve *vt.* 实现,达到 prize *n.* 奖赏,奖品	give up 放弃　similar to 与……相似 take part 参加　feel like 觉得好像 work with 和……一起工作 hear of 听说 achieve one's dream 实现某人的梦想 come true 实现
	Period 3	blood *n.* 血	make sure 确信 have trouble doing sth. 做某事有麻烦
	Period 4	south-west *n.*, *adj. & adv.* 西南方 north-west *n.*, *adj. & adv.* 西北方 project *n.* 项目,工程;课题	keep in touch 保持联系 learn about 了解 in need 在危急中
	Period 5	introduction *n.* 引言;介绍;引进	lose one's life 失去生命,丧生 give a helping hand 帮助,伸出援助之手 as soon as possible 尽快
句型	①I'm training to be .... 我正在训练成为……。 ②It's meaningful to .... 做……是有意义的。 ③I need some more .... 我还需要一些……。 ④Are there any other ways to ...? 还有其他的方法来……吗? ⑤It is important for people to .... 对人们来说……很重要。 ⑥It was very brave of him to .... 他很勇敢……。		
语法	1. It's + *adj.* + to-infinitive.　2. It's + *adj.* + for ... + to-infinitive. 3. It's + *adj.* + of ... + to-infinitive.		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

— Hobo, what are you doing?
—I'm **training**/treɪnɪŋ/❶ to be a volunteer for the Olympic Games.
—Will you **support**/səˈpɔːt/❷ me, Eddie?
—Sure. It's meaningful/ˈmiːnɪŋfl/ to do something for the Olympics.
—Here you are.
—No, I don't need money. I want you to help me.
—How can I help then?
—I need **some more**❸ food to eat at work.

课文朗读 Comic strip

Trying our best to help

The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about people who need help. They are discussing what they can do for people in need.

Task

Write a letter asking people to help those in need.

Welcome to the unit

People who need help

A **The Class 1, Grade 8 students have found some pictures of people who need help. Write the correct words under them. Then put a tick (√) in the boxes if you have ever helped these people.**

blind/blaɪnd/❹	**deaf**/def/❺	disabled	**elderly**
/ˈeldəli/❻	homeless/ˈhəʊmləs/	poor	

1. a _____person 2. a _____person
3. a _____person 4. an _____person
5. a _____person 6. _____people

B **Amy and Daniel are talking about people who need help. Work in pairs and discuss the people in Part A. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

Amy: What are homeless people, Daniel?
Daniel: Homeless people don't have their **own**❼ places to live.
Amy: How can we help homeless people?
Daniel: We can give them food and clothes.
Amy: Are there any other ways to help them?
Daniel: Yes. We can write to the local government. They can **provide special places for homeless people**❽ to stay.

卡通画

——霍波，你正在干什么？
——我正在训练成为奥运会的一名志愿者。

——埃迪，你将会支持我吗？
——当然。为奥运会做事情是有意义的。

——给你。
——不，我不需要钱。我想要你帮助我。
——那么，我能怎样帮助你呢？
——在工作时我需要吃更多的食物。

尽我们最大的努力来帮忙

八年级一班的学生们正在谈论需要帮助的人。他们正在讨论他们能为需要帮助的人做什么。

任务

写一封信，让人们帮助那些需要帮助的人。

单元导入

需要帮助的人

A 八年级一班的学生们找到了一些需要帮助的人的图片。在它们下面写上正确的单词。然后在你曾经帮助过的人下方的方框中打“√”。

瞎的	聋的	残疾的	年老的	
无家可归的	贫穷的			

1. 一个_____人 2. 一个_____人
3. 一个_____人 4. 一个_____人
5. 一个_____人 6. _____人

B 埃米和丹尼尔正在谈论需要帮助的人。两人一组讨论在 A 部分的人。用下面的对话作为例子。

埃米：丹尼尔，无家可归的人是些什么人？
丹尼尔：无家可归的人没有他们自己居住的地方。
埃米：我们怎样能帮助无家可归的人？
丹尼尔：我们可以给他们食物和衣服。
埃米：有其他帮助他们的方法吗？
丹尼尔：有。我们可以写信给当地政府。他们可以给无家可归的人提供特殊的地方来居住。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶train/treɪn/*vi. & vt.* 接受训练；培训，训练

n. 火车

eg：He was **trained** as a teacher.

他受过师资培训。

考向一：train to do sth. 训练做某事；train for sth. 为某事而（接受）训练；train as …为……（职业）而（接受）训练

考向二：train 还可作名词，意为“火车”，表示“在火车上”用 on the train，表示“乘火车”则用 by train，中间不加冠词。

eg：Do you know when the **train** was invented?

你知道火车是什么时候发明的吗？

【考题在线 1】用所给词的适当形式填空：

The boy's uncle is good at _____ (train) dogs. His dogs can do wonderful tricks. （镇江）

点拨：本题用**语法判定法**解题。短语 be good at 意为“擅长于”，其中的 at 是介词，后接名词或动名词。

拓展 train 的名词形式为 training，意为“培训，训练”。

eg：Did you receive any **training**?

你接受过培训吗？

❷support/sə'pɔːt/*vt.* 支持

eg：He decided not to **support** the new government. 他决定不支持新政府。

考向：support sb. in sth. 在某方面支持某人

eg：I hope you will **support me in** my efforts to discover the truth.

在我努力寻求真相时，我希望你能支持我。

拓展 support 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
动词	支持，支撑	This branch needs to be **supported**. 这条树枝需要支撑一下。
名词	支持；拥护	We cheered to show our **support** for our team. 我们欢呼以表示对我们队的支持。

❸some more 再来一些

eg：Can I have **some more** food?

我可以再来点食物吗？

考向一[难点]：more 可作形容词，意为“更大的，更多的，另外的”，既可修饰可数名词复数，也可修饰不可数名词，且放在名词前面，其前还可用 some，many，much，a few 等及数词修饰。

eg：Would you like **some more** rice?

你还想再要些米饭吗？

Rainy weather may continue for **a few more** days.

多雨的天气可能还要持续几天。

考向二[易错点]：辨析 more 与 another

两者都有“还，再”之意，但在用法上有如下区别。

more	more 位于数词之后，其结构为“数词 + more + 可数名词复数”	I need **three more** minutes to finish the work. = I need **another three** minutes to finish the work. 我还需要三分钟来完成这项工作。
another	another 位于数词之前，其结构为“another + 数词 + 可数名词复数”	

❹blind/blaɪnd/*adj.* 瞎的

eg：Look! A dog is leading a **blind** man across the road.

看！一只狗正在领着一个盲人过马路。

考向：blind 的名词形式为 blindness，意为“失明”。

拓展 英语中部分形容词后可加后缀-ness 构成名词。

eg：kind—kindness；ill—illness

❺deaf/def/*adj.* 聋的

eg：**Deaf** people can't hear. 聋人听不见。

考向：deaf 还有“不愿听的；装聋的”的意思。

eg：He was **deaf** to all advice.

他什么意见都不听。

❻elderly/'eldəli/*adj.* 年老的

考向一：elderly 在句中主要用作定语，一般用于修饰人，且无比较级和最高级。

eg：He is an **elderly** man, about sixty.

他是位约 60 岁的老人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向二:辨析 elder 与 elderly

elder	表示“年龄较大的,年长的”,指相对于某人来说年龄比较大	She is my **elder** daughter. 她是我的大女儿。
elderly	表示“上了年纪的,过了中年的”,是绝对意义上的年纪较大	He's very active for an **elderly** man. 按老年人来说,他非常活跃。

⑦**own**/əʊn/*adj.* 属于自己的

eg:She makes all her **own** clothes.
她自己的衣服都是她做的。

考向:用在所有格之后,强调某事物为某人所有。常用短语:of one's own 自己的;on one's own 独自。

eg:These students have opinions **of their own**.
这些学生有他们自己的见解。
He studied Chinese **on his own**.
他自学了汉语。

【考题在线 2】It's dangerous for you to go out for a walk in the forest _____ at night. (德州)

A. on business B. by the way
C. on your own D. on the top

点拨:本题用句意理解法解题。句意:对于你来说晚上独自出去在森林里散步是危险的。on business 出差;by the way 顺便提一下;on your own 独自;on the top 在顶部,结合句意可知答案。

拓展 own 动词,意为“拥有;占有”。own 的名词形式是 owner,意为“主人”,常用短语 the owner of 意为“……的主人”。

eg:Who **owns** this house?
这房子归谁所有?

⑧[高频] **provide sth. for sb.** 为某人提供某物

知识微课:provide

考向[重点]:provide sth. for sb. = provide sb. with sth. 意为“为某人提供某物”。

eg:The hotel doesn't **provide** guests **with** meals. = The hotel doesn't **provide** meals **for** guests.
这家旅馆不给客人提供膳食。

【考题在线 3】The newly-opened company _____ the local people with more chances to work. (连云港)

A. gives B. provides C. offers D. shows

考题在线答案
1. training 2. C 3. B

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见 231 页)

一、根据句意、首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. He is b_____ in the left eye.
2. I will _____(支持) you to collect money for Project Hope.
3. It's wrong to look down on _____(聋的) people.
4. Our government has p_____ children in poor areas with food for free since 2011. (天水)
5. We should speak politely to the _____(年老的).

二、单项选择

6. Please help me _____ these children, because they will take part in the school basketball match next month.
A. train for B. train as
C. train D. train to
7. —Have you finished your homework yet?
—No, I'll finish it in fifteen _____ minutes. (天水)【导学号:9577700】
A. another B. other C. more D. some
8. It's reported that the Chinese government provides free milk powder (奶粉) _____ children in poor areas. (宿迁)
A. with B. for C. to D. by
9. —Does he need _____ there at once?
—No, he _____ leave so hurriedly because he has enough time. (恩施)
A. to go; doesn't need B. go; needn't
C. to go; needn't
10. —Julia, your mobile phone is ringing.
—Wait a minute. It's dangerous _____ it while crossing the street. (乐山)
A. answering B. answer
C. to answer

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A The Special Olympics World Games

课文朗读A

The 12th Special Olympics World Games were successfully held in Shanghai in 2007. Simon is reading a report on the experience of a volunteer. Here is the report.

Volunteering for the Special Olympics World Games

Liu Ming did not know what to expect/ɪkˈspekt/ ❶ when he volunteered for the Special Olympics World Summer Games in Shanghai, back in October 2007. ❷ Now he thinks it was the most amazing experience of his life. "It's fantastic to work as a volunteer!" he says.

The Special Olympics World Games give children and adults with intellectual disabilities a **chance**/tʃɑːns/ ❸ to show their skills to the world. They include many events **similar**/ˈsɪmələ(r)/ ❹ to those in the Olympics, such as basketball, football and swimming.

Over 40,000 people **gave up** ❺ their spare time for the 2007 Special Olympics World Games. It was necessary/ˈnesəsəri/ for these volunteers to receive training/treɪnɪŋ/ before doing the tasks. Then they provided support for the athletes and helped make the event a great success.

"I was the swimming **coach**/kəʊtʃ/ ❻ for a young boy from North China called Li Hai," says Liu Ming. "He was born with intellectual disabilities. It was very brave of him to join the competition. To Li Hai, the most important thing is not to win a **gold** ❼ or a silver, but to take part. Li Hai tried his best and finished fourth. He feels more confident now because of the Special Olympics World Games."

The Special Olympics World Games also bring people together. Athletes and volunteers from different backgrounds /ˈbækgraʊndz/ **feel like** ❽ part of one big family. "It's great for us to work **closely**/ˈkləʊsli/ ❾ with these special athletes. You get to help them **achieve**/əˈtʃiːv/ ❿ their dreams," says Liu Ming.

B Special Olympics World Games volunteers

B1 Simon is reading about the Special Olympics World Games. Here are the main points of the paragraphs in the report. Where can he find the information? Help him fill in the blanks with the correct numbers of the paragraphs.

Main points	**Paragraph**
1. An introduction to the Special Olympics World Games	_____

阅读

A 世界特殊奥林匹克运动会

第 12 届世界特殊奥林匹克运动会 2007 年在上海成功举行。西蒙正在阅读一篇有关一名志愿者的经历的报告。下面是这篇报告。

为世界特殊奥林匹克运动会自愿服务

当刘明准备为 2007 年 10 月在上海举办的夏季特奥会做志愿者时，他不知道能期待什么。现在他认为这是他一生中最令人惊奇的经历。他说："作为一名志愿者工作是极好的。"

特奥会给有智力缺陷的儿童和成人一个机会来向世界展示他们的才能。它们包括许多类似奥运会上的比赛项目，例如：篮球、足球和游泳。

超过 40 000 人为 2007 年的特奥会放弃了他们的空闲时间。对于这些志愿者来说，在做这些工作前接受培训是必要的。然后他们为运动员提供支持并帮助本届特奥会取得巨大成功。

"我是一个来自中国北方的叫李海的年轻男孩的游泳教练。"刘明说，"他生下来就有智力缺陷。对他来说参加这项比赛是很勇敢的。对于李海来说，最重要的事情不是赢得一块金牌或银牌，而是参与。李海尽了最大努力并得了第四名。由于特奥会，他现在感到更加自信了。"

特奥会也把人们聚在了一起。来自不同背景的运动员和志愿者感觉像一个大家庭的一部分。刘明说："对于我们来说，能近距离和这些特殊运动员共事是很棒的。你有机会帮助他们实现他们的梦想。"

B 特奥会志愿者

B1 西蒙正在阅读有关特奥会的内容。下面是报告中段落的主要内容。他能在哪里找到这些信息？帮助他把正确的段落序号填写在横线上。

主要内容	段落
1. 对特奥会的介绍	_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Liu Ming's experience _____
3. Liu Ming's feelings about the event _____
4. What volunteers do for the event _____

B2 Simon is chatting online with his cousin Annie about volunteering for the Special Olympics World Games. Replace each of the underlined parts with a word or phrase from the report.

Simon: Have you heard of the international sports festival for people with intellectual disabilities?

Annie: Yes, and I know some people offer to help without getting paid for the event. How do they help?

Simon: They give up their time when they're not working or busy to provide help and support. I read about one volunteer. He was the person who provided swimming lessons for a boy called Li Hai.

Annie: Did Li Hai win first prize/praɪz/[th]?

Simon: No. He finished fourth, but he feels more sure he can do better now.

Annie: It's great to help those special athletes make their dreams come true.

Simon: Yes. Maybe that's why this event is so different from other usual games!

B3 Annie learnt about the Special Olympics World Games from Simon and made some notes. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. Liu Ming was a volunteer for the 2007 Special Olympics World Games. _____
2. Liu Ming knew what to expect before he became a volunteer. _____
3. There were only a few events in the 2007 Special Olympics World Games. _____
4. There were over 40,000 volunteers for the 2007 Special Olympics World Games. _____
5. Li Hai was born with intellectual disabilities. _____
6. Li Hai was sure to win the swimming competition. _____

B4 Amy is asking Simon some questions about the Special Olympics World Games. Help Simon answer her questions with the words in the report.

Amy: What are the Special Olympics World Games for?

Simon: They give (1) _____ and (2) _____ with intellectual disabilities a (3) _____ to show their skills to the world.

Amy: Where were the 2007 Special Olympics World Summer Games held?

Simon: They were held in (4) _____.

2. 刘明的经历 _____
3. 刘明对于本届特奥会的感受 _____
4. 志愿者为本届特奥会做了什么 _____

B2 西蒙正在网上和他的表妹安妮聊有关为特奥会自愿服务的内容。用报告中的一个单词或短语代替每个画线的部分。

西蒙：你听说过为有智力缺陷的人举办的国际运动会吗?

安妮：听说过，并且我知道一些人为这个比赛无偿地主动提供帮助。他们怎样帮助呢?

西蒙：当他们不工作或不忙时，他们牺牲他们的时间来提供帮助和支持。我读了有关一位志愿者的内容。他是给一个叫李海的男孩提供游泳课程的人。

安妮：李海获得第一名了吗?

西蒙：没有。他得了第四名，但他现在感觉更加确信他能做得更好了。

安妮：帮助那些特殊的运动员使他们的梦想成真是很棒的。

西蒙：是的。也许那就是这个比赛如此不同于其他普通比赛的原因!

B3 安妮从西蒙那里了解到了有关特奥会的情况并记了一些笔记。如果句子正确写 T，如果错误写 F。

1. 刘明是 2007 年特奥会的一名志愿者。_____
2. 在刘明成为一名志愿者之前他知道要期待什么。_____
3. 在 2007 年特奥会上只有几个比赛项目。_____
4. 有超过 40 000 名志愿者为 2007 年特奥会服务。_____
5. 李海生下来就有智力缺陷。_____
6. 李海确信会在游泳比赛中获胜。_____

B4 埃米正在问西蒙一些有关特奥会的问题。帮西蒙用报告中的单词回答她的问题。

埃米：特奥会是做什么的?

西蒙：它们给有智力缺陷的 (1) _____ 和 (2) _____ 一个向世界展现他们才能的 (3) _____。

埃米：2007 年夏季特奥会在哪里举行的?

西蒙：它们在 (4) _____ 举行的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Amy: What events are included in the Special Olympics World Games?
Simon: They include many events (5) _____ those in the Olympic Games, such as basketball, football and swimming.
Amy: Are there any volunteers for the Special Olympics World Games?
Simon: Yes. They get to help those special (6) _____ realize their dreams.
Amy: Is it interesting to become a volunteer?
Simon: Yes, of course. Being a volunteer for such an (7) _____ is often an amazing (8) _____.

埃米：特奥会包含哪些比赛项目？
西蒙：它们包括许多（5）_____在奥运会上的那些比赛项目，例如：篮球、足球和游泳。
埃米：有一些志愿者为特奥会服务吗？
西蒙：是的。他们有机会帮助那些特殊的（6）_____实现他们的梦想。
埃米：成为一名志愿者有趣吗？
西蒙：是的，当然。成为如此一个（7）_____的志愿者常常是一次令人惊奇的（8）_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] **expect**/ɪkˈspekt/*vt. & vi.* 期待，指望；预料

eg: I know what I **expect**. 我知道我期待什么。

考向一：表示“期待，期望”，通常为及物动词。

eg: We should not **expect** success overnight. 我们不应期望一夜之间就取得成功。

考向二：expect 还可作“预料”讲。

eg: I **expect** to see your brother there. 我预料会在那里见到你的弟弟。

考向三[重点]：expect 后接动词时要用不定式，不用动名词。expect 后可接 that 从句，若从句为否定，主句主语为第一人称，一般要否定前移。

eg: I **don't expect** he can come tonight. 我认为他今晚不会来。

（宿迁中考）Everest is a natural wonder. Many people **expect to** explore it. 珠穆朗玛峰是一个自然奇观，许多人期盼去探索。

【考题在线 1】 She was _____ an e-mail from her friend the whole morning, but it didn't come. （抚顺）
A. explaining　B. expressing
C. experiencing　D. expecting

点拨：本题用辨析法。由下文“但是它（电子邮件）没有来”可知她整个早上在期待一个来自朋友的电子邮件。explaining 解释；expressing 表达；experiencing 经历；expecting 期待。

特色土方法

后接不定式，不接动名词的动词

动词后，不定式，want，hope 和 wish，agree，decide，mean，manage，promise，expect，pretend，要记牢，要记住，掌握它们靠自己。

❷**开门见山法**：本文开头直接交代了时间、地点、人物和事件，为下文的描述做好了铺垫。

❸**chance**/tʃɑːns/*n.* 机会

eg: We are very happy to have the **chance** to take part in the sports meeting. 我们为有机会参加这个运动会而感到很高兴。

考向一：chance 意为“机会”，是可数名词，要表示“做某事的机会”，其后可接“to do sth. 或 of doing sth.”。

eg: It is a good **chance to** study (of studying) English. 这是一个学习英语的好机会。

【考题在线 2】 Joining a summer camp is a great chance _____ free time with your friends. （吉林）
A. spend　B. spending　C. to spend

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。考查非谓语动词用法。句意：加入夏令营是一次很好的与朋友度过休闲时间的机会。根据句意可知，此处使用动词不定式作定语，修饰中心词 chance。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向二：表示“希望，可能性”，可用作可数名词或不可数名词。要表示“做某事的可能性”，通常后接“of + 动名词”或 that 引导的同位语从句。

eg：There is no **chance that** he will change his mind.
他不可能改变主意。

拓展 chance 的常用搭配：
no chance 不可能
by chance 偶然
give sb. a chance
给某人一次机会
have a chance to do sth.
有机会做某事
take a chance 冒险

4 similar /ˈsɪmələ(r)/ *adj.* 同样的，类似的

eg：They have very **similar** interests.
他们的兴趣很相似。

考向[易错点]：搭配：be similar to 和……相似

eg：I **am similar to** her.
我和她相像。

【考题在线 3】Ice fishing, a popular winter sport, is _____（相似的）in many ways to regular fishing.
（扬州）

5 give up 放弃

eg：When you get married, will you **give up** your job?
你结婚了会放弃你的工作吗？

考向：give up 后接名词或动名词；接代词时，代词放中间。

eg：You mustn't **give up** studying foreign languages for even a day.
你们学习外语一天也不要中断。
Don't **give it up** if you like doing it.
如果你喜欢做就别放弃它。

【考题在线 4】Although many great people ever failed, they never _____ and managed to succeed.
A. set out
B. stayed up
C. kept on
D. gave up

学会放弃，也是一种素养

在马达加斯加群岛有一群顽皮的猴子，经常偷吃人们的花生（peanut），这里的人们想了个办法，将花生放到了一个颈口瓶中，当猴子们看到瓶中的花生时，将手伸进去，抓一把花生后才发现这时手已经出不来了，直到人们抓住它们时，它们依旧不想放弃（give up）花生。

这个故事告诉我们，舍得，舍得，有舍才有得。放弃，是一种境界。

【素养行动】反思自己，学会放弃不切实际的目标。

【素养行动结果】学会在该坚持的时候坚持，该放弃的时候放弃，这是人生智慧（wisdom）。

6 coach /kəʊtʃ/ *n.* 教练

eg：My father is a basketball **coach**.
我父亲是位篮球教练。

考向：coach 的其他用法：

词性	含义	示例
名词	有车厢的四轮马车；长途汽车	They took a **coach** to get to the countryside. 他们乘坐长途汽车到了农村。
动词	训练；教导	He **coaches** me to swim. 他教我游泳。

速记小筏

一语巧记：The **coach** is going to take the **coach** to the football field to **coach** us to play football. 那位教练准备坐四轮马车去足球场教我们踢足球。

7 gold /gəʊld/ *n.* 黄金；金牌

eg：Her ring is made of **gold**. 她的戒指是金的。

考向：gold 还可作形容词，意为“金色的”。

eg：The company name is spelled out in **gold** letters.
该公司名字用烫金字母拼成。

拓展 golden 也为形容词，意为“金色的”。

eg：He had **golden** hair. 他长着金发。

8 feel like 觉得好像

eg：But it can **feel like** hard work at times.
可是有时候这会让人觉得很难。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向一[重点]:feel like 的用法:

feel like + 名词,意为"觉得好像……"。	It **feels like** rain soon. 好像马上就要下雨了。
feel like + doing,意为"想做……"。	She really **feels like** having a talk with him about his study at school. 她的确想和他谈一下他在学校的学习情况。
feel like + 从句,意为"觉得好像是……"。	He **feels like that** he has never been to such a place. 他感觉好像从未到过这样一个地方。

考向二[重点]:feel like doing 相当于 want to do 或 would like to do。

eg:I don't **feel like** eating anything now.
= I don't **want to** eat anything now.
= I **would**n't **like to** eat anything now.
我现在什么都不想吃。

【考题在线 5】I feel like going for a walk this afternoon.(改为同义句)
I _____ _____ go for a walk this afternoon. (重庆)

【考题在线 6】I have a bad cold. I don't feel like _____ anything. (泉州)
A. to eat B. eating
C. eat

⑨**closely**/'kləʊsli/*adv.* **密切地**

eg:These two parts are **closely** connected.
这两部分密不可分。

考向:closely 的比较级为 more closely,最高级为 most closely。

⑩**achieve**/ə'tʃi:v/*vt.* **实现,达到**

eg:I like the speech very much and it can cheer me up to **achieve** my dream.
我很喜欢这次的演讲。它能使我振奋起来去实现我的梦想。

考向:achieve 的名词形式为 achievement,意为"实现;完成"。

eg:The **achievement** of one's purpose depends largely upon one's effort.
一个人目标的实现主要靠自己的努力。

【考题在线 7】—Do you know about the scientist Tu Youyou?
—Yes, she won the 2015 Nobel Prize in medicine because of her great _____. (滨州)
A. surprise B. achievement
C. education D. satisfaction

点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查名词的词义辨析。surprise 惊讶;achievement 成就;education 教育;satisfaction 满意。由答语中"她因她的巨大成就而获得了 2015 年诺贝尔医学奖"可知。

⑪**prize**/praɪz/*n.* **奖赏,奖品**

eg:I won first **prize** in the painting competition.
我获得了这次绘画比赛的一等奖。

考向:辨析 prize, award 与 reward

词条	含义及用法	示例
prize	侧重于对各种竞赛中成绩优秀者的奖励,或对于某种行为的嘉奖。	Her beautiful roses won first **prize** at the flower show. 她那些漂亮的玫瑰花在花展上获得了一等奖。
award	常指裁定的结果,如"奖品,奖金"等。	The **award** went to the youngest runner. 那个奖被最年轻的赛跑选手获得。
reward	侧重于对某一行为的回报,即"报酬,赏金"。	We will offer a **reward** of ten thousand dollars for information about the case. 如果有人提供有关案件的情报,我们愿意出一万美元的赏金。

【考题在线 8】Jim has won first _____ in the Reading Competition.
A. pride B. prize
C. price D. award

考题在线答案

1. D 2. C 3. similar
4. D 5. want to 6. B 7. B 8. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见231页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. The spirit of these climbers shows us that we should never give up trying to _____(实现) our dreams. (武汉改编)
2. I hope one day I can take part in one of the game shows, answer all the questions and win a great _____(奖品)!
3. They won the _____(金) medal successfully.
4. It is quite _____ (必要的) to check the paper before you hand it in. (湖州改编)
5. It's said that three foreign football _____(教练) will come to train us next term.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We expect you _____ (come) back soon.
7. If more people give up _____ (drive) cars, the air will get much cleaner. (贵阳)
8. We should try our best _____(finish) the work.
9. I don't feel like _____(walk) very much today.
10. I am glad to work _____(close) with those children.

三、单项选择

11. The New Silk Road will offer a good _____ for more nations to communicate. (安徽)
    A. chance
    B. habit
    C. question
    D. price
12. —A great person once said, "If you can follow your heart and never _____, your dream will come true."
    —I think so. I believe I will enter a good high school this year if I try hard. (十堰)
    A. give away
    B. give back
    C. give out
    D. give up
13. —Can you tell the differences between these two pictures?
    —Differences? Oh, no. They look quite _____. (丽水)
    A. different B. similar
    C. strange D. interesting
14. Leonardo DiCaprio, a famous American actor, was always expecting _____ an Oscar and finally he made it. (广东)
    A. to win
    B. winning
    C. not to win
    D. not winning
15. It is very brave _____ him _____ the Special Olympics World Games.
    A. of; to join in
    B. for; to join
    C. of; to join
    D. for; to join in

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 对运动员来说,最重要的事情不是赢得金牌或者银牌,而是重在参与。 (盐城改编)
    To athletes, the most important thing is not to win a gold or a silver, but to _____ _____.
17. 我的新连衣裙和你的那件相似。
    My new dress _____ _____ _____ the one you have.
18. 幸运的是,他母亲很有耐心,没有放弃帮助他。 (达州)
    Luckily, his mother was very _____ and didn't _____ up helping him.
19. 在做这项工作之前,他们有必要接受培训。
    It is _____ _____ them to _____ _____ before doing the task.
20. 志愿者们的帮助使这次青奥会非常成功。
    The volunteers _____ _____ the YOG _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

A *It is* + adjective + *to*-infinitive

We use "It is + adjective + to-infinitive" to express what we think about something.

It is	adjective	*to*-infinitive
It is	fantastic	to work as a volunteer.
	important	to support the Special Olympics World Games.

Ways to help

Amy is thinking about what she can do to help society. Help her use the words in brackets and those in the box to make sentences.

donate give help keep plant take care of

1. (right/seats/the elderly/to)
2. (good/blind people/cross the road)
3. (helpful/money/to charities)
4. (proper/a lost pet)
5. (important/more trees)
6. (necessary/parks/clean)

B *It is* + adjective + *for* ... + *to*-infinitive

We can use "It is + adjective + for... + to-infinitive" to specify who we are talking about.

TIP

We can use a noun, a proper noun or a pronoun after **for**.

It is	adjective	*for*	someone	*to*-infinitive
It is	important	for	people	to learn good manners.
	difficult		Li Hai	to win the competition.
	possible		her	to work for the charity on Saturday.

Asking about the voluntary work

Simon is a volunteer now. He works for people with intellectual disabilities. Amy is asking him about his work. Complete their conversation with the phrases in the box.

语法

A It is + 形容词 + 带 to 的不定式

我们用"It is + 形容词 + 带 to 的不定式"来表达我们认为某事怎么样。

It is	形容词	带 to 的不定式
It is	极好的	作为一名志愿者工作。
	重要的	支持特奥会。

帮助的方法

埃米正在思考她能做什么来帮助社会。帮她用括号和方框中的词来造句。

捐赠 给予 帮助 保持 种植 照料

1. （正确的/座位/老年人/给）
2. （好的/盲人/穿过马路）
3. （有帮助的/钱/给慈善机构）
4. （合适的/一个丢失的宠物）
5. （重要的/更多的树）
6. （必要的/公园/干净的）

B It is + 形容词 + for... + 带 to 的不定式

我们可以用"It is + 形容词 + for... + 带 to 的不定式"来指定我们正在谈论的对象。

小贴士

我们可以在 for 后加名词，专有名词或代词。

It is	形容词	for	某人	带 to 的不定式
It is	重要的	for	人们	学习好的礼仪。
	困难的		李海	赢得比赛。
	可能的		她	在星期六为慈善机构工作。

问有关志愿工作的信息

西蒙现在是一名志愿者。他为有智力缺陷的人服务。埃米正在问他有关他的工作的信息。用方框中的短语完成他们的对话。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

easy for people
fantastic for me
important for us
impossible for them
necessary for volunteers
wonderful for you

Amy: Why do you want to be a volunteer?

Simon: Because any help would mean a lot. Many organizations provide help for people with intellectual disabilities, but it's (1) _____ to do their work one-to-one without the help of volunteers.

Amy: It's (2) _____ to be a volunteer. Do you need experience?

Simon: No. It's not (3) _____ to have any experience, but it's very (4) _____ to be kind and friendly.

Amy: What are your tasks?

Simon: I'm in the sports group. I chat with them, help them practise and make sure they're safe. I think it's (5) _____ to work with these special people.

Amy: Do you have any trouble talking to people with intellectual disabilities?

Simon: Yes, a little. We need to be more patient. However, it's very (6) _____ to make friends with them.

Work out the rule!

We can use _____ (subject pronouns, object pronouns) after **for**.

C *It is* + adjective + *of* ... + *to*-infinitive

We can use "It is + adjective + of ... + to-infinitive" to express what we think of someone's actions.

TIP

We often use these adjectives in this structure.
brave careless clever good
helpful kind nice polite

It is	adjective	*of*	someone	*to*-infinitive
It is	kind	of	these volunteers	to work in their spare time.
	brave		him	to take part in the competition.

Good or bad?

Mr Wu wants to know what the Class 1, Grade 8 students think about the actions below. Help them organize their thoughts by rearranging the words below to form sentences.

1. careless/the tap/the boy/to/it is/running/leave/of

_____

对人们来说是容易的
对我来说是极好的
对我们来说是重要的
对它们来说是不可能的
对志愿者们来说是有必要的
对你来说是很棒的

埃米：你为什么想成为志愿者？

西蒙：因为任何帮助都很有意义。很多组织为有智力缺陷的人提供帮助，但是没有志愿者的帮助，(1) _____一对一地做它们的工作。

埃米：成为一名志愿者是(2) _____。你需要经验吗？

西蒙：不，有无经验不(3) _____，但善良和友好是很(4) _____。

埃米：你的任务是什么？

西蒙：我在运动员组。我和他们聊天，帮助他们训练，并且确保他们安全。我认为和这些特殊的人工作是(5) _____。

埃米：你和有智力障碍的人员交谈有困难吗？

西蒙：是的，有一点。我们需要有更多的耐心。然而，和他们交朋友是很(6) _____。

总结规则！

我们可以在 for 后使用_____(主格代词，宾格代词)。

C It is + 形容词 + of... + 带 to 的不定式

我们可以用"It is + 形容词 + of... + 带 to 的不定式"来表达我们认为某人的行为怎么样。

小贴士

在这个句型结构中我们经常使用这些形容词：
勇敢的 粗心的 聪明的 好的
有帮助的 善良的 美好的 有礼貌的

It is	形容词	of	某人	带 to 的不定式
It is	善良的	of	这些志愿者们	在他们的空闲时间工作。
	勇敢的		他	参加这个比赛。

好或坏？

吴老师想要知道八年级一班的学生们对下面的行为的看法。帮助他们重新排列下面的词组成句子来组织他们的观点。

1. 粗心的/水龙头/这个男孩/to/it is/流淌的/让……处于/of

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. the girl/it is/bad/of/pick flowers/in the park/to

3. wrong/it is/of/drop/litter/to/people/everywhere

4. of/kind/it is/to/donate **blood**/blʌd/ the young man/to people in need

5. smoke/to/not right/it is/the man/of/in public places

2. 这个女孩/it is/不好的/of/摘花/在公园里/to

3. 错误的/it is/of/丢/垃圾/to/人们/到处

4. of/善良的/it is/to/献血/那个年轻人/给需要的人

5. 吸烟/to/不对的/it is/这个人/of/在公共场所

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

blood/blʌd/*n.* 血

eg: He lost lots of **blood** in the accident.
他在那场事故中流了很多血。

考向: blood 的动词形式为 bleed，意为“流血”。

eg: She's going to **bleed** to death!
她会流血而死的！

【考题在线】 Lots of people donated _____ (血).

考题在线答案

blood

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

考点1: It is + *adj.* + to-infinitive

考向一: It is + 形容词 + 带 to 的不定式，在该句型结构中，It 为形式主语，真正的主语为其后的动词不定式。



eg: **It is useful to** have support teams to bring you food and drinks.
有支援队给你带来食物和饮料是有用的。
It is wise to take a map and a mobile phone.
带地图和手机是明智的。

考向二: 动词不定式结构也可以直接置于句首担当句子主语。

eg: **To train yourself** before the walk is necessary.
在行走前训练自己是必要的。
To clean the parks before National Day is important.
在国庆节前清扫公园是重要的。

【考题在线1】 It's _____ to teach a man to fish than to give him fish. （遵义）
A. better　　B. more　　C. worse

考点2: It is + *adj.* + for... + to-infinitive

考向: It is + 形容词 + for... + 带 to 的不定式，在该句型结构中，动词不定式结构的逻辑主语就是 for 后面的人或物。该句型中形容词用来描述事物的性质，此类形容词有：easy, important, difficult, possible, hard, interesting, funny, useful, strange, expensive, pleasant, simple 等。

eg: **It is important for** us **to** learn English well.
对我们来说把英语学好是重要的。
It is impossible for her **to** finish the work in an hour.
要她一小时内完成这项工作是不可能的。

【考题在线2】 —Was it necessary _____ John _____ some photos before helping the old man?
—I think so. In this way, he could protect himself later. （泰州）
A. of; taking　　B. for; taking
C. of; to take　　D. for; to take

点拨: 本题用结构分析法。It is + *adj.* + of/for sb. + to do sth. 真正主语是后面的动词不定式短语，当中间的形容词表示人的性格、品质时，用 of；而该句中 necessary 是描述事物性质的形容词，应该用 for。

考点3: It is + *adj.* + of... + to-infinitive

考向: It is + 形容词 + of... + 带 to 的不定式，该句型结构中 It 是形式主语，动词不定式是真正的主语。of 后面的 sb. 是不定式的逻辑主语。of 前用表示人的性格、品质或特征的形容词。如：kind, nice, clever, polite, generous, foolish,

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

silly, patient, rude, hard-working 等。

eg: **It is generous of** John **to** donate much money to charities.
约翰真慷慨,捐许多钱给慈善机构。
It is lazy of you not **to** finish your homework on time. 你真懒,不按时完成家庭作业。

【考题在线 3】 It's really _____ him to drive after drinking so much wine. (连云港)
A. crazy of B. gentle of
C. brave for D. wise for

点拨:本题用结构分析法。句意:喝了如此多的白酒之后去开车他真是疯了。根据形容词 crazy 表示人的品质,可知用固定句型 It's + *adj.* + of sb. + to do sth. 。

考题在线答案
1.A 2.D 3.A

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见231页)

一、用 of 或 for 填空

1. It's careless _____ Sandy to make a lot of mistakes.
2. It's unnecessary _____ students to have tests every week.
3. It's clever _____ David to get good marks in tests.
4. It's generous _____ Kitty to give each of us two presents.
5. It's important _____ us to protect the environment.

二、单项选择

6. It is necessary _____ us to help our friends out when they meet difficulties.
A. to B. of C. with D. for
7. —Did you watch the TV show *Super Brain* on Jiangsu TV yesterday?
—Yes. _____ was really clever _____ a student to remember so many faces.
A. It; of B. That; of
C. It; for D. That; for
8. It is _____ for me to follow the Australian guests because I am good at English. (安徽)
A. bad B. easy C. hard D. right
9. It's very nice _____ you _____ my parents your best wishes. (高邮市一模)
A. of; to send B. of; sending
C. for; to send D. for; sending
10. —It's difficult for me _____ the homework in such a short time.
—Come on! I'm sure you can.
A. finished B. to finish
C. will finish D. finishes

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 多吃蔬菜对你的健康有益。
It's _____ _____ your health to eat more vegetables.
12. 在雪天里登山是很危险的。 (荆州)
It _____ _____ _____ _____ a mountain on snowy days.
13. 你在这个时候要放弃是不明智的。
It's not _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ at this moment. (无锡)
14. 他们很难在这么短的时间内想出新的办法。
_____
a new way in such a short time.
15. 对于他来说,在如此短的时间内完成这个任务是不可能的。 (盘锦)
_____
_____
16. 对他们来说,像以前那样经常见到这样的美景不容易了。 (扬州)
_____
17. 和友善的人交朋友对你来说是有必要的。
It's _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ with kind people.
18. 对我们而言保持健康很重要。 (遂宁)
_____
19. 看,看到这些可爱的熊猫,这个男孩多兴奋啊! (黄石改编)
Look, how _____
_____!
20. 打断别人说话多没礼貌啊! (常州)
_____ others!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Working in a mountain area

A1 Peter's cousin Judy is telling him about a volunteer project. Listen carefully. Help Peter answer the following questions by choosing the correct answers.

课文听力A1音频及材料

1. What is Judy?
   a. A college student.
   b. A primary school teacher.
2. Where is she going?
   a. South-west China.
   b. North-west China.
3. Why is she going there?
   a. For a volunteer **project**/ˈprɒdʒekt/.
   b. For a training plan.
4. What will she do there?
   a. Teach in a primary school.
   b. Work in the fields.
5. How long will she stay there?
   a. For one year.
   b. For three months.
6. How can Peter and Judy keep in touch?
   a. By writing emails.
   b. By talking on the phone.

A2 Judy is talking to Peter on the phone about her experience. Listen to their conversation and help Peter complete his notes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

School: a very (1) _____ school in a (2) _____ area only (3) _____ classrooms

Students: live in villages (4) _____
walk for more than (5) _____ to get to school

Judy's life: teaches them Chinese, (6) _____ and Maths
teaches them (7) _____ after class
gives them a lot of (8) _____

What she thinks: meaningful to learn more about (9) _____ of China
helpful to (10) _____ the children there

A3 Peter is writing about Judy and the village school in his diary. Help him complete his diary entry with the information in Parts A1 and A2.

综合技能

A 在一个山区工作

A1 彼得的表姐朱迪正在告诉他关于一个志愿者项目的内容。仔细地听。通过选择正确的答案帮助彼得回答下面的问题。

1. 朱迪是干什么的?
   a. 一位大学生。
   b. 一位小学老师。
2. 她将要去哪里?
   a. 中国西南。
   b. 中国西北。
3. 她为什么去那儿?
   a. 为一个志愿者项目。
   b. 为一个训练计划。
4. 她将在那儿做什么?
   a. 在一所小学教书。
   b. 在田里劳作。
5. 她将在那儿呆多长时间?
   a. 一年。
   b. 三个月。
6. 彼得和朱迪可以怎样保持联系?
   a. 通过写邮件。
   b. 通过打电话。

A2 朱迪正在电话中和彼得谈论有关她的经历。听他们的对话并帮助彼得完成他的笔记。

学校：一个很（1）_____学校在一个（2）_____地区仅（3）_____教室

学生：住在村庄（4）_____
步行（5）_____多去学校

朱迪的生活：教他们汉语、（6）_____和数学
课下教他们（7）_____
给他们许多（8）_____

她怎样想：学到更多关于中国的（9）_____是有意义的
（10）_____那里的孩子是有帮助的

A3 彼得正在他的日记里写有关朱迪和乡村学校的事。帮助他用 A1 和 A2 部分的信息完整他的日记。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

My cousin Judy has taken part in a (1) _____ in her college. She works as a primary school (2) _____ in Northwest China for (3) _____.

The school is very (4) _____. There are only (5) _____ in the school. Most of the students live (6) _____ and they have to walk for more than (7) _____ to get to school.

Judy works hard there. She teaches them Chinese, (8) _____ and Maths. After class, she sometimes teaches them (9) _____. She also gives them (10) _____ to read.

Judy thinks it is meaningful for college students to learn more about (11) _____ of China. It is also helpful of them to (12) _____ the children there. In this way, they can help the local people improve their lives.

B Speak up: How can we help people in our daily lives?

课文朗读B

The Class 1, Grade 8 students are discussing how they can help people in their daily lives. Work in groups and talk about this topic. Use the conversation below as a model.

Daniel: How can we help people in our daily lives?

Peter: We can save our pocket money and donate it to those in need.

Millie: I agree. And it's meaningful to work as volunteers at community centres or in libraries at the weekend.

Simon: We can also give food to homeless people.

Sandy: Yes. And it's good to give our seats on the bus to the elderly.

Study skills

Organizing your ideas

An article is often made up of three parts: introduction, main body and conclusion. However, we can organize our ideas in different ways according to the type of writing.

A. Time order

We use this method when we write about an experience or an event.

Topic: A trip to Nanjing

First, ...

Next, ...

Then ....

Finally, ...

B. Space order

We use this method when we describe a place or an object.

Topic: My bedroom

我的表姐朱迪参加了一个她大学的(1) _____。她作为中国西北一所小学的(2) _____工作(3) _____。

学校很(4) _____。在这所学校只有(5) _____。大部分学生住得(6) _____，并且他们要到学校不得不步行(7) _____多。

朱迪在那里努力工作。她教他们汉语、(8) _____和数学。下课后，她有时教他们(9) _____。她也给他们(10) _____来读。

朱迪认为对于大学生来说学习更多关于中国的(11) _____很有意义。(12) _____那里的孩子对他们来说是有帮助的。这样，他们可以帮助当地人提高他们的生活水平。

B 大声地说：在我们的日常生活中我们可以怎样帮助人们？

八年级一班的学生们正在讨论在他们的日常生活中可以怎样帮助人们。小组合作并谈论这个话题。用下面的对话作为示例。

丹尼尔：在我们日常生活中我们可以怎样帮助人们？

彼得：我们可以存下我们的零用钱，并把它捐给有需要的那些人。

米莉：我同意。周末在社区中心或图书馆作为志愿者工作也是有意义的。

西蒙：我们也可以给无家可归的人食物。

桑迪：是的。在公共汽车上让座给老人也是很好的。

学习技巧

组织你的观点

一篇文章经常由三部分组成：引言、正文和结尾。然而，我们可以根据写作类型用不同的方式来组织我们的观点。

A. 时间顺序

当我们写一次经历或一个事件时，我们用这种方法。

话题：一次南京之旅

首先，……。

接下来，……。

然后，……。

最后，……。

B. 空间顺序

当我们描写一个地方或一个物体时，我们用这种方法。

话题：我的卧室

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The door ....
My bed ....
The computer on my desk ....
The window ....

C. General to specific

When we use this method, we give a general statement first, and then use specific information to support the main idea.
Topic: Travelling
Travelling helps our mind relax.
Travelling helps us keep fit.
Travelling is fun.
We see different people and sights.
We learn about different cultures.

D. Specific to general

We use this method when we want to use some specific examples to lead to our main ideas.
Topic: Environment
The sky is not as blue as before.
The water is not clean any more.
The weather changes often.
We have more bad weather.
Our environment is getting worse.
We need to take action to protect it.

Mr Wu gives the students some topics and asks them to choose a suitable way to organize their ideas. Help them choose the best way for each topic. Write A, B, C or D in the box.

☐1. A day at Hong Kong Disneyland
☐2. Good reading habits are important
☐3. Teenagers' after-school activities
☐4. My dream home
☐5. Changes in my hometown
☐6. It is fantastic to be a volunteer

门……。
我的床……。
我书桌上的电脑……。
窗户……。

C. 从总体到细节

当我们用这个方法时，我们首先给出一个总体的叙述，然后用具体的信息来支撑主要观点。
话题：旅行
旅行是有趣的事。
我们看到不同的人物和风景。
我们了解不同的文化。
旅行帮助我们的头脑放松。
旅行帮助我们保持健康。

D. 从细节到总体

当我们想要用一些具体的例子来导入我们的主要观点时，我们用这个方法。
话题：环境
天空不如以前那样蓝了。
水不再干净了。
天气变化无常。
我们遭遇更多的恶劣天气。
我们的环境正变得更差。
我们需要采取行动来保护它。

吴老师给学生们一些话题，并让他们选择一个合适的方法来组织他们的观点。帮助他们为每一个话题选择最好的方法。在方框里写上A、B、C或D。

☐1. 在香港迪士尼乐园的一天
☐2. 好的读书习惯很重要
☐3. 青少年的课外活动
☐4. 我的梦想之家
☐5. 我家乡的变化
☐6. 成为一名志愿者是极好的

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

project/ˈprɒdʒekt/*n.* 项目，工程；课题
eg: We can't find a good **project**.
我们找不到好的课题。
考向：project 还有“计划，方案”的意思。
eg: They are drawing up a **project**.
他们正在起草一个计划。

【考题在线】I was looking for some photos of the pandas for my _____ (课题).
点拨：“课题”的英文表达为 project。

考题在线答案
project

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Giving a helping hand

A **Peter has read an article about a middle school student in the newspaper. He wants to write a letter to ask for help. He is organizing his ideas first.**

Introduction /ˌɪntrəˈdʌkʃn/❶	Who needs help?
Main body	Information about the person or group in need What kind of help do they need? How can we help?
Conclusion	Thanks for help

B **Peter wrote a letter asking for people's help. Read his letter below.**

课文朗读B

Dear all,

A Grade 9 student at No. 2 Middle School needs our help!

The student's name is Xiao Wei. He has been ill in hospital since last month. The doctor says that he has a serious blood disease. An operation may save him, but it will cost over 300,000 *yuan*.

Xiao Wei's parents are both farmers. They do not have enough money for such an operation. However, it is important for Xiao Wei to have the operation as soon as possible. Otherwise, he may **lose his life**❷.

I am writing to ask for your help. Please donate money. Many hands make light work. If all of us can **give a helping hand**❸, he may get well again soon.

Thanks a lot for your help!

Peter

C **You also want to help people in need. Discuss in pairs who you want to help and what you can do. Use the ideas on the next page to help you.**

- Someone with a serious disease
- Blind and deaf people
- Children without parents
- People in poor areas
- The elderly
- Earthquake survivors

Useful expressions

...need our help.

We must do something to help.

It will cost ... to ....

...do/does not have enough money for ....

任务

伸出援助之手

A 彼得在报纸上读到一篇有关一名中学生的文章。他想要写一封信请求帮忙。首先他正组织他的观点。

引言	谁需要帮助?
正文	关于需要帮助的人或群体的信息 他们需要什么类型的帮助? 我们能怎样帮忙?
结尾	感谢帮助

B 彼得写了一封信请求人们的帮助。读下面他的信。

大家好:

第二中学的一名九年级学生需要我们的帮助!

这名学生名叫肖伟。他自从上个月就生病住院了。医生说他有严重的血液疾病。一次手术也许能挽救他,但这要花费超过300000元。

肖伟的父母都是农民。他们没有足够的钱来做这个手术。然而,对于肖伟来说尽快做这个手术很重要。否则,他可能会失去生命。

我写信请求你们的帮助。请捐钱。众人拾柴火焰高。如果我们所有人都能伸出援助之手,他有可能会很快就好了。

非常感谢你们的帮助!

彼得

C 你们也想要帮助有需要的人。两人一组,讨论你们想要帮助谁以及你们能够做什么。用下页的想法来帮助你们。

- 有严重疾病的人
- 盲人和聋人
- 没有父母的儿童
- 贫困地区的人
- 老年人
- 地震幸存者

有用的表达

……需要我们的帮助。

我们必须做点什么来帮忙。

……没有足够的钱来……。

对于……来说……是重要的/危险的/……。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

It is important/dangerous/...for ...to ....
If all of us can give a helping hand, ...may ....
Thank you for your help/support.

D Write a letter to ask for to help. Use Peter's letter in Part B as a model.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about volunteering for the Special Olympics World Games.		
2. to use the new words to talk about voluntary work.		
3. to use "It is + adjective (+ for .../of ...) + to-infinitive".		
4. to organize ideas according to the type of writing.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

将花费……来……。
如果我们所有人都能伸出援助之手，……可能……。
谢谢你们的帮助/支持。

D 写一封信请求援助。用 B 部分彼得的信作为例子。

自我评价

我已经学习了	细节	结果
1. 关于为特奥会自愿工作。		
2. 使用新单词谈论志愿工作。		
3. 使用"It is +形容词(+ for.../of...) +带 to 的不定式"。		
4. 根据写作的类型组织想法。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1［高频］**introduction** /ˌɪntrəˈdʌkʃn/ *n.* 引言，介绍

eg: There is an **introduction** about Norway in this magazine. 这本杂志里有关于挪威的介绍。

考向：introduction 的动词形式是 introduce，意为"介绍"。固定结构 introduce sb./sth. to sb.，意为"向某人介绍某人/物"。

eg: She **introduced** me **to** her friend.
她把我介绍给她的朋友。

【考题在线 1】Jack looked through the _____ (介绍) about the book before he decided to buy it. (济宁)

2 lose one's life 失去生命，丧生

eg: If we can help her, she will not **lose her life**.
如果我们能帮助她，她就不会失去生命。

拓展 与 lose 相关的短语：lose one's way = get lost 迷路 lose a game 输掉比赛

【考题在线 2】根据所给汉语完成句子，每空一词： (自贡)
数以千计的人在那次灾难中丧生。
_____ of people lost their _____ in the disaster.

点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。thousands of 意为"数以千计的"；lose one's life 意为"失去生命"，此处在 their 后用 life 的复数形式 lives。


方法真题练：固定短语法

3 give a helping hand 帮助，伸出援助之手

eg: If everyone **gives a helping hand**, the world will become better. 如果人人都伸出援助之手，世界将变得更加美好。

考向［重点］：give sb. a hand 帮助某人，相当于 help sb.。

【考题在线 3】Can you help me?（改为同义句）
Can you _____ _____ _____ _____?

点拨：本题用转化法。help sb. 相当于 give sb. a hand。

考题在线答案
1. introduction
2. Thousands; lives
3. give me a hand

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：四步三要素法写一封信

四步：

第一步：介绍自己　第二步：写信的目的

第三步：信的主要内容

第四步：自己的心情、感受或对对方的祝福

三要素：

要素一：称谓　要素二：正文　要素三：落款

易错点提示

1. 注意词数要求；
2. 注意时态是否正确；
3. 注意四步三要素法的运用。

参考词汇和句型

单词	Denmark, host, proud, information
短语	the 2014 Youth Olympic Games, culture corner, build up, improve the friendship, ask for, be grateful for, at the same time …
句型	I'm writing to …, I'm very proud that …, Would you please …?

典例

假如你是阳光中学的学生李明。2014 青奥会在南京举行后，你校正在筹备一个丹麦文化角，以便更多地了解丹麦文化。请你用英文给丹麦的姊妹学校写一封电子邮件，内容必须包括以下几点：

1. 表达你对南京举办青奥会的喜悦心情；
2. 说明创建丹麦文化角的目的：介绍丹麦文化，增进友谊；
3. 请对方提供有关丹麦文化的信息并邀请他们来校交流。

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am Li Ming from Sunshine Secondary School, a YOG demo school of Nanjing. _____

_____

_____

_____

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

范文欣赏

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am Li Ming from Sunshine Secondary School, a YOG demo school of Nanjing. I am writing to **ask for** some information about your culture, as our school is preparing to **build up** a Denmark culture corner to improve the friendship between the two countries.

I am very proud that our city was the host of the 2014 Youth Olympic Games. After that, we want to know more about your culture and your life. **Would you please** send some information to us? We would **be grateful for** your help. **At the same time**, we are really happy to invite you and your students to come to Nanjing. Welcome to Nanjing!

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

【点评】

本文应用了四步三要素法写一封信。第一步：介绍自己（我是阳光中学的学生李明）；第二步：写信的目的（筹备丹麦文化角）；第三步：信的主要内容（介绍丹麦文化，增进友谊）；第四步：自己的心情、感受或对对方的祝福。要素一：称谓；要素二：正文；要素三：落款

添彩点：1. 句型：I am very proud that …；Would you please…?

2. 运用了几个固定短语：ask for；build up；be grateful for，at the same time。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见232页)

单元知识浓缩

The Special Olympics World Games give children and adults with intellectual disabilities a c_____[1] to show their skills to the world. They include many events s_____[2] to those in the Olympics. Over 40,000 people g_____[3] up their spare time for the 2007 Special Olympics World Games. It was n_____[4] for these volunteers to receive t_____[5] before doing the t_____[6]. Then they provided s_____[7] for the athletes and helped make the event a great s_____[8]. The Special Olympics World Games also bring people together. Athletes and volunteers from different b_____[9] feel l_____[10] part of one big family.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 International charities

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠开门见山法(142 页)
写作方法	◇①四步法介绍某人的“过去和现在”(157 页)
解题方法	1辨析法(143,144,222 页) 2题眼法(150 页) 3上下文联系法(223 页) 4语境联想法(223 页) 5推理判断法(223 页) 6语境理解法(223 页) 7细节理解法(223 页) 8交际法(232 页) 9转换法(232 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论国际慈善组织		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	especially *adv.* 特别,尤其　right *n.* 权利 basic *adj.* 基础的,基本的　spread *n.* 扩散 education *n.* 教育	international charities 国际慈善组织 pocket money 零花钱 too...to... 太……而不能……
	Period 2	interviewer *n.* 采访者　blindness *n.* 失明 mostly *adv.* 主要地,大部分地 per cent *n.* 百分之……　treat *vt.* 治疗;处理 medical *adj.* 医学的,医疗的 patient *n.* 病人　afford *vt.* 买得起;能做 proud *adj.* 自豪的,骄傲的 reader *n.* 读者　medicine *n.* 医学;药 develop *vi.* & *vt.* 发展;加强	have eye problems 有眼疾 go to hospital 去看病 be used as...被用作…… on board 在飞机(船、火车)上 carry on 继续开展,继续下去 have enough money for... 有足够的钱…… use sth. to do sth. 用某物做某事 do operations 做手术 be proud to do sth. 为做某事而自豪
	Period 3	hold *vt.* 举行 set *vt.* & *vi.* 创建,建立	hand out 分发 set up 建起,设立
	Period 4	war *n.* 战争　pale *adj.* 苍白的 matter *n.* 事情,问题　check *n.* 检查	have a check 检查 take the medicine 吃药
	Period 5	secretary *n.* 秘书　India *n.* 印度 officer *n.* 官员	make up one's mind 决定 be afraid of 害怕
句型	①...is needed for...……需要……。　②It works for...它为……工作。 ③...is used as... ……被用作……。　④By...,we hope... 通过……,我们希望……。 ⑤I'm proud to... 我很自豪……。		
语法	一般现在时和一般过去时的被动语态		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

课文朗读 Comic strip

—Eddie, more money is needed for charity. You have some pocket money **left**❶. Let's go and donate it.
—Now? **It's time for lunch.**❷
—Don't worry. We can have a big lunch after that.
—Hobo, let me have lunch first. I'm too weak to walk any further.
—Come on, Eddie. We only have five kilometres left.

How charities help people

The Class 1, Grade 8 students want to learn about international charities. They want to find out how these charities help people around the world.

Task

Write a report on the work of an international charity.

Welcome to the unit

Charities around the world

A **Amy has collected some information about international charities. Help her match the logos with the charities. Write the correct names in the blanks.**

ORBIS	Oxfam	UNICEF	WWF

B **Mr Wu is asking the students about international charities. Work in groups and say what you know about charities. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

Mr Wu: Do you know about any international charities, class?
Daniel: Yes. I know about a charity called UNICEF.
Mr Wu: How does UNICEF help people?
Daniel: It helps build a better world for everyone, **especially** /ɪˈspeʃəli/❸ children all over the world.
Millie: It provides **basic**/ˈbeɪsɪk/❹ **education** /ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn/❺ for children in poor **areas**❻.
Sandy: It works for the equal rights/raɪts/ of girls and women too.
Simon: It also works to prevent the **spread**/spred/❼ of some serious diseases, like AIDS, among young people.
Mr Wu: Perfect! You've done a good job.

卡通画

——埃迪，慈善事业需要更多的钱。你有些剩下的零用钱。我们去把它捐了吧。
——现在吗？该是吃午饭的时候了。
——不要担心。做完这件事后我们可以吃顿大餐。
——霍波，让我先吃午饭吧。我太虚弱而不能再走了。
——快点吧，埃迪。我们只剩下五公里了。

慈善机构怎样帮助人们

八年级一班的学生们想要了解国际慈善机构。他们想要弄清楚这些慈善机构是怎样帮助全世界的人们的。

任务

写一篇关于一个国际慈善机构工作的报告。

单元导入

世界各地的慈善机构

A 埃米收集了一些有关国际慈善机构的信息。帮助她把图标和慈善机构搭配起来。在空格上写上正确的名字。

奥比斯	乐施会	联合国儿童基金会	世界自然基金会

B 吴老师正在问同学们关于国际慈善机构的事。小组合作，并说说你知道的关于慈善机构的情况。用下面的对话作为示例。

吴老师：同学们，你们了解一些关于国际慈善机构的情况吗？
丹尼尔：是的。我知道一个叫联合国儿童基金会的慈善机构。
吴老师：联合国儿童基金会怎样帮助人们？
丹尼尔：它帮助每个人，尤其是全世界的儿童建造一个更好的世界。
米莉：它给贫困地区的孩子们提供基础的教育。
桑迪：它也为女孩和妇女们争取平等的权利。
西蒙：它也努力阻止一些严重疾病的扩散，例如艾滋病在年轻人中的扩散。
吴老师：很完美！你们完成得很好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**left**/left/为形容词，意为“剩下的，没用完的”。在句中作后置定语，修饰 pocket money。

eg:—Hurry up! The movie is beginning.
快点！电影要开始了。
—Don't worry. There is still a little time **left**.
不要担心。仍然还剩余一些时间。

考向：left 相当于一个形容词，放在被修饰的名词或 something, nothing, nobody 等不定代词的后面。

eg:There is **nobody left** in the classroom.
教室里没有人了。

❷[高频]**It's time for...**该是……的时候了。

考向一：It's time for... 是固定句式，意为“是……的时间了；到……的时间了”。for 后通常接名词。

eg:**It's time for** class. 该上课了。

考向二[重点]：“It's time to do sth.”表示“到了该做某事的时间了”，有时可以与“It's time for...”相互转换。

eg:**It's time to** have breakfast.
= **It's time for** breakfast.
到吃早饭的时间了。

【考题在线 1】It's time _____ the weather report. Turn on the radio, please.
A. to　　B. in　　C. at　　D. for
点拨：“It's time for + 名词.”为固定句式，意为“到……的时间了。”

❸**especially**/ɪˈspeʃəli/*adv.* 特别，尤其

eg:Jim loves all fruits, **especially** bananas.
吉姆喜欢所有水果，尤其是香蕉。

考向：辨析 especially 与 specially

词条	含义	示例
especially	副词，意为“尤其，特别”，用于列举某个特例，或某事物的特殊性。	Flowers are always welcomed, **especially** in winter. 鲜花总是受欢迎，尤其是在冬天。
specially	副词，意为“专门地，特地”，表示“不是为了别的，而只是为了……”，强调唯一目的。	He came here **specially** to say sorry to her. 他特意来到这里向她道歉。

【考题在线 2】There are many beautiful places to visit in Anhui, _____ Mount Huang in autumn.　（安徽）
A. simply　　B. finally
C. luckily　　D. especially

❹**basic**/ˈbeɪsɪk/ *adj.* 基础的，基本的

eg:Many students ask for advice about improving their English. There are three **basic** questions.
许多学生征求提高英语水平方面的建议。有三个基本问题。

拓展 basic 的名词形式为 base，意为“基础”。

❺**education**/ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn/*n.* 教育

eg:Many children like Li Yinming can't get an **education** because their families are poor.
因为家庭贫困，许多像李银明一样的孩子无法接受教育。

拓展 education 的形容词形式为 educational，意为“教育的；有教育意义的”；动词形式为 educate，意为“教育，培养”。

eg:I have seen the film *Mr. Six* and it's quite an **educational** one.
我看过《老炮儿》这部电影，它是一部很有教育意义的影片。

速记小筏

一语巧记：My mother is an **educational** worker. She puts all her heart into **education**. She knows some good ways to **educate** teenagers.
我妈妈是一位教育工作者。她全身心地投入教育。她知道一些教育青少年的好方法。

【考题在线 3】《伊索寓言》向我们讲述许多有教育意义的故事。　（宿迁）
Aesop's Fables tells us a lot of _____.
点拨：“有教育意义的”的英文为 educational。

❻**area** /ˈeəriə/*n.* 地区，区域；面积

eg: Do you like the **area** where you're living?
你喜欢你居住的地区吗？

考向：area 是可数名词，复数为 areas。常用搭配有：have an area of 面积为……（相当于 be...in size）；in poor areas 在贫困地区

eg:China **has an area of** 9,600,000 square

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

kilometres.
中国有960万平方公里的土地。
We should help people **in poor areas**.
我们应当帮助贫困地区的人。

⑦**spread/spred/*n.*** 扩散;分布;展开
eg: What should we do to stop the **spread** of the news?
我们应该做些什么来阻止消息的扩散?
拓展 spread 还可作动词,意为"传播,扩散"。其过去式和过去分词都为 spread。
eg: The bad news **spread** very quickly.
坏消息很快传开了。

【考题在线4】这则消息似乎比我们原先预想的传播得更快。 (无锡)
The news _____ than we had expected.
点拨:"传播"的英文为 spread。

考题在线答案
1. D 2. D 3. educational stories/tales/fables
4. seemed to spread faster/more quickly

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见232页)

一、根据汉语提示或用所给词的适当形式完成句子

1. In this course, students will receive an instruction to the _____(基础的) drawing.
2. Bad news _____(传播) faster. (日照)
3. Grace will go to a university for further _____ (教育) after she finishes high school. (凉山改编)
4. Many foreigners enjoy Chinese fashion, _____ (especial) the Tang costume. (恩施)
5. There are many international _____(charity) all over the world.

二、单项选择

6. It's best to stay indoors, _____ when PM2.5 reaches dangerous levels. (滨州)
A. exactly
B. possibly
C. especially
D. generally
7. —What should we do to prevent the _____ of disease?
—I think we should keep our hands clean first.
A. spring
B. speech
C. spread
D. bread
8. —It's time to have _____ lunch, Bob.
—Oh, let me finish my work first. Then let's have _____ big lunch.
【导学号:9577700】
A. /; a
B. /; /
C. a; a
D. a; /
9. —Mrs. Black, I'm afraid that I'll fail the exam.
—_____, dear! Take it easy. I'm sure you'll pass it.
A. Sorry to hear that
B. Come on
C. All right
D. Good job
10. We must _____ computer games too much.
A. keep students from playing
B. prevent students from playing
C. stop students from playing
D. all the above

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 只剩一份儿了,我们得分享着看了。 (武威改编)
There's only one copy _____. We'll have to _____.
12. 这个工程需要更多的钱。
More money _____ _____ for the project.
13. 这双鞋太小,我穿不下。
The shoes are _____ _____ for me _____ _____.
14. 联合国儿童基金会给贫困地区的孩子们提供基础教育。
UNICEF _____ _____ _____ _____ children in poor areas.
15. 他为我们争取平等的权利。
He works for the _____ _____ for us.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

Reading

A An interview with an ORBIS doctor

课文朗读A

Amy is interested in the work that ORBIS doctors and nurses do. She found an interview with an ORBIS doctor. Here is the interview.

Interviewer /ˈɪntəvjuːə(r)/❶: **Dr Ma, please tell us something about blindness**/ˈblaɪndnəs/.❷

Dr Ma: About 285 million people around the world are blind or have other eye problems, **mostly**❸ in poor areas, and about 80 **per cent**❹ of these cases can be prevented or cured. However, many people don't have money for **medical**/ˈmedɪkl/❺ treatment.

Interviewer: How does ORBIS help?

Dr Ma: ORBIS uses its Flying Eye Hospital to visit poor areas. On the plane, volunteer doctors do operations. The plane is also used as a training centre.

Interviewer: Why don't you work in a hospital?

Dr Ma: Many of our **patients**/ˈpeɪʃnts/❻ can't **afford** /əˈfɔːd/❼ to go to hospital, so we have to go to them. Also, local doctors and nurses are invited on board to learn about eye operations. We can teach them new skills. By training them, we hope to help more people.

Interviewer: How many operations do you do during a visit?

Dr Ma: During my last visit, 150 patients were **operated**❽ on.

Interviewer: You're doing a really important job.

Dr Ma: Thank you. I'm **proud**/praʊd/❾ to help people see again and improve their lives.

Interviewer: Is there anything else you'd like to say to our readers/ˈriːdə(r)z/?

Dr Ma: Yes. Modern medicine/ˈmedsn; ˈmedɪsn/ is **developing**/dɪˈveləpɪŋ/❿ quickly and now most eye problems and diseases can be **treated**/triːtɪd/⓫ and cured. But more money is needed to **carry on**⓬ with our work. We hope more people will support us.

Interviewer: Thank you very much for your time, Dr Ma.

阅读

A 对奥比斯医生的一次采访

埃米对奥比斯医生和护士们的工作很感兴趣。她找到一篇对一名奥比斯医生的采访。下面是采访的内容。

采访者：马医生，请告诉我们一些有关失明的事情。

马医生：全世界大约有两亿八千五百万看不见或有其他眼疾的人，其中大部分在贫穷地区，并且大约 80% 的这些病例可以被预防或治愈。然而，许多人没有钱接受医学治疗。

采访者：奥比斯怎样帮助他们的？

马医生：奥比斯用它的飞行眼科医院访问贫穷地区。在飞机上志愿者医生们做手术。飞机也被用来作为一个培训中心。

采访者：你们为什么不在医院工作呢？

马医生：我们的许多病人付不起去医院看病的费用，所以我们不得不到他们那儿。同时，当地的医生和护士们被邀请到飞机上学习眼部手术。我们能教他们新的技术。通过培训他们，我们希望能帮助更多的人。

采访者：在一次出诊中您做多少台手术？

马医生：在我的上次出诊中，给 150 位病人做了手术。

采访者：您正在做一份相当重要的工作。

马医生：谢谢。能帮助人们重见光明并改善他们的生活我感到很自豪。

采访者：您还有其他什么想要对我们的读者说吗？

马医生：是的。现代医学正迅速发展，现在大部分的眼部问题和疾病都可以被治疗和治愈。但是我们需要更多的钱来继续我们的工作。我们希望更多的人会支持我们。

采访者：马医生，非常感谢您接受采访。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B What does ORBIS do?

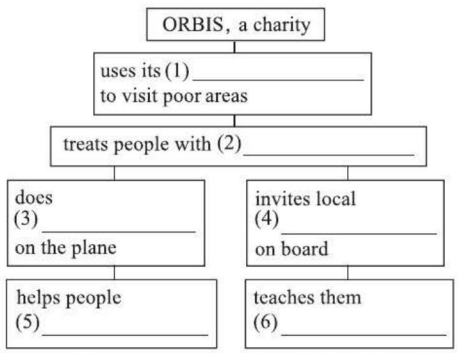
B1 Amy wants to tell Daniel about Dr Ma and what he does, but she does not know the meanings of some words in the interview. Help her match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. blindness (line 1) _____
2. cure (line 5) _____
3. patient (line 12) _____
4. afford (line 12) _____
5. on board (line 14) _____
6. operate (line 17) _____

a. cut a person's body open to take out or repair a part
b. in or on a plane, ship, train, etc.
c. make an illness go away
d. have enough money to pay for something
e. a person who is ill, especially in hospital
f. the condition of being unable to see

B2 Amy wants to show how ORBIS helps people. She is making a chart. Help her fill in the blanks with the words in the box.

doctors and nurses	eye operations	eye problems
Flying Eye Hospital	new skills	see again



B3 Amy made some more notes of the interview. Help her put the sentences together. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. Many more people in poor areas _____
2. Dr Ma thinks that most eye problems and diseases _____
3. Many blind people do not get any treatment _____
4. The ORBIS plane is used as _____
5. One hundred and fifty patients _____
6. More money is needed _____

a. were operated on during Dr Ma's last visit.

B 奥比斯是做什么的?

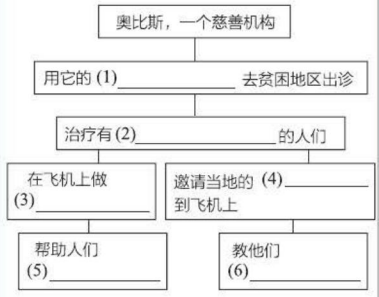
B1 埃米想要告诉丹尼尔有关马医生和他是做什么的情况,但她不知道采访中一些单词的含义。帮助她把左边的单词和右边的意思搭配起来。将正确的字母写在横线上。

1. 失明(第一行) _____
2. 治愈(第五行) _____
3. 病人(第十二行) _____
4. 买得起(第十二行) _____
5. 在飞机(船、火车)上(第十四行) _____
6. 动手术(第十七行) _____

a. 把某人的身体切开拿出或修复一部分
b. 在飞机、船、火车等上
c. 使疾病远离
d. 有足够的钱为某物付款
e. 一个生病的人,尤其在医院里的
f. 看不见的状态

B2 埃米想要呈现奥比斯是怎样帮助人们的。她正在做一个流程图。帮助她用方框中的单词完成空白处。

医生和护士们	眼部手术	眼睛问题
飞行眼科医院	新的技能	重见光明



B3 埃米又做了一些有关访问的记录。帮助她把句子整合在一起,在空格上写上正确的字母。

1. 在贫困地区有更多的人 _____
2. 马医生认为大部分眼部问题和疾病 _____
3. 许多盲人没有得到任何治疗 _____
4. 奥比斯的飞机被用作 _____
5. 150 名病人 _____
6. 更多的钱被需要 _____

a. 在马医生的上次出诊期间做了手术。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

b. a hospital and a training centre.
c. because they have no money to go to hospital.
d. to carry on with the work.
e. have eye problems.
f. can be prevented or cured.

B4 **Amy is writing an article about ORBIS for the school newsletter. Help her complete it with the correct forms of the words in the box.**

afford	board	cure	medicine
patient	proud	support	train

The ORBIS plane travels all around the world and helps people with eye problems in poor areas. Most of the people there cannot (1)_____ to go to hospital, so ORBIS doctors go to them. Operations are done to help people with eye problems see again. The (2)_____ do not have to pay because ORBIS is a charity. Local doctors and nurses are also invited on (3)_____ to learn new skills. By (4)_____ them, ORBIS doctors hope to help more people.

Dr Ma is a doctor on the ORBIS plane. He feels (5)_____ to help people see again. Dr Ma thinks that modern (6)_____ is developing quickly and now most eye problems can be treated and (7)_____, but more money is needed to (8)_____ their work.

b. 一家医院和一个培训中心。
c. 因为他们没有钱去医院。
d. 来继续开展工作。
e. 有眼部问题。
f. 能够被预防或治愈。

B4 埃米正在为学校的简讯专栏写一篇有关奥比斯的文章。帮助她用方框中单词的正确形式完成它。

付得起	飞机(船、火车)	治愈	药物
病人	自豪的	支持	培训

奥比斯飞机环游全世界并帮助贫穷地区有眼部问题的人们。那儿的大部分人不能够(1)_____去医院看病，因此，奥比斯医生去他们那儿，做手术来帮助有眼部问题的人们重见光明。(2)_____不必付钱，因为奥比斯是一个慈善机构。当地的医生和护士们也被邀请到(3)_____上学习新的技术。通过(4)_____他们，奥比斯医生希望能帮助更多的人。

马医生是奥比斯飞机上的一名医生。他感到(5)_____去帮助人们重见光明。马医生认为现代(6)_____正迅速发展，并且现在大多数眼部问题能被治疗和(7)_____，但需要更多的钱来(8)_____他们的工作。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 interviewer/ˈɪntəvjuːə(r)/*n.* **采访者**

eg: There are some **interviewers** in the room.
房间里有一些采访者。

拓展 interviewer 的动词形式为 interview，意为“采访”；interview 也可作名词，意为“采访；会见；面试”。

eg: Bill will be a reporter to **interview** the football players in the coming Tokyo 2020 Olympics.
比尔将作为一名记者采访参加即将到来的2020年东京奥运会的足球队员。
I have an **interview** for a new job tomorrow.
我明天有个新工作的面试。

搭配：have an interview with sb.
= interview with sb. 采访某人

2 开门见山法：对话开始就以“失明”的话题展开，让读者了解了本篇对话的大体内容，接着就“失明”的话题展开下面的对话。

3 mostly/ˈməʊstli/*adv.* **主要地，大部分地**

eg: The students in our class are **mostly** from the poor areas.
我们班的学生大部分来自贫困地区。
The sauce is **mostly** cream.
这沙司主要是奶油。
We're **mostly** out on Sundays.
我们星期天一般不在家。

考向：辨析 mostly 与 most

词条	用法	例句
mostly	意为“主要地，大多数地”，主要用来修饰动词或介词短语等。	The work is **mostly** done. 工作已基本完成。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

most	意为“最”，作副词时，是 much 的最高级形式；常和多音节的形容词或副词连用，构成最高级。还可以用作代词或形容词，表示“最多；大多数”。	He is the **most** hard-working student in our school. 他是我们学校最努力的学生。 The matter is mentioned **most** frequently. 这件事被提及得最频繁。

速记小筏

一语巧记：**Most** of my classmates went to college, and now they **mostly** work in South China. 我的大部分同学都读了大学，目前他们大部分在华南工作。

【考题在线 1】_____ of the people here live on rice, and the people there live _____ on rice, too.

A. Mostly; most　　B. Most; most

C. Most; mostly　　D. Mostly; mostly

点拨：本题用辨析法。most of “……当中的大部分”，mostly 为副词，意为“大部分地”。

4 per cent *n.* 百分之……

eg: Poor families spend about 80 to 90 **per cent** of their income on food.
贫困家庭大约花费收入的 80% 到 90% 购买食物。

考向：“数词 + per cent + of + sth.”结构中谓语动词的单复数由 per cent 后面的 sth. 来决定。

eg: Twenty **per cent** of the students agree with you.
百分之二十的学生赞同你的观点。
Four **per cent** of time has passed.
百分之四的时间已经过去了。

5 medical /ˈmedɪkl/ *adj.* 医学的，医疗的

eg: Peter is ill, and he needs **medical** help.
彼得病了，他需要医疗救助。

拓展 medical 的名词形式为 medicine，意为“医学；药”。

eg: I studied **medicine** at college.
我大学时学的是医学。
He is always taking all kinds of **medicine**.
他总是在吃各种各样的药。

搭配：medical treatment 医疗

【考题在线 2】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：

There is a _____（医学的）college in Nanchong.　（南充）

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。考查形容词用法。句意：在南充有一所医学院。形容词 medical 修饰名词 college。

6 patient /ˈpeɪʃnt/ *n.* 病人

eg: Her job is to look after the **patients** daily.
她的工作是每天照顾病人。

拓展 patient 还可作形容词，意为“有耐心的”。

eg: My father is very **patient**.
我的爸爸很有耐心。

速记小筏

一语巧记：She is very patient to look after those patients. 她很有耐心地照顾那些病人。

【考题在线 3】—The piano lessons are too hard for me. I nearly give up.

—You should be _____. I believe you'll make it.　（深圳）

A. careful　　B. helpful　　C. patient

点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——钢琴课对于我来说太难了。我几乎要放弃了。——你应该有耐心。我相信你会做到。careful 细心的；helpful 有帮助的；patient 耐心的。根据句意可知道选 patient。

7 [高频] afford /əˈfɔːd/ *vt.* 买得起；能做

eg: The family could not **afford** to send her to college.
家里无力送她上大学。

考向[难点]：通常与 can, could, be able to 连用，用于否定句或疑问句中；can't afford to do sth. 意为“承担不起做某事”。

eg: We **couldn't afford to** buy a big house.
我们买不起大房子。
I want to get my car repaired because I **can't afford to** buy a new one.
我想请人把我的车修一下，因为我买不起新的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线4】根据句意及首字母提示，拼写单词：（阜康）

It's too expensive! We can't a_____ to pay such a price.

点拨：本题用**句意理解法**解题。句意：它太贵了！我们不能付如此的价格。表示"不能负担得起"用 can't afford to...。

8 operate /ˈɒpəreɪt/ *vi.* **做手术**

eg: The doctor is **operating** on the little boy's heart now.

医生现在正在给那个小男孩做心脏手术。

拓展 operate 的名词形式为 operation，意为"手术"。

eg: The famous doctor can only do two **operations** a day.

那个著名的医生每天只能做两台手术。

搭配：operate on sb. 给某人动手术；do/perform an operation on sb. 给某人动手术

【考题在线5】Doctor Ma is always careful with the _____ (operate). He often says "A miss is as good as a mile". （淮安改编）

9 proud /praʊd/ *adj.* **骄傲的，自豪的**

eg: She is too **proud** to see her own mistake.

她太骄傲了，看不到她自己的错误。

考向：proud 的用法小结：

词条	含义	示例
be proud to do sth.	因做某事而骄傲	He **is proud to** join the army. 他以参军为荣。
be/feel proud of (doing) sth.	为（做）某事感到骄傲	He **was proud of** having such a generous friend. 他为有这样慷慨的朋友而自豪。
be proud + that 从句	因……而自豪	I **am** very **proud that** I got full marks in the last English exam. 在上次的英语考试中获得了满分，我很自豪。

【考题在线6】Great changes have taken place in Xiangyang. We are all _____ the achievements. （襄阳）

A. known as

B. proud of

C. similar to

D. good with

点拨：本题用**辨析法**。句意：襄阳发生了巨大的变化。我们都以这样的成就而自豪。be known as 以……而闻名；be proud of 以……而自豪；be similar to 与……相似；be good with "善于应付……的"。此处指发生了如此大的变化，人们应该"自豪"。

拓展 proud 的名词形式为 pride，意为"骄傲"。

eg: **Pride** is the main reason of his failure.

骄傲是他失败的主要原因。

take pride in 因……而骄傲

be the pride of...是……的骄傲

【考题在线7】Nowadays China has made great achievements in many fields. We really _____ our amazing China. （山西）

A. take pride in

B. take care of

C. take an interest in

点拨：本题用**辨析法**。句意：如今中国在很多领域都取得了巨大的成就，我们真的为我们伟大的国家而骄傲。take pride in 为……感到自豪；take care of 照顾，照看；take an interest in 对……感兴趣。根据句意，应该表示"为……感到自豪"。

10 develop /dɪˈveləp/ *vi.* & *vt.* **发展；加强**

eg: It's hard to say at this stage how the market will **develop**.

在现阶段，很难说市场将会如何发展。

拓展 develop 的名词形式为 development，意为"发展"；形容词形式为 developing 和 developed：developing 意为"发展中的"，developed 意为"发达的"。

eg: developed countries

发达国家

developing countries

发展中国家

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 8】With the _____ (develop) of modern science, our life is becoming more and more comfortable.
(呼和浩特)

点拨:本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查词汇应用。句意:随着现代科学的发展,我们的生活正变得越来越舒服。前面是 the,后面是 of,故应该用名词形式。

培养"发展自我"的素养

发展才是硬道理,社会是这样,人也是这样。为了自我发展,我们应认识自己,发掘自己的潜能,更新和完善自己,并了解自己的个性(personality),了解社会各种职业的角色期待(expectation),从社会需要与自身实际出发,还要从现在做起。

【素养行动】同学们要了解自己的长处,并发展自己的兴趣爱好,给自己树立目标,并制订计划实施。

【素养行动结果】学会完善自己,学会适应社会,融入集体。

⓫treat /tri:t/ *vt.* 治疗;对待

eg: Cancer is difficult to **treat** at the moment.
日前,癌症很难治疗。
She **treats** me as her closest friend.
她把我当作她最亲密的朋友。

考向:辨析 treat 与 cure

词条	含义	示例
cure	意为"治愈,治好",强调结果。	This medicine will **cure** your stomach-ache. 这种药将会治好你的胃痛。
treat	意为"治疗",强调过程,指对病人进行诊断和治疗,但不含治好的意思。	The dentist is **treating** his teeth. 牙医正在给他治牙。

拓展 treat 的名词形式为 treatment,意为"治疗"。
treat 也可作名词,意为"款待"。

eg: (**苏州中考**)—What did you do to celebrate Halloween last year?
去年庆祝万圣节你做了什么?
—I dressed up as Superman and played "trick or **treat**".
我乔装打扮成超人,玩了"不招待就使坏"的游戏。
I'm sure this **treatment** will help him to be cured.
我确信这种治疗将有助于他痊愈。

⓬carry on 继续开展,坚持

eg: After his death, his children will **carry on** his career.
在他死后,他的孩子们将会继续他的事业。

考向[重点]: carry on with sth. 意为"继续做某事",相当于"carry on doing sth./go on doing sth./continue doing sth."。

eg: Anyway, we should **carry on with** our research.
无论如何,我们应当继续我们的研究。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. medical
3. C
4. afford
5. operations
6. B
7. A
8. development

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见 232 页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. The hospital always offers the best _____ (医学的) service for us. (德阳改编)
2. He once told an _____ (采访者) that he didn't even like rock music.
3. The _____ (病人) in this hospital are looked after well by the nurses.
4. The work is _____ (大部分地) finished, but the rest is difficult for us.
5. These engineers successfully _____ (开发) a new kind of energy-saving car last year. (连云港)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We are very _____ (pride) that a student from our school has won first prize.
7. The old man needs medical _____ (treat) right now. Let's call 120 for him. （南京玄武区二模）
8. Although he was very tired, he still carried on _____ (run) with us.
9. The _____ (operate) was successful and the man is safe now.
10. Dickinson's poems are very popular with _____ (read) even today. （盐城）

三、单项选择

11. Luke's mother will be _____ him if he wins the reading competition. （沈阳）
A. proud of　　B. tired of
C. worried about　　D. strict with

12. One of the best ways for people to keep healthy is to _____ good eating habits. （泰安）
A. grow
B. develop
C. increase
D. find

13. Last week, a lot of people went to the cinema. They were _____ young people.
A. carefully
B. probably
C. hard
D. mostly

14. About _____ the students in our school _____ girls.
A. sixty per cent; is
B. sixty per cent of; are
C. per cent sixty; are
D. sixty per cents of; is

15. —Mrs. Gao often gets mad at her noisy son at home, but she is always _____ her noisy pupils in the music class.
—A good teacher, but not a good mother. （襄阳）
A. angry with
B. patient with
C. worried about
D. similar to

16. Most people can't afford _____ in Australia.
A. to travel
B. travel
C. travelling
D. travelled

17. She operated _____ four patients yesterday.
A. on　　B. for
C. by　　D. with

18. The vet(兽医) _____ that cat, but he wasn't able to _____ it.
A. treated; treat
B. cured; cure
C. treated; cure
D. cured; treated

19. Something is wrong with Tom's right leg, so he can't carry on _____ his race.
A. of　　B. with
C. at　　D. off

20. The computer can be used _____ a tool and people can use it _____ many things.
A. as; to doing
B. for; to do
C. as; to do
D. for; to doing

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

21. 通过培训当地的医生，我们可以帮助更多的人。
We can help more people _____ _____ _____ doctors.

22. 那位老人有足够的钱去医院看病吗？
Does the old man have enough money to _____ _____ _____?

23. 当地医生和护士可以在飞机上学习新的技能。
Local doctors and nurses can learn new skills _____ _____.

24. 奥比斯医生所需要的是足够的钱以继续他们志愿者的工作。 （宿迁）
All ORBIS doctors need is enough money to _____ _____ _____ their voluntary work.

25. 如果百分之九十的工作完成了，我可以休息一下吗？
Can I _____ _____ _____ if 90 per cent of the work _____ _____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

Ⅰ.课文原文及译文

Grammar

Passive voice in the simple present and past tenses

We use the active voice when it is important to know who performs the action.

Volunteer doctors do operations on the plane.

We use the passive voice when

· it is obvious who performs the action.

The plane is used as a training centre.

· we do not know or do not need to know who performs the action.

His eye problem was cured two months ago.

· the action is more important than the person who performs the action.

The lives of the patients with eye problems are improved.

We form the passive voice in the simple present tense like this:

Subject	be	Past participle
I	am	supported.
You/We/They	are	
He/She/It	is	

Subject	be not	Past participle
I	am not	supported.
You/We/They	are not	
He/She/It	is not	

We form the passive voice in the simple past tense like this:

Subject	be	Past participle
I	was	supported.
You/We/They	were	
He/She/It	was	

Subject	be not	Past participle
I	was not	supported.
You/We/They	were not	
He/She/It	was not	

语法

一般现在时和一般过去时的被动语态

当知道谁是动作的执行者重要时，我们使用主动语态。

志愿者医生们在飞机上做手术。

我们使用被动语态当

· 谁是动作的执行者很明显时。

飞机被用来作为一个训练中心。

· 我们不知道或不需要知道谁是动作的执行者时。

他的眼部问题两个月前被治愈了。

· 动作比动作的执行者更重要时。

有眼部问题的病人的生活被改善了。

我们像这样构成一般现在时的被动语态：

主语	是	过去分词
我		被支持。
你(们)/我们/他们		
他/她/它		

主语	不是	过去分词
我		被支持。
你(们)/我们/他们		
他/她/它		

我们像这样构成一般过去时的被动语态：

主语	是	过去分词
我		被支持。
你(们)/我们/他们		
他/她/它		

主语	不是	过去分词
我		被支持。
你(们)/我们/他们		
他/她/它		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We can also introduce who or what performs an action in the passive voice using **by**. We put **by** and the performer after the verb.

On the plane, volunteer doctors do operations.

→ On the plane, operations are done by volunteer doctors.

ORBIS doctors helped many blind people.

→ Many blind people were helped by ORBIS doctors.

在被动语态中我们也可以用 by 引出执行动作的人或物。我们把 by 和执行者放在动词的后面。

在飞机上，志愿者医生做手术。

→在飞机上，手术由志愿者医生做。

奥比斯医生帮助了许多盲人。

→许多盲人受到了奥比斯医生的帮助。

Helping others

帮助他人

A The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about the different things people can do for the poor. Look at the pictures and help them complete their notes using the words in brackets and the passive voice. Add the word by when necessary.

A 八年级一班的学生们正在谈论人们能为穷人做的不同事情。看图片帮助他们用括号中的词和被动语态完成他们的笔记。有必要的话加上单词 by。

What they do every year

他们每年做的事

1. Charity activities _____ (plan/to help the poor).
1. 慈善活动_____（计划/去帮助穷人）。
2. Leaflets _____ (**hand out**[1]/to people in the street/volunteers).
2. 传单_____（分发/给街上的人/志愿者）。
3. Toys and CDs _____ (sell/to raise money).
3. 玩具和光盘_____（卖/来筹钱）。

What they did last week

他们上周做的事

4. New books _____ (send/to children in poor areas/ the Class 1, Grade 8 students).
4. 新书_____（送/给贫困地区的孩子们/八年级一班的学生们）。
5. Warm clothes _____ (collect/for poor people).
5. 暖和的衣服_____（收集/为穷人）。
6. A charity show _____ (**hold**/həʊld/[2]/the Students' Union).
6. 一次慈善演出_____（举行/学生会）。

B Amy and Daniel are talking about charities. Complete their conversation with the words in brackets using the passive voice.

B 埃米和丹尼尔正在谈论慈善机构。用括号中单词的被动语态结构完成他们的对话。

Amy: I'm reading a book about Oxfam.

埃米：我正在读一本关于乐施会的书。

Daniel: Really? Please tell me about it.

丹尼尔：真的吗？请告诉我一些有关它的内容。

Amy: OK. Oxfam (1) _____ (**set/set/ up**[3]) in the UK in 1942, and the first Oxfam shop (2) _____ (open) in 1948. Now it has about 15,000 shops all over the world. A lot of things (3) _____ (sell) in Oxfam shops, including books. The money (4) _____ (use) by Oxfam to help poor people.

埃米：好的。乐施会 1942 年在英国(1)_____(成立)，第一家乐施会商店 1948 年(2)_____（开业）。现在全世界大约有 15 000 家商店。乐施会商店里(3)_____（卖）许多东西，包括书。乐施会(4)_____（用）所得的钱来帮助穷人。

Daniel: That's good. There are also some charity projects in China. One of them (5) _____ (call) Project Hope. It (6) _____ (start) in 1989. With its help, millions of poor children all over the country (7) _____ (give) basic education.

丹尼尔：那太好了。在中国也有一些慈善工程。它们其中一个(5)_____（叫）希望工程。它(6)_____（开始）于 1989 年。在它的帮助下，全国上下数以百万计的贫困儿童(7)_____（给）基本的教育。

Amy: Yes. Many schools (8) _____ (build) in poor areas each year.

埃米：是的。每年在贫穷地区，许多学校(8)_____（建立）。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶hand out 分发;发出

eg: We can **hand out** leaflets to tell people the news.
我们可以分发传单来告诉人们这个消息。

拓展 hand in 上交;give sb. a hand 帮助某人;on the one hand 一方面;on the other hand 另一方面;hands up 举手

【考题在线 1】 The government should _____ the food and clothes to the people in the earthquake area.
A. put out　　B. hand out
C. work out　　D. help out
点拨:本题用句意理解法。句意为:政府应该将食物和衣服分发给震区的人。put out 意为"扑灭";hand out 意为"分发";work out 意为"算出来";help out 意为"帮助……摆脱困境"。

❷hold /həʊld/ *vt.* 举行

eg: The meeting will be **held** next Monday.
会议将在下周一举行。

考向:hold 的过去式为 held,过去分词为 held。

eg: Our school **held** a sports meeting last week.
上周我们学校举办了运动会。

搭配:hold on 不挂电话,坚持
hold one's breath 屏住呼吸
hold a meeting 举行会议

【考题在线 2】 —May I speak to Mr. Smith?
—_____, please. Here he comes. (烟台)
A. Hang out　　B. Pick up
C. Take up　　D. Hold on

❸set up 建起,设立,成立

eg: They **set up** a modern school.
他们创办了一所现代化的学校。

拓展 与 set 相关的短语:set out 出发,开始做某事;set off 出发;set about doing sth. 着手做某事;set an example for sb. 为某人树立榜样

【考题在线 3】 UNICEF was _____ in 1946. It works to help children have a better life. (盐城)
A. set up　　B. put up
C. picked up　　D. turned up
点拨:句意:联合国儿童基金会于 1946 年成立。它帮助儿童过上更加美好的生活。set up 成立,建立;put up 粘贴;pick up 捡起;turn up 出现。

考题在线答案
1. B　2. D　3. A

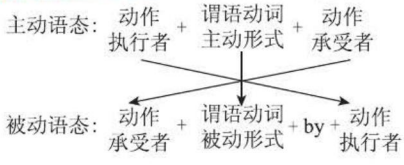
Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

一般现在时和一般过去时的被动语态

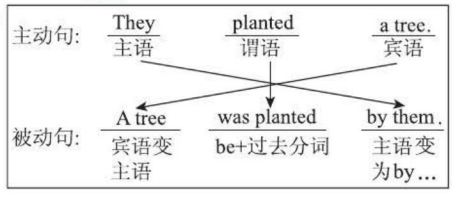
在英语中,句子有两种语态,即主动语态和被动语态。语态说明句子主语和谓语之间的关系。主动语态表示主语是谓语动词动作的执行者。被动语态是动词的一种特殊形式,表示主语是谓语动词动作的承受者。其谓语动词的构成:be + 及物动词的过去分词。be 动词有人称、时态和数的变化。

知识微课:语 法

考点 1:主动语态与被动语态的变化图



eg:



考点 2:一般现在时和一般过去时的被动语态

分类	谓语动词形式	例句
一般现在时态	am/is/are + *vt.* -ed	The job **is liked** by many people. 这份工作被许多人喜欢。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

一般过去时态	was/were + *vt.* -ed	The door **was locked**. 门被锁上了。

【考题在线 1】 Now all Chinese couples _____ to have two children. （临沂）

A. allows　　B. allowed

C. are allowed　　D. were allowed

点拨：本题用题眼法解题。考查被动语态。句意：现在所有中国夫妇_____有两个小孩。由 Now 可排除 B 和 D；结合句意可知是被允许生二胎，故用 be allowed。

考点 3：被动语态的几种特殊情况

考向一：含有双宾语的动词的被动语态

谓语动词带有双宾语时，既可以将间接宾语转化成主语，也可以将直接宾语转化为主语，但应在被保留的间接宾语前加介词 for 或 to。

eg：I gave him a piece of advice.

我给了他一条建议。

→He was given a piece of advice by me.

或 A piece of advice was given **to** him by me.

考向二：含有感官动词及使役动词的被动语态

在主动语态中，不定式作使役动词和感官动词的宾语补足语时要省略 to，但在变为被动语态时，要加上 to。这些动词有：let，make，have，see，hear，watch，feel，notice 等。

eg：I saw her play computer games.

我看到她玩电脑游戏了。

→She was **seen to** play computer games by me.

【考题在线 2】 Though he often made his little sister _____, today he was made _____ by her. （岳阳）

A. cry；to cry

B. cried；crying

C. to cry；cry

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：虽然他经常弄哭他的小妹妹，但今天他被她妹妹弄哭了。主动语态 make sb. do sth. 句型中，用省掉 to 的动词不定式作宾补，但在被动语态中要加上 to。

考向三：含有动词短语的被动语态

含有动词短语的句子变为被动语态时，短语后的介词或副词不可漏掉。

eg：I can take good care of you.

我能够照顾好你。

→You can be taken good care of **by** me.

考向四：英语中，有些动词可以以主动形式表示被动意义。如 need，require，want 等后接动名词时，用动名词的主动形式表示被动意义；drive，sell，paint，wash，wear，open，read，cut 等动词跟 well，easily 等副词连用时，用主动形式表示被动意义。

eg：The flowers **need watering**.

这些花需要浇水。

These books **sell well**.

这些书销售得非常好。

考点 4：无被动语态的几种情况

考向一：there be 句型没有被动语态。

eg：**There are** lots of flowers in the garden.

在花园里有许多花。

考向二：不及物动词或短语没有被动语态，如：rise，happen，succeed，remain，take place，break out 等。

eg：After the fire，nothing **remained**.

那场大火之后，什么也没留下来。

Great changes have **taken place** here since 2016.

自 2016 年以来这里发生了巨大的变化。

考向三：系表结构的句子无被动语态。

eg：He **looks** sad. 他看起来很悲伤。

考向四：主动句中的宾语是反身代词时，不能变被动语态。

eg：He **taught** himself. 他自学的。

特色土方法

被动语态的用法技巧：

谁做的动作不知道，说出谁做的没必要；突出承受者或礼貌，用被动语态错不了。被动不离“be”“*vt.* -ed”，“*vt.* -ed”前面助动“be”。主谓一致莫忘记，句中时态要留意。

考题在线答案

1. C
2. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见232页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. *Nostalgia* was _____ (write) by the famous Chinese poet Yu Guangzhong. (贵阳)
2. Many trees _____ (plant) in my hometown every year. (宿迁)
3. Please say "I'm here." when your name _____ _____ (call). (滨州)
4. The first cartoon film with sound and music _____ (make) in New York in 1928. (青岛)
5. —Have you finished your report on green life?
   —Not yet. I'll make it if I _____ (give) another two days.

二、单项选择

6. —Simon, do you know who invented the kite?
   —Sure! It _____ by Mozi over 2,000 years ago. (南京)
   A. is invented
   B. invented
   C. was invented
   D. will be invented
7. Mr. Green _____ to sing an English song at the party and he sang well. (安徽)
   A. was invited
   B. invited
   C. is invited
   D. invites
8. —Your hometown is beautiful, and the air is really fresh.
   —Yes. Many trees and flowers _____ around here every year. (梧州)
   A. plant
   B. are planted
   C. was planted
   D. will plant
9. —The 19th National Congress of the CPC (中共十九大) _____ in Beijing last year.
   —Our country has been into a new era (时代) since then. (咸宁)
   A. held
   B. was held
   C. has held
   D. had held
10. Too much time _____ on computer games by most teenagers every day. And their parents are worried about their health and study. (十堰)
    A. spends
    B. is spent
    C. has spent
    D. spending

三、将下列句子改为被动语态

11. Though the earthquake destroyed many houses, people didn't lose hope. (上海)
    Though many houses _____ _____ by the earthquake, people didn't lose hope.
12. Mike returned the storybooks to the library on time.
    The storybooks _____ returned to the library on time _____ Mike.
13. His parents didn't catch his words at once.
    His words _____ _____ by his parents at once.
14. Brazil held the 20th FIFA World Cup on June 13, Beijing time.
    The 20th FIFA World Cup _____ _____ by Brazil on June 13, Beijing time.
15. My teacher often tells me to be careful when I cross the street.
    I _____ often _____ _____ _____ careful when I cross the street.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A The work of UNICEF

A1 Daniel has found some information about UNICEF. Read it with him.

UNICEF is part of the United Nations. It was set up in Europe in 1946, after World War Ⅱ. At that time, many children's lives were changed because of the war/wɔː(r)/, and UNICEF wanted to help them.

Now UNICEF works in over 190 countries and areas. It helps governments, communities and families make the world a better place for children.

A2 Daniel is listening to a radio programme about UNICEF. Help him put the sentences in the correct order. Write the numbers 1 – 5 in the boxes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

☐ UNICEF provides basic education for poor children in many countries. It helps them go to school.

☐ UNICEF provides clean water and food. It wants all children to be healthy.

☐ You can help by donating money or working as a volunteer.

☐ UNICEF raises money by selling Christmas cards and organizing other activities.

☐ UNICEF works all over the world.

A3 Mr Wu asked the students to write a report on UNICEF. First, he gave them some questions to help them organize their ideas. Help Daniel answer the questions with the information in Parts A 1 and A 2.

1. When was UNICEF set up? _____
2. Why was UNICEF set up? _____
3. Where does UNICEF work? _____
4. What does UNICEF do to help? _____
5. How does UNICEF raise money? _____

A4 Daniel is writing the report on UNICEF. Complete his report with the information on page 101. Then listen to Daniel and check your answers.

课文听力A4音频及材料

综合技能

A 联合国儿童基金会的工作

A1 丹尼尔找到了一些有关联合国儿童基金会的信息。和他一起读读。

联合国儿童基金会是联合国的一部分，它于1946年二战以后在欧洲成立。在那个时候，由于战争，许多儿童的生活被改变了，联合国儿童基金会想要帮助他们。

现在联合国儿童基金会在190多个国家和地区工作。它帮助政府、社区和家庭以使世界变成一个对孩子们更好的地方。

A2 丹尼尔正在听有关联合国儿童基金会的收音节目。帮助他把句子排成正确的顺序。在方框中写上数字1 – 5。

☐ 联合国儿童基金会为许多国家的贫困儿童提供基础教育。它帮助他们去上学。

☐ 联合国儿童基金会提供干净的水和食物。它想要所有的儿童都健康成长。

☐ 你可以通过捐钱或作为志愿者参加工作来帮助他们。

☐ 联合国儿童基金会通过卖圣诞卡片和组织其他活动来筹钱。

☐ 联合国儿童基金会在世界各地工作。

A3 吴老师让学生们写一篇关于联合国儿童基金会的报告。首先，他给他们一些问题来帮助他们组织思路。帮助丹尼尔用A1和A2部分的信息回答问题。

1. 联合国儿童基金会何时成立的？_____
2. 联合国儿童基金会为什么成立？_____
3. 联合国儿童基金会在哪里工作？_____
4. 联合国儿童基金会做什么来援助？_____
5. 联合国儿童基金会怎样筹集钱？_____

A4 丹尼尔正在写关于联合国儿童基金会的报告。用101页的信息完成他的报告。然后听丹尼尔的报告并检查你的答案。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

UNICEF is part of (1) _____. It was set up in Europe in (2) _____, after (3) _____. At that time, many (4) _____ were changed because of the war, and UNICEF wanted to help them.

Now UNICEF works in over (5) _____. It helps governments, (6) _____ and families make the world (7) _____ for children.

UNICEF wants all children to be (8) _____, so it provides them with (9) _____ and food, and tries to prevent them from getting illnesses. UNICEF also believes that it is important for children to receive (10) _____, so it helps them go to school.

UNICEF raises money by (11) _____ and organizing other activities. People can support it by donating money or working as volunteers.

B Speak up: I've got toothache.

A boy goes to a health centre of UNICEF. He is talking to the doctor. Work in pairs and ask your partner about his or her problem. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Doctor: You look **pale** /peɪl/❶. What's the **matter** /'mætə(r)/❷?

Boy: I don't feel well. I've got toothache. It hurts.

Doctor: How long have you felt like this?

Boy: For about two days.

Doctor: OK. Open your mouth and let me have a **check** /tʃek/❸. ... Well, it's nothing serious. Take this medicine after meals three times a day. You'll be all right in a few days.

Boy: OK. Thanks.

Study skills

Using punctuation marks

Here are some common punctuation marks we use to divide a piece of writing into sentences, phrases, etc.

Punctuation	Usage	Example
Comma (,)	to separate words in a list	You can visit Asia, Africa, Europe, America and more in only eight hours.
	to separate phrases and clauses	You can use a computer for sending and receiving emails, searching for information, drawing or playing games. If you want someone to move, say "excuse me".

联合国儿童基金会是(1)_____的一部分。它于(2)_____年(3)_____后在欧洲成立。当时,由于战争,许多(4)_____被改变了,联合国儿童基金会想要帮助他们。

现在联合国儿童基金会在超过(5)_____工作。它帮助政府、(6)_____和家庭以使世界(7)_____对孩子们。

联合国儿童基金会希望所有的儿童(8)_____,所以为他们提供(9)_____和食品,并试图使他们远离疾病。联合国儿童基金会还认为,让孩子们受到(10)_____是重要的,所以它帮助他们上学。

联合国儿童基金会通过(11)_____和组织其他活动筹集资金。人们可以通过捐款或作为志愿者工作来支持它。

B 大声地说:我牙痛。

一个男孩去联合国儿童基金会的健康中心。他正在和医生交谈。两人一组,问你的同伴有关他或她的问题。用下面的对话作为示例。

医生:你看起来脸色苍白。怎么了?

男孩:我感觉不舒服。我得了牙痛病,牙疼。

医生:你感觉这样多长时间了?

男孩:大约两天了。

医生:好的,张开你的嘴巴,让我检查一下。……唔,没什么严重的。一日三次饭后吃这药。几天后你就会好的。

男孩:好的,谢谢。

学习技巧

使用标点符号

这里有一些我们用来把一篇文章分成句子、短语等常用的标点符号。

标点	用途	例子
逗号(,)	用来划分一系列的单词	你可以只在八小时内游览亚洲、非洲、欧洲、美洲和更多的地方。
	用来划分短语和分句	你可以用电脑来发送和接收邮件、搜索信息、画画或玩游戏。 如果你想要某人移开,说"劳驾一下"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Full stop(.)	at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation	The 12th Special Olympics World Games were held in Shanghai in 2007.
Question mark(?)	at the end of a direct question	How does UNICEF help?
Exclamation mark(!)	to express surprise, joy, anger, shock or other strong feelings	He was the same size as my little finger!
Quotation marks(“ ”)	to enclose words and punctuation marks in direct speech	“I'm proud to help people see again,” says Dr Ma.

句号(。)	用在一个不是问句或感叹句的句子后面	第12届特奥会于2007年在上海举行。
问号(?)	用在一个直接问题的后面	联合国儿童基金会怎样提供援助?
感叹号(!)	用来表达惊奇、快乐、生气、震惊或其他强烈的感情	他和我的小手指一般大!
引号(“ ”)	用来围起直接引语中的单词和标点符号	马医生说：“能帮助人们重见光明我感到自豪。”

A charity show

Millie has written about her experience as a host of a charity show. Help her add the correct punctuation marks.

Document

The big day came very quickly and suddenly it was the night before the charity show I could not sleep at all that night because I was so excited Will it be a success I kept asking myself

Twenty minutes before the big event the doors opened and many people came into the theatre No time to be nervous any more This is it I told myself A lot of people came to watch the show They were making a lot of noise so I had to speak loudly

一次慈善演出

米莉写了关于她做慈善演出主持人的经历。帮助她加上正确的标点符号。

文件

盛大的一天来得很快突然就到了慈善演出的前一天晚上我根本睡不着因为我太兴奋了我不停地问自己演出会成功吗

在这个大事件开始前20分钟门打开了许多人走进剧场再也没有时间紧张了就这样吧我告诉我自己许多人来看这场表演他们正制造许多噪音因此我不得不大声地讲话

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶pale /peɪl/ *adj.* **苍白的**

eg: She looks **pale.** 她面色苍白。

考向: pale 还有“淡的；暗淡的”的意思。

eg: She wore a **pale** blue dress.
她穿了一件淡蓝色的连衣裙。

【考题在线1】 He looked _____ (苍白的) and his clothes were in a frightful state.

❷matter /'mætə(r)/ *n.* **事情，问题**

eg: What's the **matter** with Frank today?
弗兰克今天怎么了?

拓展 matter 还可作动词，意为“重要；要紧；有关系”。

eg: It doesn't **matter** that you came late.
你来晚了，这没什么要紧的。

【考题在线2】 你的电脑出了什么问题? (matter)

_____

【考题在线3】 —I'm sorry I broke the glass.
—_____. Be careful next time, please.

A. You are a careless man
B. How can you be so careless
C. I'm afraid not
D. It doesn't matter

❸check /tʃek/ *n.* **检查**

eg: He made a **check** on his paper.
他检查了一遍他的试卷。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向：check 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
动词	检查，核对	Before taking off, the pilot **checked** both engines carefully. 在起飞前，飞行员仔细检查了两个发动机。
名词	支票	His father gave him a **check** for fifty dollars. 他的父亲给了他一张 50 美元的支票。

【考题在线 4】I will meet Jane at the station. Please _____ what time she will arrive.

A. count　　B. choose

C. check　　D. catch

考题在线答案

1. pale
2. What's the matter with your computer?
3. D
4. C

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

Charity work

A **Amy wants to write about the work of an ORBIS nurse called Diana for her class presentation. She found these pictures of Diana.**

1. Diana was a **secretary**[1] of a company.
2. She was afraid of flying.
3. She learnt about ORBIS.
4. She trained as a nurse.
5. She works for ORBIS.
6. She enjoys her work.

B **Amy wrote a report on Diana and her charity work. Read Amy's report below.**

课文朗读B

Diana was once a secretary of a big company. She lived in a comfortable flat and drove to work. She travelled to many places, but she seldom took the plane. She was afraid of flying.

One day, Diana saw a TV programme about ORBIS. She learnt about the Flying Eye Hospital. She wanted to help poor people with eye problems see again, so she **made up her mind**[2] to train as a nurse and attended courses after work.

Diana is working for ORBIS now. She has to travel over 300 days a year. She is getting used to travelling by plane.

Diana enjoys her work. She is glad to be able to help people see again. She does not have as much money as before, but she thinks her life is more meaningful.

C **You want to write a report on the work of UNICEF. Search for information on the Internet. You can also use the information below. Use Amy's report as a model.**

任务

慈善工作

A 埃米想要写一份班级展示，它是关于一个名叫戴安娜的奥比斯护士的工作情况的展示。她找到了戴安娜的这些图片。

1. 戴安娜是一家公司的秘书。
2. 她害怕飞行。
3. 她了解到有关奥比斯的情况。
4. 她接受了护士工作培训。
5. 她为奥比斯工作。
6. 她喜欢她的工作。

B 埃米写了一篇关于戴安娜和她的慈善工作的报告。读下面埃米的报告。

戴安娜曾经是一家大公司的秘书。她住在一个舒适的公寓里，开车去上班。她到许多地方旅游，但她很少乘飞机。她害怕飞行。

一天，戴安娜看了一个关于奥比斯的电视节目。她了解到了飞行眼科医院。她想要帮助有眼部问题的穷人重见光明，因此，她决定接受护士工作的培训并在下班后去上课。

现在，戴安娜正在为奥比斯工作。她一年不得不旅行 300 多天。她越来越习惯于乘飞机旅行。

戴安娜喜欢她的工作。她很快乐能帮助人们重见光明。她不像以前那样有钱了，但她认为她的生活更有意义了。

C 你想要写一篇关于联合国儿童基金会工作的报告。在网上搜集信息。你也可以用下面的信息。用埃米的报告作为示例。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Name: Mandeep
Country: India/ˈɪndiə/
Family: many children, poor
In the past: used to work on the farm all day, could not read or write
One day: a UNICEF officer/ˈɒfɪsə(r)/ came and learnt about the conditions of the local people
Now: entered a school, can read and write
Future: hopes to become a teacher

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about ORBIS.		
2. to use the new words to talk about charity work.		
3. the passive voice in the simple present and past tenses.		
4. to use the correct punctuation marks.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

姓名：曼迪普
国家：印度
家庭：许多小孩，贫穷
在过去：过去整天在农场工作，不能够读书或写字
一天：一位联合国儿童基金会的官员来了并了解到了当地人们的状况
现在：进入学校，能读书、写字
未来：希望成为一名老师

自我评价

我已经学了	细节	结果
1. 关于奥比斯的情况。		
2. 使用新单词谈论慈善工作。		
3. 一般现在时和一般过去时的被动语态。		
4. 正确地使用标点符号。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 secretary/ˈsekrətri/ *n.* 秘书

eg: John is the **secretary** of our club.
约翰是我们俱乐部的秘书。

考向: secretary 为可数名词，其复数形式为 secretaries。

【考题在线 1】 She wants to be a _____ (秘书) when she grows up.

速记小筏

职业类词汇小结: engineer 工程师; teacher 教师; worker 工人; driver 司机; doctor 医生; nurse 护士; policeman 警察; clerk 职员; reporter 记者; waiter 服务员; singer 歌手; actor 演员; officer 官员

2 make up one's mind 决定

eg: He has **made up his mind** to go there alone.
他已决定独自一个人去那儿。

考向: make up one's mind to do sth. 决定做某事，相当于 decide to do sth. 或 make a decision to do sth.。

【考题在线 2】 My cousin decided to take a DIY course. (同义句转换)
My cousin _____ _____ _____ _____ to take a DIY course.
My cousin _____ _____ _____ to take a DIY course.

考题在线答案
1. secretary
2. made up his mind; made a decision

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：四步法介绍某人的“过去和现在”

步骤一：过去的生活
步骤二：因为什么改变了生活
步骤三：现在的生活
步骤四：感受

Someone	past
	why changed
	present
	feelings

易错点提示

1. 注意时态：过去要用一般过去时，而现状要用一般现在时写作；
2. 注意要点提示；
3. 不能逐字逐句翻译，要恰当地添加一些有关的内容。

参考词汇和句型

单词	worker, place, fly, volunteer, problem, meaningful
短语	have been to, be afraid of, learn about, make up one's mind, be used to
句型	She wanted to be..., ... is working for...She is used to..., She thinks...

典例

根据提示，写一篇关于刘琳的过去和现在的短文。80词左右。

提示：
①刘琳过去是办公室的一名工作人员。
②她害怕飞行。
③一天，她在电视上了解了奥比斯……
④现在，……
⑤感受。

范文欣赏

Liu Lin was an office worker. She **has been to** many places, but she seldom took the plane. She **was afraid of** flying.

One day, she **learnt about** ORBIS on TV. She wanted to be a volunteer to help poor people with eye problems, so she **made up her mind** to train as a nurse.

Now, Liu Lin is working for ORBIS. She **is used to travelling** by plane.

Liu Lin enjoys her work. She thinks her life is more meaningful than before.

【点评】本文应用了“四步法”介绍某人的“过去和现在”。步骤一：过去的生活（刘琳过去是办公室的一名工作人员，害怕飞行）；步骤二：因为什么改变了生活（电视上了解了奥比斯）；步骤三：现在的生活（为奥比斯工作，习惯坐飞机）；步骤四：感受（享受工作）。

添彩点：运用了多个固定短语：make up one's mind；have/has been to；be afraid of；learn about；be used to doing sth.。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见232页)

单元知识浓缩

Amy told me something about ORBIS today.

ORBIS is a charity that works for b_____[1] people. About 80 per cent of these cases can be p_____[2] or cured. However, many people don't have enough money for m_____[3] treatment. ORBIS uses its Flying Eye Hospital to visit poor areas. On the plane, volunteer doctors do o_____[4]. Dr Ma, a doctor working on the plane, o_____[5] on 150 p_____[6] during his last visit.

The plane is also used as a t_____[7] centre. Many of the patients can't a_____[8] to go to hospital, so ORBIS doctors have to go to them. Also, local doctors and nurses are invited on b_____[9] to learn new skills. By training them, ORBIS doctors hope to help more people.

ORBIS needs enough money to c_____[10] on with its work. We hope more people will support it.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 A green world

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠连词观察法(161 页)　⚠开门见山法(165 页)
写作方法	①三步法介绍如何保护环境(180 页)
解题方法	1句意理解法(160,168,224 页)　2辨析法(161,168,224 页) 3语境联想法(165,233 页)　4固定句型法(166 页) 5语法判定法(172,173,224 页)　6结构分析法(173 页) 7固定短语法(176,177,224 页)　8上下文联系法(225 页) 9推理判断法(225 页)　10主旨大意法(225 页) 11逻辑推理法(225 页)　12题眼法(233 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	谈论绿色生活		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1	dig *vi.* & *vt.* 挖(洞,沟等) serious *adj.* 认真的,严肃的 wise *adj.* 明智的,充满智慧的	turn off 关上(开关) be good for... 对……有好处 drive sb.to ... 开车送某人去……
	Period 2	separate *vi.* & *vt.* 分开,隔开 allow *vt.* 允许　punish *vt.* 处罚,惩罚 fine *vt.* 罚款　depend *vi.* 依靠,依赖,指望 rich *adj.* 富有的;丰富的 wisely *adv.* 明智地,充满智慧地 produce *vt.* 导致,产生 difference *n.* 差异,不同(之处)	allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事 depend on/upon 依靠;取决于 run out 用完,耗尽 make a difference 有影响,起作用 be separated into 被分成 so that 以便;为了
	Period 3	pollute *vt.* 污染 living *adj.* 活着的,活的	be invited to 被邀请到 think about 考虑 as well as 也,除……之外
	Period 4	survey *n.* 调查　empty *adj.* 空的 harmful *adj.* 有害的　coal *n.* 煤 oil *n.* 石油;原油;食用油　form *vt.* & *vi.* 形成 carelessly *adv.* 满不在乎地;粗心地	in place 在正确的位置 be harmful to...对……有害 try one's best 尽某人最大努力
	Period 5	simple *adj.* 简单的　step *n.* 步骤;措施	if possible 如果可能
句型	①We can save water by .... 我们可以通过……来节约水。 ②What should we do to ...? 我们应该做什么来……呢? ③It's wise for people to .... 人们……是明智的。 ④It is a country with .... 它是一个具有……的国家。 ⑤...we are not allowed to .... ……我们不被允许做……。 ⑥If we ..., we will be .... 如果我们……,我们将会被……。		
语法	一般将来时的被动语态		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

—What are you going to do, Hobo?
—Plant trees.
—Will more trees be planted this year?
—Yes. Trees **are good for**[1] us.
—OK. I'll go with you. I like **digging**/ˈdɪgɪŋ/[2] in the garden.
—Are you **serious**/ˈsɪəriəs/[3]?
—Sure. I'll plant breadfruit trees. Breadfruit ... Yummy!

课文朗读 Comic strip

Caring about the Earth

World Environment Day is coming. The Class 1, Grade 8 students are busy discussing the Earth's problems and preparing a presentation.

Task

Give a presentation on how to go green.

Welcome to the unit

A green life

A **The Class 1, Grade 8 students are talking about ways to live a green life. Look at the pictures below and match them with the correct sentences.**

a. We can reduce air pollution by riding bicycles.
b. We can save water by taking shorter showers.
c. We can save energy by **turning off**[4] the lights when we leave a room.
d. We can protect the environment by recycling waste.

B **Mr Wu is asking the students how to live a green life. Work in groups and discuss what you can do. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

Mr Wu: What should we do to live a green life, class?
Kitty: **My dad used to drive me to**[5] **school, but now we take the underground.**[6] More and more families own cars and this **causes**[7] serious air pollution.
Millie: I agree. It's **wise**/waɪz/[8] for people to choose public transport or ride bicycles.
Daniel: I think we can take shorter showers to save water.
Sandy: Yes. And we should remember to turn off the lights when we leave a room.

卡通画

——霍波，你将要干什么？
——植树。
——今年将要种植更多的树吗？
——是的，树对我们有好处。
——好吧。我将和你一起去。我喜欢在花园里挖土。
——你是认真的吗？
——当然。我将种植面包果树。面包果……好吃！

关爱地球

世界环境日就要来了。八年级一班的学生正在忙于讨论地球的问题并准备进行陈述。

任务

进行一次关于怎样变得环保的陈述。

单元导入

绿色生活

A 八年级一班的学生们正在谈论过绿色生活的方法。看下面的图片并把它们和正确的句子搭配起来。

a. 我们可以通过骑自行车减少空气污染。
b. 我们可以通过缩短淋浴的时间来节约水。
c. 我们可以通过离开房间时关灯来节约能源。
d. 我们可以通过回收利用垃圾来保护环境。

B 吴老师正在询问学生们怎样过绿色生活。小组合作，讨论你们能做什么。用下面的对话作为示例。

吴老师：同学们，我们应当做什么来过绿色生活呢？
基蒂：我的爸爸过去常常开车送我去上学，但现在我们乘地铁。越来越多的家庭有自己的汽车，这导致了严重的空气污染。
米莉：我同意。对于人们来说选择公共交通工具或骑自行车是明智的。
丹尼尔：我认为我们可以通过缩短淋浴时间来节约水。
桑迪：是的。而且当我们离开房间时，我们应该记着关掉灯。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

课文讲解

❶[高频] be good for 对……有益

eg: Swimming **is good for** your health.
游泳对你的健康有好处。

考向一[重点]: be good for 的反义短语为 be bad for，意为“对……有坏处”。

eg: Reading in bed **is bad for** your eyes.
在床上看书对你的眼睛有害。

【考题在线1】根据汉语提示完成句子 （扬州）
多吃水果对我们的健康有益。
_____

考向二: 辨析 be good for, be good at 与 be good with

be good for	意为“对……有益”	Doing morning exercises **is good for** you. 做早操对你有益处。
be good at	意为“擅长”	**I'm good at** playing basketball. 我擅长打篮球。
be good with	意为“和……相处得好”	**Are** you **good with** children? 你和孩子们相处得好吗？

【考题在线2】—I think drinking milk every morning is good _____ our health.
—Yes. I agree _____ you. （咸宁）
A. to; to　　B. with; to
C. at; with　　D. for; with
点拨: 本题用句意理解法。be good for 意为“对……有好处”，agree with 表示“同意”。句意:——我认为每天早晨喝牛奶对我们的健康有好处。——是的。我同意你的说法。

❷dig /dɪg/ *vi & vt.* 挖（洞，沟等）

eg: It's difficult to **dig** the ground when it's frozen.
地面冻住了就不易挖掘。

考向: dig 的过去式为 dug，过去分词为 dug，现在分词为 digging。

❸serious /ˈsɪəriəs/ *adj.* 认真的，严肃的

eg: He is always very **serious.**
他总是很严肃。

考向一[重点]: be serious about sb./sth.
对某人/某事当真
be serious about doing sth.
对做某事当真

eg: Peter **is serious about** Jenny. He wants to get married to her.
彼得对詹妮是认真的。他想和她结婚。
He's **serious about** selling his house.
他真想把房子卖掉。

拓展 serious 还有“严重的”的意思。

eg: The storm caused **serious** damage to the house.
风暴对房子造成了严重的损坏。

考向二: serious 的比较级为 more serious，最高级为 most serious。其副词形式为 seriously。常用短语: take sb./sth. seriously 认真对待某人/事物。

eg: We should take our study **seriously.**
我们应该认真对待学习。

【考题在线3】The boss is so _____ that no one dares to play jokes on him. （日照）
A. friendly　　B. careful
C. popular　　D. serious

速记小筏
一语巧记: He is a **serious** man and he takes everything **seriously.**
他是一个严肃的人。他认真对待每件事。

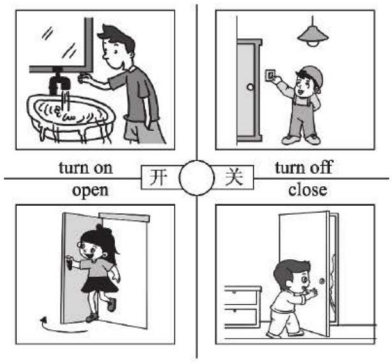
❹turn off 关上（开关）

eg: **Turn off** the lights when you leave.
你离开时把灯关掉。

考向: 辨析 turn on/off 与 open/close

turn on/off	其宾语是收音机、电视机、灯、水龙头等。
open/close	其宾语是门、窗户、盒子等。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



拓展 与 turn 相关的短语：turn on 打开
turn up 调高
turn down 调低
turn right 向右转
turn...into 使变成

【考题在线 4】Please _____ the lights when you go out. （六盘水）
A. turn down　　B. turn up
C. turn on　　D. turn off
点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：当你出去的时候，请关闭灯。turn down 开小（音量、电源等）；turn up 开大（音量、电源等）；turn on 打开（电源等）；turn off 关闭（电源等）。根据常识，出去应该关灯。

5 drive sb. to 开车送某人去
eg：My father usually **drives me to** school.
我爸爸通常开车送我去上学。
考向：drive to 开车去，相当于 go to ...by car。

6 连词观察法：本句是由 but 连接的一个并列句，but 表转折。我们在写作过程中常用一些并列连词，可使行文更加流畅。

【考题在线 5】Peter spent half a day fishing by the river, _____ he didn't catch anything. （上海）
A. so　　B. or
C. for　　D. but
点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：彼得花了半天的时间在河边钓鱼，但他什么也没钓到。so 因此；or 或者；否则；for 因为；but 但是。分析句意知，前后两个分句是转折关系，应该用 but。

7 cause /kɔːz/ *vt.* 导致；造成
eg：Did you know that some food might **cause** cancer?
你知道一些食物可能导致癌症吗？
考向：cause 用作动词时，构成的常用短语有：
cause trouble 惹麻烦
cause accidents 引发事故
cause sb./sth. to do sth. 导致某人或某物做某事
eg：Tom often **causes trouble** for his mother.
汤姆经常给他妈妈惹麻烦。
拓展 cause 还可作名词，意为“原因，起因”。
eg：Snow on the road was the **cause** of the accident.
路上的雪是那起事故的起因。

【考题在线 6】Every year driving after drinking wine _____ a lot of traffic accidents.
A. happens　　B. provides
C. causes　　D. refuses
点拨：happen 意为“发生”；provide 意为“提供”；cause 意为“引起”；refuse 意为“拒绝”。前面是原因，后面是结果。句意：每年酒后驾车引起大量交通事故。

8 wise /waɪz/ *adj.* 明智的，充满智慧的
eg：（河南中考）A stupid man tells a woman to shut up, while a **wise** man tells her that her mouth is quite beautiful when it is closed.
傻子会叫女人闭嘴，而智者会告诉她当她的嘴闭上的时候，她的嘴巴很美。
拓展 wise 的比较级为 wiser，最高级为 wisest；wise 的副词形式为 wisely；名词形式为 wisdom，意为“智慧”。wise 的近义词有 bright，clever 等。

考题在线答案
1. It is good for our health to eat more fruit.
2. D
3. D
4. D
5. D
6. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ.随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见233页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. _____(挖) a hole large enough for the tree.
2. The poor man died yesterday. We don't know what _____(引起) his death.
3. He has made a _____(严重的) mistake this time.
4. For a _____(明智的) man, a mistake is a lesson. (安徽改编)
5. The use of new energy cars helps to _____ (减少) air pollution. (宁波)

二、单项选择

6. —Jim, it's dark now. Please _____ the light in the room.
   —OK, Mum. (新疆)
   A. turn on
   B. turn up
   C. turn off
   D. turn down
7. Please stop _____ and go out for a walk. Remember _____ warm clothes.
   (黔南州)【导学号:9577700】
   A. to study; wearing
   B. studying; to wear
   C. to study; to wear
   D. studying; wearing
8. —What happened just now?
   —A car hit an old lady at the crossing. She was hurt, _____ not too bad. (湘西)
   A. and B. but
   C. or
9. _____ people live a low-C life and the air is getting much cleaner than it was a few years ago.
   A. More and more
   B. Many and many
   C. Much and much
   D. More and many
10. Our city is cleaner than it _____ be. (白银)
    A. is used to
    B. used to
    C. uses to
    D. is used

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 请关闭电视,这个婴儿正在睡觉。(孝感改编)
    Please _____ _____ the TV. The baby is sleeping.
12. 我爸爸每天开车送我妈妈上班。
    My father _____ my mother _____ work every day.
13. 几个小错误不会造成迈克面试的失败,尽管父母对此十分担忧。
    A few small mistakes will not _____ the failure of Mike's interview, even though his parents are really _____ about it.
14. 越来越多的人已经意识到我们不应该浪费食物。(遂宁改编)
    _____ _____ _____ people have realized that we shouldn't _____ _____.
15. 少开车对环境有好处。(北京)
    To drive less is _____ _____ the environment.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Reading

课文朗读A

A Green Switzerland

Kitty's online friend Martina is a middle school student in Switzerland. She is writing in her blog on 5 June, World Environment Day. Here is her article.

I love Switzerland. It is a country with high mountains and clean blue lakes. ❶ It is beautiful, and we should **try to** ❷ keep it that way.

In Switzerland, things like glass, plastic and paper are **separated**/ˈsepəreɪtɪd/ ❸ into different groups and then recycled. Even old clothes and shoes can be recycled. I learnt about an organization for recycling clothes. It collects old clothes from all over the country. **Some** of the clothes are sold in charity shops, **some** are given to the poor, and **others** ❹ are sent to factories for recycling. My family and I often send our old jeans and T-shirts to this organization.

Our government has many laws to protect the environment. For example, we are not **allowed**/əˈlaʊd/ ❺ to **cut down** ❻ trees. Otherwise, we will be **punished**/ˈpʌnɪʃt/ ❼. If we drop litter in a public place, we will be **fined** /faɪnd/ ❽ by the police. There are also laws to limit air and water pollution.

Nature is our greatest treasure. We **depend** /dɪˈpend/ **on** ❾ its **rich**/rɪtʃ/ ❿ resources to live, so it is important for us to protect it wisely. Luckily, we are starting to use energy from the sun, wind and water. These new types of energy cost very little and will never **run out** ⓫. Moreover, they produce/prəˈdjuːs/ little pollution.

Today is 5 June, World Environment Day. What have you done for the environment? Remember that everyone can do something to make a **difference**/ˈdɪfrəns/ ⓬!

B What do people in Switzerland do?

B1 Kitty is not sure about the meanings of some words in Martina's article. Help her match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. separate (line 5) _____
2. recycle (line 6) _____
3. allow (line 13) _____
4. fine (line 15) _____
5. run out (line 20) _____

阅读

A 绿色瑞士

基蒂的网友马丁娜是瑞士的一名中学生。在6月5日，世界环境日，她正在她的博客上写东西。下面是她的文章。

我爱瑞士。它是一个有高耸的山峦和清澈碧绿的湖泊的国家。它很漂亮，我们应该尽力保持它这样。

在瑞士，像玻璃、塑料和纸这样的东西被分成不同的组，然后回收利用。甚至旧衣服和鞋子也能被回收利用。我了解了一个回收利用衣服的组织。它收集来自整个国家的旧衣服。一些衣服放在慈善店里卖，一些给了穷人，还有一些送到工厂来回收利用。我和我的家人经常把我们的旧牛仔裤和T恤衫寄给这个组织。

我们的政府有许多法律来保护环境。例如，我们不被允许砍伐树木。否则，我们会被惩罚。如果我们在一个公共场合扔垃圾，我们将会被警察罚款。我们这里也有限制空气和水污染的法律。

大自然是我们最大的财富。我们依靠它丰富的资源来生存，因此对我们来说明智地保护它很重要。幸运的是，我们正开始使用来自太阳、风和水的能源。这些新型能源花费很少并永远不会用完。而且，它们几乎不产生污染。

今天是6月5日，世界环境日。你为环境做了什么？记住每个人都能做点（对环境保护）有益的事！

B 在瑞士的人们做些什么？

B1 基蒂对马丁娜文章中的一些单词的意思不确定。帮助她把左边的单词和右边的意思搭配起来。在横线上写正确的字母。

1. 分开，隔开（第五行）_____
2. 回收利用（第六行）_____
3. 允许（第十三行）_____
4. 罚款（第十五行）_____
5. 用完，耗尽（第二十行）_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6. produce (line 21) _____
a. cause a result
b. make someone pay money because he/she has done something wrong
c. be used up
d. put things into different groups
e. let someone do something
f. treat something used **so that**[13] it can be used again

B2 Kitty made some notes of Martina's blog on a piece of paper, but her mother tore it up by mistake. Help her match the two halves of the sentences. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. Switzerland is a beautiful country _____
2. In Switzerland, glass, plastic and paper _____
3. An organization was set up _____
4. The government has laws _____
5. We should protect nature _____
6. People are starting to use _____

a. are separated into different groups and recycled.
b. energy from the sun, wind and water.
c. to protect the environment.
d. with high mountains and clean blue lakes.
e. because we depend on its rich resources to live.
f. to collect old clothes from around the country.

B3 After reading Martina's article, Kitty has written down the main points of the paragraphs. Write the correct numbers of the paragraphs in the boxes.

☐ a. Martina asks everyone to do something for the environment.
☐ b. People are starting to use new energy.
☐ c. People in Switzerland recycle many things to reduce pollution.
☐ d. The government has laws to protect the environment.
☐ e. Switzerland is a beautiful country.

B4 Kitty is telling Sandy about Martina's article. Complete their conversation.

Kitty: My online friend Martina wrote last week about how they protect the (1)_____ in Switzerland.
Sandy: Really? What do they do to keep their country clean?
Kitty: In Switzerland, glass, plastic and paper are (2)_____ into different groups and then (3)_____.
Sandy: Do they recycle anything else? What do they do with old clothes?

6. 导致，产生(第二十一行)_____
a. 引起一个结果
b. 使某人付钱，因为他/她做了错事
c. 用光
d. 把东西分成不同的小组
e. 让某人做某事
f. 处理用过的东西以便它能被再次利用

B2 基蒂在一张纸上对马丁娜博客的内容做了笔记，但她的妈妈无意中把它撕了。帮助她把两部分的句子搭配起来。在横线上写上正确的字母。

1. 瑞士是一个美丽的国家_____
2. 在瑞士，玻璃、塑料和纸_____
3. 一个组织被建立_____
4. 政府有法律_____
5. 我们应当保护大自然_____
6. 人们正在开始使用_____

a. 被分成不同的小组并回收利用。
b. 来自太阳、风和水的能源。
c. 来保护环境。
d. 有高耸的山峦和清澈碧绿的湖泊。
e. 因为我们依赖它丰富的资源来生存。
f. 收集来自全国的旧衣服。

B3 在读完马丁娜的文章后，基蒂写下了段落的主要含义。在方框中写上段落的正确数字。

☐ a. 马丁娜要每个人为环境做一些事。
☐ b. 人们正在开始使用新能源。
☐ c. 瑞士的人们回收利用许多东西来减少污染。
☐ d. 政府有法律来保护环境。
☐ e. 瑞士是一个美丽的国家。

B4 基蒂正在告诉桑迪关于马丁娜的文章的事。完成她们的对话。

基蒂：我的网友马丁娜上周写了关于在瑞士他们怎样保护(1)_____的事。
桑迪：真的吗？他们做什么来保持他们的国家清洁？
基蒂：在瑞士，玻璃、塑料和纸被(2)_____不同的小组，然后(3)_____。
桑迪：他们还回收利用其他东西吗？他们怎样处理旧衣服？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Kitty: An organization (4) _____ old clothes from around the country. Then some are sold in (5) _____, some are given to (6) _____, and others are sent to (7) _____ for recycling.
Sandy: That sounds like a good idea.
Kitty: They have many (8) _____ to protect the environment too. For example, people will be (9) _____ if they cut down trees because it's not (10) _____.
Sandy: That's great!
Kitty: Yes. And they don't drop (11) _____ in a public place. Otherwise, they'll be (12) _____ by the police.

基蒂：一个组织(4)_____来自全国的旧衣服。然后一些放在(5)_____里卖，一些给了(6)_____，其他的被送去(7)_____回收利用。
桑迪：那听起来像个好主意。
基蒂：他们也有许多保护环境的(8)_____。例如，如果人们砍伐树木，他们将被(9)_____，因为它是不(10)_____的。
桑迪：那太好了！
基蒂：是的。而且他们在公共场合不扔(11)_____。否则，他们会被警察(12)_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**开门见山法**：文章一开头就交代了“我”喜欢瑞士，并交代了瑞士是个什么样的国家，说明了喜欢的原因。我们在写文章时可以用这种方法直接引出下文。

❷**try to do sth. 尽力做某事**

eg: **Try to do** only one thing at a time.
尽力一次只做一件事。

考向一[重点]：辨析 try to do sth. 与 try doing sth.

try to do sth.	“努力去做某事”，表示努力去做某事，但实际上并不一定成功，侧重尽力，为了达到目的而努力。	I will **try to finish** the work in an hour. 我会尽力在一小时内完成这项工作。
try doing sth.	“尝试着做某事”，指只是一种新的尝试，并没有明显的目的性。	Why don't you **try doing** the experiment in another way? 你为什么不试试用别的方法来做这个实验呢？

速记小筏



【考题在线1】用所给单词的正确形式填空：
(1) Try _____ (do) it again, and you'll finish it.
(2) They try _____ (read) the story in English.
(1)**点拨**：此题用**语境联想法**。根据后半句的“你会完成它”可推知前半句表示“努力再做一次”。
(2)**点拨**：句意：他们试着用英语读那个故事。

考向二[重点]：含有动词 try 的常见短语：try one's best to do sth. 尽某人最大努力去做某事；try on 试穿(衣服等)；try out 试验
eg: You should **try your best** to do it.
你应该尽你最大的努力做这件事。

【考题在线2】—Can I help you?
—The pants look very nice. Can I _____? (铜仁)
A. try it on B. try them on
C. try on it D. try on them

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——我可以帮助你吗？——这条裤子看起来很漂亮。我可以试穿它们吗？用 them 代指 pants，try on 后接代词作宾语时，放中间。

勇于尝试，培养行动素养

人生之路遥远而迷茫，前方是未知的，只有不断地探索尝试，踏出第一步，我们才有成功的机会。戴维·托马斯是拥有4300家快餐店的温迪国际公司创始人，他回忆自己的童年：12岁时，我在一家餐厅作招待。老板说："孩子，只要你愿意努力尝试，你就能为我工作。"我记得我曾经尝试自己一个晚上能接待多少客人，结果创下了100位的纪录。通过第一份工作，我认识到，只要你努力工作并专心致志，你就会成功（succeed）。

【素养行动】如果你有理想，有梦想，想实现，请勇敢地向前迈一步，敢于尝试，你一定会找到开启成功大门的钥匙。

【素养行动结果】培养勇于尝试，大胆探索，永不言弃的精神。只有勇于尝试，坚持不懈，才能有成功的一天。

3 separate/ˈsepəreɪt/ *vt.* & *vi.* **分开，隔开**

eg：He **separated** the big eggs from the small ones. 他把大蛋和小蛋分开了。

考向[重点]：辨析 separate 与 divide

词性	含义	示例
separate	"分隔"把原来连在一起或靠近的东西分隔开来，常和 from 连用。	The machine **separates** the grain from the husk. 机器把米和糠分开。
divide	"划分"把整体分成若干部分，常和介词 into 连用。	The world is **divided** into seven continents. 世界被分成了七大洲。

拓展 separate 还可作形容词，意为"单独的；分开的"。

eg：Raw meat must be kept **separate** from cooked meat.
生肉和熟肉必须分开存放。

4 some... some... others... 有的……有的……还有的……，一些……一些……还有一些……

eg：**Some** dinosaurs were really small, **some** were in middle size, and **others** were really big.
有的恐龙很小，有的中等身材，还有的真的很大。

【考题在线3】 —In some countries, people eat with chopsticks, but in _____, knives and forks.
—You see, people around the world have different eating habits.
A. others　　B. other
C. another　　D. all

点拨：another 指三者或三者以上"另一个"；others 泛指"其余的人（物）"，它常和 some 对比使用，即"some... others..."；all 指"全部"；other 泛指"另外"。

5 [高频] **allow**/əˈlaʊ/ *vt.* **允许**

eg：All the students must know cheating in the exam is not **allowed.**
所有学生必须知道在考试中作弊是不被允许的。

考向[重点]：allow sb. to do sth. 意为"允许某人做某事"。被动语态为：sb. be allowed to do sth. 意为"某人被允许做某事"。

eg：Teenagers shouldn't **be allowed to** stay out late.
青少年不应该被允许在外面呆到很晚。

【考题在线4】 Attention, please! Without permission, children are not allowed _____ alone here. （孝感）
A. to swim
B. swimming
C. swim
D. swam

点拨：本题用固定句型法。此句用 allow 的否定被动形式：be not allowed to do sth.，需要用 to swim，意为：不被允许去游泳。

6 cut down 砍伐，为"动词＋副词"短语，接代词时代词应放在中间。

eg：We should do something to stop people from **cutting down** trees.
我们应该做点什么来阻止人们砍伐树木。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑦punish/ˈpʌnɪʃ/*vt.* 处罚，惩罚

eg：Mr Li never **punishes** his students, does he?
李老师从来不惩罚他的学生，是吗？

考向：punish 是及物动词，过去式和过去分词都是 punished。

搭配：punish sb. for sth. 因某事而惩罚某人

eg：The teacher **punished** Tom **for** his mistake.
那位老师因汤姆犯错惩罚了他。

拓展 punishment *n.* 处罚，惩罚

eg：He accepted his **punishment** like a man.
他像男子汉一样接受了惩罚。

⑧fine/faɪn/*vt.* 罚款

eg：You will be **fined** if you don't obey the rules.
如果你不遵守规则，你将会被罚款。

考向：fine 作“罚款”讲时，还可用作名词。

eg：You must pay a **fine** of ￥10 if you park your car in the wrong place.
如果你把你的汽车停错了地方，你必须付 10 元的罚款。

⑨depend on 依靠；取决于

eg：The cooking time needed **depends on** the size of the potatoes.
所需的烹饪时间取决于土豆的大小。

考向一：depend on 意为“取决于；依靠，依赖”。不能用于进行时态，也不可用于被动语态。后接名词、代词、动名词或从句。

eg：（济南中考）The development of human society **depends on** not only people's scientific knowledge but also their creative spirit.
人类社会的进步不但取决于人们掌握的科学知识，还取决于他们的创新精神。

考向二：depend 的两种用法

人 + depend on	意为“依靠，依赖”	You can't **depend on** your parents forever. 你不能永远依赖你的父母。
物 + depend on	意为“取决于”	Health **depends on** good food and exercise. 健康取决于好的食物和运动。

【考题在线 5】现在的孩子过于依赖父母。（随州）

Children these days _____ _____ their parents too much.

速记小筏

励志名言

Depend on others and you always repent.
依靠别人总要后悔。

⑩rich/rɪtʃ/*adj.* 富有的；丰富的

eg：He came from a **rich** family.
他出身于富裕家庭。

考向：rich 的比较级为 richer，最高级为 richest。

联想：the rich 富人；the poor 穷人

⑪run out 用完，耗尽

eg：Conditions are getting worse and supplies are **running out**.
情况变得更糟糕，补给快用完了。

考向：辨析 run out 与 run out of

run out 和 run out of 这两个短语都有“用完”的意思，但用法不同。

词条	含义及用法	示例
run out	作不及物短语，表示“被用完；被耗尽；”，其主语通常是时间、金钱、食物等无生命名词。	Time is **running out**. 没有时间了。
run out of	是及物短语，表示主动，“（人）把东西用完（或花光）”，其主语通常是有生命名词。	He has **run out of** the red ink. 他把红墨水用完了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线6】These new types of energy cost very little and will never _____.（盐城）

A. look out　　B. come out

C. run out　　D. stay out

点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：这些新能源成本很低，而且将永远用不完。look out小心，留意；come out出来，出版；run out用完；stay out留在户外，不在家。“用完”符合句意。

⑫**difference**/ˈdɪfrəns/*n*. 差异，不同

eg：Can you tell the **differences** between the two pictures?

你能看出这两幅图有什么不同吗？

考向：difference常与between，among连用，表示“……之间的不同”。其形容词形式为different，副词形式为differently。

eg：（扬州中考）—Hi, guys. Where were we yesterday?

嗨，伙伴们。我们昨天（学）到哪儿了？

—We learned the **differences** between fact and opinion.

我们学了fact和opinion的区别。

搭配：make a difference（to sb./sth.）（对某人/某物）有影响，起作用

⑬**so that** 以便，为了



eg：I recorded the concert **so that** I can hear it tomorrow. 我把音乐会录下来，以便我明天可以听它。

考向：辨析so …that…，such …that …与so that

so … that …	引导结果状语从句	so + *adj.*/*adv.* + that从句
such … that …	引导结果状语从句	such + a/an + *adj.* + 单数可数名词 + that从句 such + *adj.* + 复数名词 + that从句 such + *adj.* + 不可数名词 + that从句
so that	既可引导目的状语从句，也可引导结果状语从句	引导目的状语从句时，表示“以便；为了”，从句中常使用can/could/would/should等情态动词或助动词；引导结果状语从句时，从句中一般不用can和may等词，在so that前可以用逗号，意思是“因此，所以”

eg：This teacher is **so** kind **that** we all like him.

这位老师如此和蔼以至于我们都喜欢他。

He is **such** a clever boy **that** everybody likes him.

他是如此聪明的一个男孩以至于每个人都喜欢他。

You should get up early **so that** you won't be late for school.

你应该早起以便你上学不会迟到。

【考题在线7】We must get up early _____ we can catch the first bus to school.（丹东）

A. so that

B. such that

C. in order to

D. in order

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：我们必须早起，以便能赶上第一辆公交车去学校。so that引导目的状语从句。

考题在线答案

1.(1)to do　(2)reading
2.B　3.A　4.A
5.depend on
6.C
7.A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见233页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. In my opinion, teenagers should be _____ (允许) to choose their own clothes. (孝感)
2. You'll be _____ (惩罚) if you break the traffic rules. (滨州)
3. Natural resources are very important for us. And we should use them _____ (明智地). (宿迁)
4. You will be _____ (罚款) if you don't obey the rules.
5. Tea is _____ (生产) in many different areas in China. (绍兴)

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. _____ (luck), he didn't hurt himself badly.
7. The harder we study, the _____ (good) result we will get. (郴州改编)
8. Taizhou and Changzhou _____ (separate) by the Yangtze River, and a new bridge will connect the two cities in the near future. (泰州)
9. People in Switzerland recycle many things to reduce _____ (pollute).
10. There are many _____ (different) between the twins. One is shy, but the other is outgoing. (兰州)

三、单项选择

11. Some of the old clothes are sold in charity shops and _____ are sent to factories _____.
A. others; for recycling
B. the other ; to recycle
C. another; for recycling
D. the others; to recycle

12. —Can I smoke in the dining hall?
—Sorry. It's not _____. (鞍山)
A. promised B. realized
C. allowed D. reminded

13. Thanks to the Internet, different kinds of information _____ in a short time.
A. can be learned B. has been learned
C. can learn D. has learned

14. It is _____ of us to use energy _____ the sun, wind and water.
A. wise; of B. wisely; from
C. wise; from D. wisely; of

15. Every day, he gets up early _____ he can catch the first bus. (六盘水)
A. because B. since
C. when D. so that

16. —Nature is our greatest treasure.
—Yes. If humans don't take action, natural resources will _____ one day. (南京秦淮区二模)
A. turn out B. put out
C. carry out D. run out

17. I think young phubbers (低头族) are supposed to _____ the time they spend _____ their smart phones. (安顺)
A. cut off; in B. cut down; on
C. cut up; on D. cut in; in

18. —A research suggests that walking helps people live longer.
—I quite agree, but it _____ on when and how they walk. (宜昌)
A. remains B. separates
C. returns D. depends

19. To live a green life, we should try to save _____ energy and produce _____ pollution.
A. more; less B. less; more
C. more; fewer D. most; least

20. —Which should we start with, Water World or Space World?
—Either is OK. It makes no _____ to me. (孝感)
A. mistake B. promise
C. difference D. decision

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

21. 我们应该怎样处理这些旧衣服和鞋子?
What should we _____ _____ these old clothes and shoes?

22. 老师没有惩罚那些调皮的男孩儿,而是耐心地对待他们。 (烟台)
The teacher treated the naughty boys patiently _____ _____ _____ _____.

23. 即使是最简单的日常活动也会对环境有影响。
Even the simplest daily activities can _____ _____ _____ _____ the environment.

24. 在瑞士,垃圾被分成不同的组,然后再回收利用。
In Switzerland, the rubbish _____ _____ _____ different groups and then recycled.

25. 为了进一步美化校园,下个月会在学校种很多树。 (广州)
Next month many trees _____ _____ _____ in our school to make it more beautiful.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Grammar

Passive voice in the simple future tense

We use the passive voice in the simple future tense when the action has not taken place yet.

You **will be punished** if you cut down a tree.

These bottles **will be recycled** to make new things.

We form the passive voice in the simple future tense like this:

Subject	will be/be going to be	Past participle
I	will be/am going to be	supported.
You/We/They	will be/are going to be	
He/She/It	will be/is going to be	

Environment Week

A **The students are talking about the Environment Week. Help them make sentences using the passive voice.**

1. activities/in Environment Week/a lot of/orga-nize/are going to

2. design/posters/will/by Sandy

3. to all the people/send/leaflets/in the town/will

4. are going to/hold/some of the activities/in the town square

Environment Week

B **Lisa is telling her cousin Harry about a show that will be held in this Environment Week on the phone. Help Lisa answer Harry's questions using the passive voice.**

Lisa: Hi, Harry. There's going to be an environment show here.

Harry: Really? When is the show going to be held?

语法

一般将来时的被动语态

当动作还未发生时，我们用一般将来时的被动语态。

如果你砍伐树木，你将会被惩罚。

这些瓶子将被回收利用来做新的东西。

一般将来时的被动语态的构成方式如下：

主语	将被	过去分词
我	将被	支持。
你（们）/我们/他们	将被	
他/她/它	将被	

环境周

A 学生们正在谈论环境周。帮助他们用被动语态造句子。

1. 活动/在环境周/许多/组织/将

2. 设计/海报/将/由桑迪

3. 给所有人/发送/传单/在镇上/将

4. 将/举行/一些活动/在镇广场

环境周

B 莉萨正在电话中告诉她的表哥哈里关于这个环境周将要举办的活动。帮助莉萨用被动语态回答哈里的问题。

莉萨：你好，哈里。这儿将有一个关于环境的活动。

哈里：真的吗？活动将在什么时候举办？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lisa: (1) _____
(this Friday evening)
Harry: Will the show be held at your school?
Lisa: No. (2) _____
(at the town hall)
Harry: Who will be invited to the show?
Lisa: (3) _____
(some famous people in our town)
Harry: What will be **displayed**[1] at the show?
Lisa: (4) _____
(videos about the past and present of Sunshine Town)
Harry: What will be discussed at the show?
Lisa: (5) _____
(ways about how to protect the environment)

Work out the rule!

We use "**will be** or _____ + past participle" to form the passive voice in the simple future tense.

C Kitty is writing an article about pollution. Help her complete the article using the passive voice.

Pollution

Pollution is one of the biggest problems in the world today. In many places, rubbish (1) _____ (throw) into lakes and rivers, so many of them (2) _____ (pollute/pəˈluːt/).

In some cities, the air (3) _____ (fill) with pollution. This makes people ill, and more people (4) _____ (hurt) in the future if it is not cleaned up.

As well as[2] people, animals (5) _____ (harm) by pollution. Land and water pollution kills many animals every year. If we do not act to improve the environment, more **living**/ˈlɪvɪŋ/[3] things (6) _____ (kill) by pollution.

However, there is some good news. A show (7) _____ (hold) at the town hall this Friday evening. All of us will have a chance to think about the world around us. On that day, we (8) _____ (show) how to protect the environment.

If we work together, we can make the world a better place.

莉萨：(1) _____
(本周五晚上)
哈里：活动将在你们学校举行吗?
莉萨：不，(2) _____
(在镇礼堂)
哈里：谁将被邀请到这个活动?
莉萨：(3) _____
(我们镇上的一些有名的人)
哈里：活动上将展示什么?
莉萨：(4) _____
(关于阳光镇过去和现在的录像)
哈里：活动上将要讨论什么呢?
莉萨：(5) _____
(关于怎样保护环境的方法)

总结规律!

我们使用"will be 或者_____+过去分词"构成一般将来时的被动语态。

C 基蒂正在写一篇关于污染的文章。帮助她用被动语态完成这篇文章。

污染

现在污染是世界上最大的问题之一。在许多地方，垃圾(1) _____(扔)进了湖里和河里，因此，它们中许多(2) _____(污染)了。

在一些城市，空气被污染物(3) _____(充满)了。这使得人们得病，并且如果它不被清理干净，更多的人在将来会(4) _____(受伤)。

除了人类，动物们也被污染(5) _____(伤害)。陆地和水污染每年都杀死了许多动物。如果我们不采取行动改善环境，更多的生物会被污染(6) _____(杀死)。

然而，这儿有一些好消息。本周五晚上在镇礼堂将要(7) _____(举办)一个活动。我们所有人将有机会来思考我们周围的世界。在那天，将向我们(8) _____(展示)怎样保护环境。

如果我们共同努力，我们能使世界成为一个更美好的地方。

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

[1] display/dɪˈspleɪ/ *vt.* & *vi.* 展示；陈列

eg: It is reported that many new cars will be **displayed** in our city next week.
据报道，下周将有许多新汽车在我们市展出。

考向：display 还可作名词，意为"陈列；展览"。常用搭配：on display 陈列；展览

【考题在线 1】新体育馆的设计图样将在图书馆展出。
Designs for the new gym will be _____ in the library.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

②as well as 也，除……之外；和……一样好

eg：His father **as well as** his mother is watching TV. 他的爸爸和他的妈妈正在看电视。

考向一［重点］：当 as well as 连接两个主语时，谓语动词在人称和数上与前者保持一致。

eg：Jim **as well as** his friends loves the pet cat. 吉姆和他的朋友们喜欢这只宠物猫。

【考题在线 2】So far, physics as well as other subjects _____ (teach) in English. （大庆）

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。短语 so far 意为“到目前为止”，是现在完成时的标志词；其次含有 as well as 的句子的谓语动词与其前的主语在人称与数上保持一致。

考向二［易错点］：as well as 还可意为“和……一样好”，其中 well 为副词。

eg：Mary plays the piano **as well as** you, though she is only six. 尽管玛丽只有六岁，但她钢琴弹得和你一样好。

【考题在线 3】根据所给汉语完成句子

—How can I speak English _____ (与你一样好), Rose?

—Practice makes perfect. （连云港）

点拨：well 为副词，修饰动词 speak；表示“和……一样”用 as ...as。

③living/ˈlɪvɪŋ/*adj.* **活着的，活的**

eg：The blue whale is the world's largest **living** animal. 蓝鲸是世界上活着的最大的动物。

考向：辨析 lively, alive, living 与 live 的用法：

词条	含义	示例
lively	意为“生动的，活泼的，充满生气的”，作表语或定语，用来修饰人或物。	The boy has a **lively** mind. 这个男孩头脑灵活。
alive	意为“活着的，在世的”，常用作表语或后置定语，可修饰人或物。	Is the cat still **alive**? 那只猫还活着吗？
living	意为“活着的”，作定语，常放在名词的前面，有时也可放在名词的后面。	This is a **living** tree. 这是一棵活着的树。
live	意为“活的；现场直播的”，通常位于表物的名词前。	We saw a real **live** snake. 我们看见了一条活生生的蛇。

【考题在线 4】There is no _____ (live) thing on the moon.

点拨：句意为：月球上没有活物。此处强调月球上没有生命，故用 living。

考题在线答案

1. displayed/on display　2. has been taught
3. as well as you　4. living

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

考点：一般将来时的被动语态

考向一：定义

表示在将来的时间里，句子中的主语是动作的承受者或是动作的对象的句子，是将来时态的被动语态。



考向二：构成

一般将来时态的被动语态由“will be + 过去分词”构成，意为“将被……”或由“be going to + be + 过去分词”构成，意为“将/打算被……”。

eg：The old man **will be sent** to the hospital. 这位老人将被送往医院。

He **is going to be** helped. 他将会得到帮助。

【考题在线 1】The 2022 Winter Olympic Games _____ in China. I'm sure it will be a great success. （重庆 A）

A. hold　B. will hold

C. were held　D. will be held

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：2022 年冬季奥林匹克运动会将在中国举行，我相信它将会获得很大成功。根据句中的 2022，可知该题是一般将来时；其次 Winter Olympic Games 与 hold 之间是被动关系，故用一般将来时的被动语态。

考向三：用法

（1）一般将来时态的被动语态用于表示在将来的时间某个动作的承受者将要承受某个动作或将会接受或承受某个动作。汉语常用“将被，将受到，将被给予”等表示。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: Many more trees **will/are going to be planted** next year. 明年更多的树将被种植。

【考题在线 2】A new high speed train railway station _____ in Hechi in five years. (河池)

A. will build B. will be built

C. has built D. has been built

点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:五年后在河池市一座新的高铁火车站将会建成。主语 railway station 与谓语动词 build 之间是被动关系,要用被动语态;由时间状语"in five years"可知要用一般将来时的被动语态 will be built。

(2)使用一般将来时的被动语态时,应注意以下两点:

①在时间、条件状语从句中,应使用现在时表示将来。同样,应使用现在时的被动语态表示将来时的被动语态。

eg: He says he will leave here if he **is punished** for this. 他说如果他为此受惩罚的话他将会离开这儿。

【考题在线 3】You have to stay behind if your homework _____ before five o'clock. (黄石)

A. isn't done B. won't be done

C. doesn't do D. wasn't done

点拨:本题用结构分析法。首先条件状语从句主语 your homework 与 do"做"之间是被动关系,所以要用被动语态,分析句子可知时态应为一般现在时态。

②使用一般将来时的被动语态时,学生易遗漏被动式中的 be。

eg: **Is** this bridge **going to be completed** before the end of this year?

这座桥将会在今年年底前完工吗?

【考题在线 4】用所给词的适当形式填空

Have you heard that some people _____ (send) to Mars in a few years? (盐城)

考题在线答案

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. will be sent

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 233 页)

一、单项选择

1. From May 6, pedestrians (行人) _____ 10 *yuan* if they run red lights, according to Beijing traffic authorities. (咸宁)

A. will fine

B. were fined

C. are fine

D. will be fined

2. The boy thinks he shouldn't _____ what to do because he is 18 now. (阜康、米泉)

A. tell B. tells

C. telling D. be told

3. There will be fewer workers in factories because most work _____ by robots in the future. (沈阳)

A. is done B. was done

C. will be done D. will do

4. A football match between Class Two and Class Three _____ tomorrow afternoon. (黔西南)

A. is held B. was held

C. must be held D. will be held

5. It is reported that about 120 foreign soccer experts _____ to teach school students soccer. (盐城)

A. invite

B. invited

C. to be invited

D. will be invited

二、把下列句子改为被动语态

6. They will finish the work in ten days.

_____

7. We will hold a sports meeting next week.

_____

8. Children will take some photos in the schoolyard tomorrow.

_____

9. He will return the book to the library in two days.

_____

10. The headmaster will give us a talk this afternoon.

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A How green are you?

A1 The Class 1, Grade 8 students want to do a survey to get some ideas for their presentation on how to go green. Listen to the conversation between Daniel and Sandy and write the correct information in the table below.

课文听力A1音频及材料

A survey on students' daily habits
Time: Survey/ˈsɜːveɪ/[1]: (1)_____
Daniel and Sandy meet: (2)_____
Place: (3)_____
Number of students: (4)_____
Boys: (5)_____
Girls: (6)_____
Number of questions: (7)_____

A2 Daniel and Sandy are talking about the results of the survey. Listen carefully and then complete the table below.

课文听力A2音频及材料

Daily habits	Number of students
Turn off the tap when brushing teeth	
Take showers for **less than**[2] 10 minutes	
Use both sides of the paper	
Recycle empty/ˈempti/ bottles	
Turn off the lights when they leave a room	
Take their own bags to the supermarket	

A3 Sandy is writing a note to Mr Wu about the survey she and Daniel have done. Help her complete the note. Use Parts A1 and A2 to help you.

Dear Mr Wu,
Daniel and I did a survey this (1)_____. Students were asked about their (2)_____.

综合技能

A 你多环保?

A1 八年级一班的学生们想要进行一次调查来为他们关于怎样变得环保的陈述收集一些观点。听丹尼尔和桑迪之间的对话并在下面的表中写上正确的信息。

一份有关学生们日常习惯的调查
时间：调查：(1)_____
丹尼尔和桑迪见面：(2)_____
地点：(3)_____
学生数：(4)_____
男孩：(5)_____
女孩：(6)_____
问题的数量：(7)_____

A2 丹尼尔和桑迪正在谈论调查的结果。仔细地听，然后完成下面的表格。

日常习惯	学生的数目
刷牙时关掉水龙头	
淋浴少于10分钟	
使用纸张的两面	
回收利用空瓶子	
当他们离开房间时关灯	
带他们自己的袋子去超市	

A3 桑迪正在给吴老师写有关她和丹尼尔做的调查的短信。帮助她完成短信。用A1和A2部分的内容来帮助你。

亲爱的吴老师：
丹尼尔和我这个(1)_____做了一个调查。学生们被问及关于他们的(2)_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Here are the results of the survey. Only (3)_____ students usually take showers for less than 10 minutes, but (4)_____ students turn off the tap when brushing their teeth. Only 15 students recycle (5)_____, but (6)_____ students use both sides of the paper. It is great that most students remember to (7)_____ the lights when they leave a room, but few students take their own (8)_____ to the supermarket.

The survey shows that students are doing a lot to help protect the environment, but there are still many more things they can do.

Sandy

以下是调查结果。只有(3)_____学生通常洗淋浴不到 10 分钟，但是(4)_____学生刷牙时关掉水龙头。只有 15 名学生回收(5)_____，但(6)_____学生使用纸张的双面。大多数学生记得当他们离开一个房间时(7)_____灯是很好的，但很少有学生带他们自己的(8)_____去超市。

调查显示，学生们正做很多事来帮助保护环境，但是仍有更多他们可以做的事情。

桑迪

B Speak up: We can plant more trees.

Sandy and Kitty are talking about how to protect the environment. Work in pairs and talk about actions you can take. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Sandy: Pollution has become a serious problem all around the world.

Kitty: Yes, I agree. We should try our best to protect the environment.

Sandy: What can we do?

Kitty: We can plant more trees. I think our town will look nicer with more trees around.

Sandy: Good idea. Trees reduce dust and help keep the air clean. Air pollution is **harmful**/ˈhɑːmfl/❸ to our health.

Kitty: Right. Trees also help keep soil in place during storms.

Sandy: Yes. They provide homes for animals too.

B 大声地说：我们可以种植更多的树。

桑迪和基蒂正在讨论怎样保护环境。两人一组，谈论你能采取的行动。用下面的对话作为示例。

桑迪：污染已变成世界各地的一个严重问题。

基蒂：是的，我同意。我们应该尽我们最大的努力来保护环境。

桑迪：我们能做什么？

基蒂：我们可以种植更多的树。我认为我们镇上有更多的树围绕着会看起来更漂亮。

桑迪：好主意。树木减少灰尘，帮助保持空气清新。空气污染对我们的健康有害。

基蒂：对。树木也能在暴风雨中帮助保持土壤。

桑迪：是的。它们也为动物提供了家园。

Study skills

Checking your work

You can correct a lot of your own mistakes by checking your work. After you have finished a piece of writing, always spend some time reading it through.

Millie has written an article. Help her check her work. Underline the mistakes, make the corrections and decide the types of mistakes she has made. Use the information in the box to help you. There are ten mistakes. One has been corrected.

W = word usage mistake
P = punctuation mistake
S = spelling mistake
M = missing word
G = grammatical mistake

Let's protect our environment!

on(M)

People depend natural resources to live. Water and soil

学习技能

检查你的作品

通过检查你的作品你可以改正许多你自己的错误。在你完成一篇文章后，总要花一些时间来从头至尾读下它。

米莉写了一篇文章。帮助她检查她的作品。在错误处画线，改正过来，并判定她犯的错误类型。用方框中的信息来帮助你。有十处错误，一处已经被改正了。

W = 单词使用错误
P = 标点错误
S = 拼写错误
M = 漏词
G = 语法错误

我们一起保护我们的环境吧！

on(M)

人们依赖自然资源生存。水和土壤

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

help provide us with necessary food and drinks. Coal/kəʊl/, oil/ɔɪl/ and natural gas is **not only** useful for families, **but**❹ **have a wider use for factorys.**

Some natural resources are around us, such as water and air. Others like coal, oil and natural gas are dug up from the ground. They will form/fɔːm/❺ over thousands or even millions of years. As a result, it is very important for us to use them wise. If they are used and thrown away **carelessly** /ˈkeələsli/❻. finally some of them will run out.

It is time for us to take proper actions to protect our enviromnent. We should try produce less waste, reuse or recycle things if possible?

帮助提供给我们必要的食物和饮料。煤、石油和天然气不仅对家庭有用，而且对工厂有更广泛的应用。

一些自然资源围绕在我们周围，例如水和空气。其他的像煤、石油和天然气从地下挖出来。它们要超过成千上万或甚至数百万年才形成。因此，对我们来说，明智地使用它们很重要。如果它们被满不在乎地使用或扔掉。最终它们中的一些将被用尽。

现在该是我们采取正确行动保护我们的环境的时候了。如果有可能我们应该尽量少产生浪费，再使用或回收利用东西？

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶survey/ˈsɜːveɪ/*n.* **调查**

eg:（广东中考）According to a recent **survey**, nearly three fifths of working mothers in China don't want to have a second child.
根据最近的一次调查，中国将近五分之三的上班族妈妈们不想要二孩。

考向：do a survey 作调查

eg: He will **do a survey** about wildlife.
他将对野生生物作一个调查。

❷less than 不到；少于

eg: He sleeps **less than** seven hours every night.
他每晚睡觉不到七个小时。

考向：less than 的反义词组为 more than，意为“多于，超过”。

eg: I like her **more than** her husband.
我喜欢她多于喜欢她丈夫。

❸harmful/ˈhɑːmfl/*adj.* **有害的**

eg: Much of the waste is **harmful**.
废物许多是有害的。

考向：harmful 的反义词为 harmless，意为“无害的”，常用于 be harmful/harmless to 结构中。

eg: Smoking is known to **be harmful to** our health. 大家知道，吸烟有害我们的健康。

拓展 harmful 的名词形式为 harm，是不可数名词，意为“伤害；损害”。常用短语为“do harm to ”，相当于“be harmful to”。

eg: The local government will cancel the project because it may **be harmful to** the environment.
当地政府将取消这个课题，因为它可能对环境有害。

The court case will **do** serious **harm to** my business.
这起诉讼案件将严重损害我的生意。

【考题在线 1】Drinking too much juice can be _____（有害的）to people's teeth.（宁波）

点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。句意：喝太多的果汁对人们的牙齿有害。短语 be harmful to“对……有害”。

❹not only...but（also）...不但……而且……

考向一[重点]：通常连接平行的词、词组或从句。如果连接两个并列成分作主语时，其谓语动词通常与靠近的主语保持一致，即遵循“就近原则”。

拓展 表示平行结构的并列连词还有：both... and...“……和……都”；either... or...“或者……或者……”；neither... nor...“既不……也不……”。

eg: Yangzhou Gardens are famous **not only** in China **but also** in the whole world.
扬州园林不仅在中国出名，而且在全世界也很出名。

Not only my father **but also** I am not good at playing basketball.
不但我爸爸，而且我也不擅长打篮球。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 2】—Your father has passed the driving test?
—Yes. _____ my father _____ my mother has. (常州)
A. Not only; but also B. Neither; nor
C. Either; or D. Both; and

点拨:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:——你父亲已经通过驾照考试了?——是的,不但我的父亲,而且我母亲也已经通过了。not only ... but also ... "不但……而且……"; neither ... nor ... "既不……也不……"; either ... or ... "或者……或者……"; both ... and ... "……和……都"。根据语境,由肯定回答 Yes. 和谓语动词 has 可知用 not only...but also...。

考向二[难点]:as well as 与 not only... but (also)...都有"不但……而且……"的意思,但二者稍有区别:

A as well as B	强调的是 A,连接两个主语时,谓语动词与 A 保持一致。	Your wife **as well as** your children is friendly to me. 不仅你的孩子而且你的妻子对我都很友好。
not only A but also B	强调的是 B,当连接两个主语时,谓语动词与 B 保持一致。	**Not only** Lily **but also** her parents enjoy classical music very much. 不仅莉莉而且她的父母都非常喜欢古典音乐。

5 form /fɔːm/ *vt.* & *vi.* **形成**

eg: The design is **formed** with lines and circles.
这个设计由线条和圆圈组成。

考向:form 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
名词	表格	Please fill in the **form**. 请填这份表格。
名词	形式,方式	Paper cutting is a **form** of traditional Chinese art. 剪纸是中国传统艺术的一种形式。
动词	组织,建立	We **formed** a study group. 我们组织了一个学习小组。

【考题在线 3】用所给词的适当形式填空:
A new plan began _____ (form) in her mind. (安顺)

【考题在线 4】月球上的食物很可能会以药片的形式存在,而且没那么可口。(宿迁)
Food on the moon would most probably be _____ pills and would not be tasty.

点拨:本题用**固定短语法**解题。表示"用……的形式"用 in the form of。

6 carelessly /ˈkeələsli/ *adv.* **粗心地;满不在乎地**

eg: He drove **carelessly** and crashed against the wall.
他开车粗心,撞到了墙上。

考向:carelessly 的形容词形式为 careless,反义词为 carefully。

eg: —Why did Lucy look unhappy?
为什么露西看起来不开心?
—Because she was so **careless** that she made many spelling mistakes in her homework.
因为她如此粗心以至于在作业中犯了很多拼写错误。

【考题在线 5】Daniel did the exercises too _____ (粗心地), and it made his teacher angry. (广安)

考题在线答案
1. harmful
2. A
3. to form
4. in the form of
5. carelessly

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见233页）

一、根据汉语提示或用所给词的适当形式完成句子

1. Billy doesn't do his homework so _____（粗心） as he used to be. （呼和浩特改编）
2. According to a _____（调查）, the average number of daily steps of people across the world is 4,961. （宿迁改编）
3. They _____（形成）a circle and sang a song.
4. The roads were nearly _____（空的）of traffic.
5. Such bad books shouldn't be allowed to sell at any bookstore. They are _____（harm） to children. （凉山）
6. You can make a _____（day）plan on what to do.
7. You should brush your _____（tooth）twice a day.
8. Not only the players but also the coach _____（be）playing football now. （淮安）
9. We can plant more trees to reduce the _____（尘土） and keep the air fresh.
10. At a green school, every class collects waste which can be _____（再使用）.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 污染已成为全世界一个严重的问题。
Pollution has become a serious problem _____ _____ _____ _____.
12. 我们应该尽我们最大的努力学好英语。
We should _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ English well.
13. 吃饭时看书对身体有害。
It's _____ _____ you to read while eating.
14. 树木能在暴风雨中帮助保持土壤吗？
Can trees help _____ soil _____ _____ during storms?
15. 到我们采取行动保护环境的时候了。
It's time for us _____ _____ _____ to _____ the environment.

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

Going green

A The Class 1, Grade 8 students are going to give a presentation on how to go green. Here are Millie's ideas. Read her notes below.

Our environment is changing for the worse, so it is time for us to go green! Here are some **simple**/ˈsɪmpl/❶ **steps**/steps/❷ to take.

To save water:
- Take shorter showers.
- Turn off the tap when you brush your teeth.
- Reuse water if possible.

To save power:
- Turn off the lights when you leave a room.
- Turn off the power when your TV or computer is not in use.

To reduce pollution:
- Do not use plastic bags. Take your own bags when shopping.
- Separate waste into different groups.

More tips for a green lifestyle:
- Do more exercise and watch less TV.
- Plant some flowers at home.

任务

变得环保

A 八年级一班的学生们将要进行一次怎样变得环保的陈述。下面是米莉的想法。读她下面的笔记。

我们的环境正变得更糟糕，因此，该是我们变得环保的时候了！下面是可以采取的一些简单措施。

节约用水：
- 缩短淋浴时间。
- 当你刷牙时关掉水龙头。
- 如果可能重复使用水。

节约能源：
- 当你离开房间时关掉灯。
- 你的电视或电脑不用时关掉电源。

减少污染：
- 不要使用塑料袋。购物时带你自己的购物袋。
- 把废物分成不同的小组。

更多有利于环境保护的生活方式的小贴士：
- 多做锻炼，少看电视。
- 在家里种植一些花。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Follow these small steps, and you can make a big difference to the Earth!

Useful expressions

It is time for us to ....
We can save water by ....
We should use/take ....
...is a good way to ....
It is important for us to ....
It is good to ....
Moreover, ...

B Millie is writing the script for the presentation. Help her complete her script. Use the information on page 118 to help you.

Our environment is changing for the worse, so it is time for us to (1) _____. Here are some simple steps to take.

We can save water by taking (2) _____ and turning off (3) _____ when we brush our teeth. We should also (4) _____ if possible. In order to save power, we should (5) _____ when we leave a room. We should also turn off the power when our TV or computer is (6) _____.

Some other good habits can help reduce pollution too. We should not use (7) _____. Instead, we should take (8) _____ when shopping. Recycling is also a good way to help reduce pollution. We should separate (9) _____ into different groups so that it can be recycled.

Moreover, it is important for us to develop a green lifestyle. We should (10) _____ and watch less TV and it is good to (11) _____ at home.

Follow these small steps, and you can make a big difference to the Earth!

C You are also going to give a presentation on how to go green. Write your script. Use Millie's notes and script as a model.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about green Switzerland.		
2. to use the new words to talk about protecting the environment.		
3. the passive voice in the simple future tense.		
4. to check my work after finishing writing.		

Result: Excellent! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

遵循这些小的措施，你们能对地球产生巨大的影响！

有用的表达

该是我们……的时候了。
我们可以通过……来节约水。
我们应该使用/采用……。
……是……的好方法。
对我们来说……重要。
……是好的。
而且，……。

B 米莉正在为她的陈述写讲话稿。帮助她完成她的讲话稿。用 118 页的信息来帮助你。

我们的环境正变得更糟糕，因此该是我们(1) _____的时候了。下面是可以采取的一些简单的措施。

我们可以通过洗(2) _____和当我们刷牙时关掉(3) _____来节约用水。如果可能我们也应(4) _____。为了节约能源，我们离开房间时应(5) _____。当我们的电视或电脑(6) _____时我们也应关掉电源。

一些其他好的习惯也能帮助减少污染。我们不应使用(7) _____。相反，购物时我们应该带(8) _____。回收利用也是帮助减少污染的一个好方法。我们应该把(9) _____分成不同的类别以便于它能被回收利用。

而且，对我们来说养成保护环境的生活方式是重要的。我们应该(10) _____，少看电视，并且在家里(11) _____是好的。

遵循这些小的措施，你们能对地球产生巨大的影响！

C 你也将要做一个关于怎样变得环保的陈述。写出你的讲话稿。用米莉的笔记和讲话稿作为示例。

自我评价

我已经学习了	细节	结果
1. 关于绿色瑞典。		
2. 使用新单词谈论环境保护。		
3. 一般将来时的被动语态。		
4. 写作完成后检查我的作品。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！

我需要花费更多的时间在_____上。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ.重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶simple/ˈsɪmpl/*adj.* 简单的

eg：This is a **simple** question. 这是一个简单的问题。

拓展 simple 的副词形式为 simply，意为“简单地”；simple 的近义词为 easy（容易的）；反义词为 difficult，hard（难的）。

【考题在线1】 I bought the computer _____（simple） because it was cheap.（徐州）

❷step/step/*n.* 步骤；措施

eg：He thinks of the agreement as the first **step** towards peace.

他认为该协定是通向和平的第一步。

考向：step 的其他用法

词性	含义	示例
名词	脚步声	The **steps** could now be heard more clearly. 现在脚步声听得更清楚了。
	步伐；步态	He walked with a quick light **step**. 他迈着轻快的步子走着。
名词	台阶	Mind the **steps**! 注意台阶！
动词	迈步；行走	I had to **step** aside. 我只能走到一边。
	踏；踩	Sorry, did I **step** on your foot? 抱歉，我踩了你的脚吗？

搭配：take steps 采取措施

step by step 一步一步地

【考题在线2】 Being honest is the first _____ if you want to make friends with others.（丽水）

A. step　　B. time　　C. job　　D. hand

点拨：step 意为“步骤”，time 意为“时间；次数”，job 意为“工作”，hand 意为“手”。本句句意：如果你想和其他人交朋友，诚实是第一步。

考题在线答案

1. simply
2. A

Ⅲ.写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：三步法介绍如何保护环境

三步法：

步骤一：表明职责

步骤二：具体行动

步骤三：表明重要性

易错点提示

1. 注意时态。本话题一般用一般现在时。
2. 注意时间状语从句、条件状语从句等从句的用法。
3. 要恰当地使用连接词。

典例

保护人类共同的家园——地球，是每个人的责任和义务。我们在生活中的点滴小事上也能做出自己的贡献。根据下面的内容，谈一谈你曾经为保护环境做过哪些努力，将来还打算如何去做。

要求：①词数不少于80；

②意思连贯，条理清晰，适当发挥。

1. turn off the lights when you leave a room
2. turn off the shower while washing hair
3. take your own bags when shopping
4. stop riding in cars
5. recycle books and paper

参考词汇和句型

单词	duty, protect, wash
短语	turn off, instead of, such as, take action
句型	It's our duty to …, I always … when …, It's time for us to …

范文欣赏

It's our duty to protect the earth.

I always **turn off** the lights when I leave a room. While I am washing my hair, I usually turn off the shower. And if I want to shop, I always take my own bags **instead of** using plastic bags. I have

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

decided to do more things to protect our earth, such as recycling books and paper and stopping riding in cars.

It's time for us to take action to protect our environment. If we don't, our environment will become worse and worse.

【点评】

本文应用了"三步法"介绍如何保护环境。步骤一：表明职责（保护人类共同的家园——地球，是每个人的责任和义务）；步骤二：具体行动（根据所给的五点内容）；步骤三：表明重要性（我们在生活中的小事上也能做出自己的贡献）。

添彩点：1. 运用了一个句型：It's time + for sb. + to do sth. 2. 运用了多个固定短语：turn off；instead of；take action。

"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见233页)

单元知识浓缩

Switzerland is a country w_____[1] high mountains and clean blue lakes. In Switzerland, things like glass, plastic and paper are s_____[2] into different groups and then recycled. The government has many laws to p_____[3] the environment. For example, we are not a_____[4] to c_____[5] down trees. Otherwise, we will be p_____[6]. There are also laws to limit air and water pollution.

Nature is our greatest treasure. We d_____[7] on its r_____[8] resources to live, so it is important for us to protect it w_____[9]. Remember that everyone can do something to make a d_____[10]!

Project 2

课文原文及译文

A report on charity

Supporting charities is a good way to help other people. Your class is doing a report on the ways to help different charity projects.

A Planning and preparing

1. Work in groups of four. Look for information about different charity projects in China. You can find information in leaflets or newspapers, in the library or on the Internet.

Some charity projects in China

- Project Hope
- Project Green Hope
- Spring Bud Project
- Save China's Tigers
- Happiness Project

Here are some details about Project Hope.

What is its name?	Project Hope
When was it set up?	In 1989
Why was it set up?	To help children in poor areas

一份有关慈善机构的报告

支持慈善机构是帮助其他人的一个好方法。你们班正在做一份关于帮助不同慈善机构的方法的报告。

A 计划与准备

1. 四人一组。找一找有关中国的不同的慈善机构的信息。你可以在传单或报纸、图书馆或因特网上找一些信息。

中国的一些慈善机构

- 希望工程
- 绿色希望工程
- 春蕾计划
- 拯救中国虎
- 幸福工程

这是有关希望工程的一些详细情况。

它叫什么名字?	希望工程
什么时候成立的?	在1989年
为什么成立?	帮助贫困地区的孩子们

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

What kind of work does it do?	Sponsor children to go to school, build schools, libraries and playgrounds, etc.
How many children has it helped?	About 4.5 million children (by 2012)

2. Choose a charity project. Collect leaflets, advertisements and articles about it. Then try to prepare a list of questions. Use the questions above as a model.
3. Find out what people do to help this charity project. If you need help with ideas, you may use the questions on the next page.

a. Have you heard about Project Hope in China?
b. Do you know what it does?
c. Do you know how it raises money?
d. Are you willing to help poor children?
e. How can you help them?
f. Do you know of other ways to help this project? If yes, what are they?

4. Once you have prepared your list of questions, make 12 copies of it. Each member of your group should ask three classmates the questions.
5. When you have collected all the information, discuss with your group members how you will present it. You may use charts, graphs, pictures or other ways to help you. Make a list of all the suggestions.
6. Draw pictures and use photos to make your report attractive.

B Describing how you can help the charity

Look at the ideas below. They are suggestions about what people can do for charity. You may include them in your report.

How people can help

- work as volunteers
- donate money or things
- organize an activity to raise money
- Please donate!

它做什么样的工作?	赞助孩子们上学，建学校、图书馆和操场等。
它帮助了多少孩子?	（到 2012 年大约 450 万

2. 选择一个慈善机构。 收集关于它的传单、广告和文章。 然后尽力准备一系列问题。 用上面的问题作为示例。
3. 查出人们做些什么来帮助这个慈善机构。 如果你需要想法上的帮助，你可以用下页的问题。

a. 你听说过中国的希望工程吗?
b. 你知道它是干什么的吗?
c. 你知道它是怎样筹集资金的吗?
d. 你愿意帮助贫困的孩子们吗?
e. 你怎么帮助他们呢?
f. 你知道其他帮助这个工程的方法吗? 如果知道，它们是什么?

4. 一旦你准备好你的一系列问题，把它制成 12 份。 你们组里的每个成员应该问班里的三个同学这些问题。
5. 当你收集完所有的信息，与你组内成员讨论一下如何呈现它。 你可以用图表、示意图、图片或者其他方法来帮助你。 制作一份所有建议的清单。
6. 画图和使用照片来使你的报告吸引人。

B 描述你怎样能帮助慈善机构

看下面的想法。 它们是关于人们能为慈善机构做些什么的建议。 你可以把它们包括在你的报告里。

人们可以如何帮助

- 当志愿者
- 捐款或捐物
- 组织一次活动来筹集资金
- 请捐款!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 过关测试 (P(答案见215页)

限时:60 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								



请通过 www. rudder. com. cn 下载
听力原题、听力材料、答案及录音

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. —Has Tom called you _____?
—Yes. He often calls me.
A. yesterday　B. recently
C. in the past　D. just now

2. Some people ride bikes to work instead of driving in order to reduce _____ pollution.
A. water　B. air　C. soil　D. white

3. —Does Jason feel _____ in his new school?
—I don't think so. He has already made a few friends there.
A. lonely　B. quiet
C. excited　D. happy

4. We have _____ seen the film.
A. already　B. ever
C. yet　D. no

5. —I have _____ finished my homework. What about you?
—I finished it _____.
A. just;yet　B. just now;just now
C. just;just now　D. just now;just

6. Today, WeChat becomes very popular, and quite a lot of people like to use it to _____ each other.
A. get in touch with
B. catch up with
C. keep up with
D. get on well with

7. —_____ have you been married?
—For twenty years.
A. How far　B. How often
C. How long　D. How soon

8. Mr Wu moved out of the old house when he _____.
A. married to　B. gets married
C. got married　D. is marrying

9. —Could you _____ the computer for me, dear? I want to check my e-mails.
—Certainly. I'll do it right away.
A. turn on　B. turn down
C. turn off　D. turn up

10. The Queqiao satellite(卫星) will form a _____ bridge between controllers on Earth and the far side of the Moon.
A. contribution　B. communication
C. celebration　D. competition

11. —Do you still play basketball?
—Oh, no. I _____ it for the past two years.
A. haven't played　B. didn't play
C. won't play　D. hadn't played

12. —Molly has changed so much! She _____ be shy and quiet.
—Yeah. But now she _____ speaking in front of the class.
A. used to; is used to
B. is used to; used to
C. used to; used to
D. is used to; is used to

13. —High-speed trains, Mobile payment, Shared bikes and Online shopping are called "four great new inventions" of modern China.
—They _____ our daily lives more convenient.
A. have made　B. had made
C. have been made　D. made

14. —Would you like to see the movie *Operation Red Sea* with us?
—I'd love to! But I _____ it.
A. saw　B. see　C. will see　D. have seen

15. We are going to begin our meeting at 8:00. Please be here _____. Don't be late.
A. at times　B. in time
C. on time　D. from time to time

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)



When I was nine years old, I used to go to the post office with my mother, sending greeting cards to my aunt in Singapore. To me, these trips were really _____[16] memories. And receiving mail through a mailbox outside our gate was just as exciting. My small hands could _____[17] get the mail without using a key! I always couldn't wait to see how much I was _____[18]. Oh, a letter! From Singapore! I would run back home and show it to my _____[19]. When there was a letter for me, I wouldn't run—I would open it right there.

After my family moved back to Singapore, I _____[20] going to the post office. Years later, my company sent me to Shanghai, and the post office found me again. Two years ago I celebrated my _____[21] with five friends on top of the mountain in Longsheng, China. At sunrise we _____[22] up to a beautiful view from the mountain top. Later in the afternoon, as we were going _____[23] the mountain and returning from the sunrise viewing place, a _____[24] shop caught our attention. It only sold noodles, coffee and had a China _____[25] sign.

We asked the owner if she could really send mail. She happily said yes. It seemed hard to believe _____[26] we were at the highest top of the mountain. I picked one postcard out and asked my friends to write _____[27] a birthday note. We bought a stamp, wrote some notes and gave the shop owner the postcard.

Three weeks later, I arrived home and _____[28] my mailbox. Hello, postcard! I broke onto a big smile.

That birthday postcard attracted me again to the post office and all its delights. I had _____[29] the post office all these years. Today I _____[30] send postcards to friends. And every time I am at the post office buying stamps, I cannot help but smile—how one postcard will make its way across the world and brighten up someone's day.

16. A. bad　B. poor　C. good　D. short
17. A. easily　B. simply
　C. hardly　D. specially
18. A. weighing　B. getting
　C. selecting　D. accepting
19. A. friend　B. aunt　C. mother　D. owner
20. A. enjoyed　B. stopped
　C. hated　D. considered
21. A. wedding　B. return
　C. success　D. birthday
22. A. broke　B. woke　C. grew　D. stood
23. A. around　B. over　C. up　D. down

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

24. A. cold B. dirty C. small D. modern
25. A. Traffic B. Life C. Police D. Post
26. A. because B. though C. while D. when
27. A. him B. me C. her D. them
28. A. bought B. repaired C. painted D. opened
29. A. missed B. influenced C. studied D. visited
30. A. just B. seldom C. still D. never

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）



I am Mike Smith, a doctor from London. I really feel that life in China is changing so quickly. Recently I had a business trip to Tianjin. I left my apartment in Beijing and walked half a street to the subway station. About twelve stops later, I reached the high-speed rail station. After two minutes of security checks（安全检查）, I picked up my ticket, which I had bought on my phone while on the subway. Then I walked to the terminal（终点）and got on the train. Twenty-eight minutes later I was in the center of a beautiful city—Tianjin. I could enjoy a nice walk along the riverside towards my hotel. It is amazing that the whole experience took no more than a few hours, with no cars, no airports, no credit cards（信用卡）and no long lines, just my smartphone, only a few US dollars and comfortable shoes. In most places in the developed world, there is no experience like this. But China is different.

So in my opinion, if we think highly of China's modern wonders, I believe its high-speed rail system must be one of them. And it's one symbol of a new China and a sign of China's strength as well.

31. Where is Mike Smith from? He is from _____.
A. America B. the U. K
C. Australia D. Canada

32. How did Mike buy his ticket to Tianjin? He bought it _____.
A. on his phone
B. from the high-speed rail ticket office
C. from the subway ticket office
D. with the help of his friend

33. How many traffic tools did Mike use from his apartment in Beijing to his hotel in Tianjin?
A. One B. Two C. Three D. Four

34. According to the passage, Mike thinks that the trip is so _____.
A. comfortable B. convenient（方便的）
C. cheap D. A, B and C

35. What is Mike's attitude to Chinese high-speed rail train? He _____ it.
A. looks down upon B. dislikes
C. praises（赞扬） D. hates

四、根据汉语提示写出单词（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. Recently the government _____（意识到）the importance of reducing smog（雾霾）.
37. It's _____（不可能）for you to learn English well if you don't work hard.
38. Would you like to study _____（在国外）or at home when you graduate from middle school?
39. Last week, I _____（采访）the famous basketball player.
40. I've _____（刚刚）known the bad news from *China Daily*.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

41. My father is used to _____（read）newspapers before breakfast.
42. Heilongjiang Province is in the _____（north）part of China.
43. She lives _____（alone）and often feels _____（lonely）.
44. John and Jim are brothers and their _____（wife）are sisters.
45. The meeting _____（take）place next month in Beijing.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 1 分，共 10 分）

Living in a city has both advantages and disadvantages. It is often easier to find jobs in a city than in the countryside. If you go out, you can choose different forms of transport. Besides, there are a lot of places of interest to see. You can eat in good restaurants, visit museums, go to parks and watch films when you want to relax. However, living in a city is often expensive. You must find a well-paid job, or you will not have enough money to buy the things you need. What's more, the city is always crowded（拥挤的）, noisy and dirty. It is very difficult to find a good place where people can enjoy peace and fresh air as in the countryside.

Advantages	· To find jobs in a city is often easier than in the _____[46]. · There are lots of different forms of _____[47] for you to choose when you go out. · There are many _____[48] places to see. · If you want to _____[49], you can eat in good restaurants, visit museums, go to parks and _____[50].
Disadvantages	· You must have a well-paid job because living in a city will _____[51] you too much. Otherwise you can't _____[52] for the things you need. · The city is not only crowded and noisy but also _____[53]. · It is not _____[54] to find a good place to enjoy peace and fresh air in the city.
Advice	When you plan to move to a city, you should think about all the problems _____[55].

七、书面表达（30 分）

我的家乡是一座小城，近十年来发生了很大的变化。假如你是该市一所学校的学生，请你根据以下提示，以“Changes in My Hometown”写一段话，词数 100 左右，内容必须包括表格中提示的要点：

过去	旧房、河水肮脏、步行或骑自行车……
现在	高楼、河水清澈、乘公交车或小汽车……
将来	展望家乡的未来

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 过关测试

(答案见216页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. The cake _____ delicious. I'd like to have another one.
A. tastes　B. looks　C. sounds　D. feels

2. Everyone in my class except Tom and Mary _____ to Beijing twice.
A. have been　B. have gone
C. has been　D. has gone

3. While I was away from my home last year, I always _____ my family.
A. guessed　B. thought
C. missed　D. allowed

4. —Would you mind speaking more slowly? I can hardly _____ you.
—Of course not.
A. read　B. follow
C. miss　D. match

5. The professor reached Nanjing last Wednesday. He _____ there for 10 days.
A. has been　B. has got
C. has reached　D. has arrived

6. The seafood restaurant _____for about 5 months. I have eaten there three times.
A. is open　B. has opened
C. has been open　D. has been opened

7. Jane _____ for 15 years, yet she still doesn't know what kind of man she _____.
A. has been married; has married with
B. has got married; married to
C. has been married; married
D. has married; has married to

8. —My car _____. Could you please give me a ride tomorrow?
—I'm sorry I can't. I'm _____ London tomorrow morning.
A. is new; leaving
B. has broken down; leaving for
C. broke; leaving for
D. is expensive; leaving

9. Would you mind looking after my garden when I am _____?
A. on business　B. in business
C. business　D. businesses

10. Turn right _____the road.
A. in the end　B. in the end of
C. by the end of　D. at the end of

11. Around the world, more and more people are _____ dangerous sports activities, because life in modern societies has become boring.
A. joining　B. attending
C. taking part in　D. joining to

12. —Do you know her well?
—Sure. We _____ friends since ten years ago.
A. were　B. became
C. has become　D. have been

13. The old man feels very _____because all his children have gone abroad and his wife _____ for almost two years.
A. alone; has died
B. lonely; died
C. lonely; has been dead
D. alone; has been dead

14. —_____ have you studied in this school?
—For nearly three years.
A. How often　B. How far
C. How much　D. How long

15. The astronaut is so tired that he _____ for eleven hours.
A. has been asleep　B. has fallen asleep
C. has gone to bed　D. has gone to sleep

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)

One morning, when I was leaving for my business, a middle-aged man came up and asked me for help. He said he had no _____[16] to get food for his large family.

"You look _____[17]. Why don't you work?" I asked. "Simply because I cannot get work, sir." "If I give you work, what pay do you want?" "_____[18] I can get bread for my family, sir," he answered.

I decided to find out if he _____[19] meant what he said. "OK. I'll give you one pound an hour, if you will _____[20] a brick(砖) under your arm and walk around the square for five hours without stopping." "Thank you, sir. I will."

I found a brick and let him start on his walk before I went to my _____[21]. I never thought he would do what he had _____[22].

When I came back five hours later, I saw him _____[23] walking, with the brick under his arm.

I stopped him and gave him _____[24] pounds. He thanked me and told me that some people had _____[25] to help him when they knew why he was doing this. He would go and ask _____[26] for work. Before leaving, he asked if I would give him the _____[27]. I did.

Several years later, a well-dressed man greeted me on a train. Seeing I was not sure who he was, he _____[28] that he was the brick man and had his own business now. "You know, I still keep that brick and always value it as the most _____[29] thing I have as it has brought me luck and success." _____[30], it was not the brick that made the man successful, but his faithfulness (坚定) in doing even a very little thing.

16. A. courage　B. money
C. plan　D. time
17. A. funny　B. sick
C. serious　D. strong
18. A. As long as　B. As soon as
C. Even if　D. Ever since
19. A. certainly　B. bravely
C. really　D. usually
20. A. break　B. carry
C. fix　D. hide
21. A. business　B. lesson
C. programme　D. research
22. A. planned　B. prepared
C. promised　D. suggested
23. A. also　B. already
C. even　D. still
24. A. four　B. five　C. six　D. seven
25. A. continued　B. forgotten
C. offered　D. refused
26. A. him　B. them　C. me　D. her
27. A. brick　B. chance
C. job　D. bread
28. A. explained　B. imagined
C. realised　D. supposed
29. A. beautiful　B. expensive
C. important　D. interesting
30. A. As a result　B. At last
C. In a word　D. In fact

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

Dear Susan,

How are you? I'm going to visit Hong Kong with Mum and Dad next month. We'll arrive on the second of August. It's so exciting! We can meet each other soon!

I will spend a day in Ocean Park on the third of August. I know that you've visited Ocean Park many times before. Can you give me some advice on what to see in Ocean Park?

I would also like to visit you at your home on the fourth of August. Are you free on that day? I've bought a present for you. I think you'll love it.

By the way, would you like to go to Disneyland with me? I really want to take some photos with you in Disneyland. You know, I love the famous cartoon characters of Disney such as Snow White and Mickey Mouse very much. I know you love them too.

When can you go to Disneyland with me? Please let me know. I'll stay until the ninth of August and go back to England on that day.

See you soon.

Love,

Lily

31. When will Lily arrive in Hong Kong?
A. On the second of August.
B. On the third of August.
C. On the fourth of August.
D. On the ninth of August.

32. How long will Lily spend in Ocean Park?
A. Half a day.
B. One day.
C. One and a half days.
D. Two days.

33. What will Lily do on the fourth of August?
A. Buy a present.
B. Visit Ocean Park.
C. Go back to England.
D. Visit Susan at her home.

34. What will Lily do in Disneyland?
A. Take photos.
B. Watch a cartoon.
C. See a film of Mickey Mouse.
D. Read the story of Snow White.

35. Lily wants to know _____.
A. if Susan has received her present
B. when she will go back to England
C. if Susan can meet her at the airport
D. when Susan can go to Disneyland with her

四、根据汉语提示写出单词（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

36. Our teacher has lots of _____（经验）in teaching. So he often makes his class active.

37. It's an important _____（经历）to travel to the park by bike.

38. Our classmates _____（除了……以外）Timmy have been to these places of natural beauty.

39. Have you written down all the important _____（要点）on the blackboard?

40. Simon lives in a big family. But he doesn't know all his _____（亲戚）names.

五、根据句子意思，从方框中选择适当的词组并用其适当的形式填空（每小题 2 分，共 10 分）

at the end of, have been to, have been in, a couple of, have gone to

41. My father _____ Shanghai many times. He loves the city very much.

42. —Why is your sister's English so good?
—Because she _____ London for two years.

43. Tom won't come to the meeting this Friday. He _____ Beijing.

44. _____ us haven't been to the Great Wall.

45. You can find the fruit shop _____ that street.

六、任务型阅读（每小题 1 分，共 10 分）

Travelling is a very good activity. When you get tired of your work or study, and when you have free time, you can go to beautiful places to enjoy the beauty of nature or other cities. You can breathe fresh air, meet different people and make friends with them. It's good for your health to do so.

But sometimes, travelling is not an enjoyable thing. For example, the weather can be changeable. There may be rain when you travel. You may catch a cold or be ill while travelling. The worst thing is that the thieves may steal（偷）your money. All these may happen to a tourist.

When you go on a trip, you must get everything ready. Firstly, you must have clear information about the weather. Secondly, ask a friend to go with you so that you can help each other. Thirdly, you must be careful everywhere and try not to cause accidents. If you do so, you will surely enjoy your travel.

Title: _____[46]	
Advantage	You can enjoy the _____[47] view of nature. There will be a lot of fresh air around you. It can make you _____[48].
Disadvantage	Sometimes it may _____[49] when you travel. You may get _____[50] while travelling. The _____[51] thing is that your money will be stolen.
_____[52]	At first, you should know about the weather _____[53]. Secondly, you should invite somebody to go _____[54] with you. Thirdly, do everything _____[55]. Don't cause any accidents.

七、书面表达（30 分）

假如你叫李华，去年夏天，你和父母去厦门旅行。请根据提示，以“My Best Holiday”为题用英文写一篇短文，谈谈你这次的厦门之行。词数 100 左右。

旅行时间	去年夏天
旅行目的地	厦门
人物	我和我的父母
本次旅行所发生的事	第一天逛街；第二天游览景点；第三天购买纪念品……
你的感受	……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 过关测试

(答案见217页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. —_____ does your new friend look like?
—He is tall with short blonde hair and big blue eyes.
A. How　B. Who　C. What　D. Where

2. If you want to get more information about English learning, please visit our _____: *www. yyxx. com.*
A. company　B. store
C. office　D. website

3. The computer _____ a television, doesn't it?
A. is like　B. like
C. looks like　D. looks

4. Yao Ming is famous _____ playing basketball.
A. to　B. as　C. for　D. between

5. When the young man stepped into the university, he dreamed _____ a chance to go abroad for further study.
A. to have　B. having
C. to having　D. of having

6. The environment here becomes better and better. _____ birds are coming back.
A. Thousands of　B. Thousand of
C. Thousands　D. Thousand

7. —Do you mind my _____ the window?
—_____. It is really cold outside.
A. close; No, not at all
B. closing; No, not at all
C. close; Yes, please
D. closing; Yes, please

8. —Thanks for listening to my problem and giving me your advice, Amy.
—_____. That's what friends are for.
A. My pleasure　B. With pleasure
C. Never mind　D. It's nice of you

9. This morning I _____ some new restaurants on the Internet for I wanted to take Mia to a nice restaurant for her birthday.
A. picked up　B. looked up
C. cleaned up　D. gave up

10. —May I have a look at the magazine *China Today*?
—Certainly. _____.
A. Thank you　B. It's a pity
C. Here you are　D. I'd like to

11. My friend's new restaurant in Wanda Plaza(万达广场) _____ two years ago, but I _____ there so far.
A. has opened; haven't been
B. was open; haven't been
C. opened; haven't gone
D. has been open; haven't gone

12. I can't find my wallet anywhere. I'm sure I _____ it.
A. lost　B. will lose　C. lose　D. have lost

13. —_____ do you visit your grandparents, Tim?
—Once a week.
A. How many　B. How long
C. How much　D. How often

14. I _____ a room online before we visited the city.
A. ordered B. needed C. bought D. booked

15. —Would you mind my turning up the TV? The New Year's concert has just begun.
—_____. Just go ahead.
A. Please don't　B. Better not
C. I'm afraid not　D. Of course not

二、完形填空(每小题1.5分,共15分)

Riding a Mobike on the street, you might hear some people speaking Chinese aloud. Turning to the right, you see a Sichuan-style restaurant. After walking into a store you see that Huawei smartphones are _____[16].

But you're not in China—you're in Manchester in Britain. In fact, you might see _____[17] things in many other cities. People have _____[18] Chinese products (产品) all over the world.

Chinese food has been enjoyed in western countries for a long time. To _____[19] local people's tastes, Chinese restaurants have made some changes to the _____[20]. Unlike Chinese, Australian people don't like to eat meat with the bone _____[21]. So Chinese restaurants there provide big pieces of meat without bones, _____[22] for fish.

Some Chinese brands (品牌) are also becoming more _____[23]. In many cities in Europe stores sell TCL televisions, Haier fridges and Lenovo computers. And more than half of US-owned drones (无人机) are Chinese models. They're not simply made in China, but designed and developed in the _____[24].

In the past, most western people thought Chinese products were cheap and not dependable. But now, things have changed greatly. Made in China becomes cool. More and more people _____[25] Chinese brands.

16. A. for fun　B. at work
C. on sale　D. in use

17. A. similar　B. different
C. common　D. unusual

18. A. stored　B. collected
C. received　D. accepted

19. A. meet　B. copy
C. spread　D. answer

20. A. kitchens　B. drinks
C. dishes　D. services

21. A. up　B. out　C. on　D. in

22. A. just　B. even　C. yet　D. still

23. A. traditional　B. expensive
C. practical　D. popular

24. A. country　B. circle
C. field　D. town

25. A. sell　B. believe
C. improve　D. question

三、阅读理解(每小题2分,共10分)

The well-known "four great new inventions" of modern China have made our daily lives more convenient.

High-speed trains



China created its first high-speed railway line in 2008. Since then, the number of passenger trips has grown by over 30 percent every year. By 2016, more than 5 billion trips had been taken on the trains. By 2020, one-fifth of the country's 150,000-km railway network will be used by the trains. This network will link more than 80 percent of major cities across China.

Mobile payment



Mobile payment is turning China into a "careless society". Instead of paying by cash (现金), customers now pay for their goods and some kinds of bills simply by typing a short password into the Alipay or Wechat Pay app on their mobile phone.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Shared bikes



China has surprised the world with how quickly shared bikes are widely used. Nowadays, bike users can simply pick up or park the bike on the street through GPS and smartphone apps. China's two leading bike-sharing companies, Mobike and Ofo, have been opening their overseas markets in Singapore, the UK and the United States.

Online shopping



With around 751 million Internet users, China has been the world's largest and fastest-growing online shopping market. Because of lower costs and fewer licensing requirements（执照要求）, it's easier for sellers to open an online shop in China. In 2016, more than 20 million jobs of rural areas were created, with over 8.1 million running their own online shops.

26. What's the passage mainly about?
A. The fast-developing technology.
B. Modern China.
C. China's four great new inventions.
D. Convenient daily lives in China.

27. By 2020, more than _____ of major cities across China will be linked by high-speed railway network.
A. 30%　　B. 50%
C. 80%　　D. 20%

28. Mobile payment makes shopping more convenient in China because customers _____.
A. can go shopping without mobile phones
B. needn't take cash
C. don't have to use a password
D. needn't pay for the bills

29. Shared bikes can be picked up or parked _____.
A. on the street　　B. in Mobike and Ofo
C. in parks　　D. in markets

30. _____ can make online shopping develop so fast in China.
A. Lower costs
B. Fewer licensing requirements
C. More job chances
D. A, B & C

四、根据汉语提示写出单词（每小题2分，共10分）

31. Melbourne is an _____（澳大利亚）city. It is not very far from Sydney.

32. We should try our best to keep the teenagers from those unhealthy _____（网站）.

33. Where is my _____（护照）? I can't find it.

34. —Thank you for helping me with my homework.
—My _____（乐事）.

35. If you go to England for a trip, you need to take some _____（英镑）.

五、根据句子意思，从方框中选择适当的词并用其适当的形式填空（每小题2分，共10分）

book, turn, pick, relax, dream of

36. Would you mind _____ down the music? The baby is sleeping.

37. My father usually _____ himself by listening to pop music.

38. My brother Tom shows an interest in outer space and _____ becoming an astronaut.

39. He went to his uncle's big farm and _____ apples for him last month.

40. It's not easy for us _____ train tickets a few days before the Spring Festival.

六、任务型阅读（每小题2分，共10分）

A TV program has become popular in China recently. It has made people all over China become interested in writing Chinese characters（汉字）.

The increasing use of computers and smart phones has left most young people hardly able to write by hand. Many of them are even unable to remember the 10,000 characters used in daily life without electronic help.

CCTV started the Chinese Character Dictation Competition to improve the population's handwriting skills. Contestants（参与者）on the show were school pupils, but it was found that 70 % of adults in the audience（观众）were unable to remember how to write the word "chan chu".

Because computers allow people to type characters simply by entering pinyin, they don't need to remember how to write them. "The keyboard age has had a big influence on the handwriting of Chinese characters." Guan Zhengwen, who designed and directed the show said. He added that he hoped to encourage people to keep it alive as an art form.

Hao Mingjian, an editor of a magazine, putting his heart into Chinese characters, said, "Learning Chinese characters goes on throughout your life. If you stop using them for a long time, it is very likely that you will forget them."

Answer the questions according to the passage.

41. Are Chinese people interested in writing Chinese characters now?

42. What has left most young people hardly able to write by hand?

43. Why did CCTV start the Chinese Character Dictation Competition?

44. How do computers allow people to type characters simply?

45. What can you learn from the passage?

七、书面表达（30分）

请以"A day trip to Yangzhou"为题，根据以下提示用英文写一篇100词左右的短文。

时间	地点	活动
上午	瘦西湖 the Slender West Lake	欣赏美景、划船、拍照
中午	富春茶社 Fuchun Tea House	品尝当地传统美食
下午	大明寺 Daming Temple	了解历史
晚上	双东街区 the Traditional Double-dong Blocks	购物，为朋友买纪念品
谈谈自己的感受		

A day trip to Yangzhou

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 过关测试

(答案见219页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. Yesterday's concert was _____ great success. All the people showed interest in it.
A. the　B. an　C. a　D. /

2. The teachers hope all of us can hand _____ our homework _____ time every day.
A. up; in　B. out; on
C. on; in　D. in; on

3. —Could you please give me some _____ on how to learn English _____?
—Sure. Practice makes perfect.
A. advice; well　B. advice; good
C. advices; well　D. suggestion; well

4. My home is far from my school. Luckily, I _____ the early bus every morning.
A. try to catch　B. fail to catch
C. manage to catch　D. rush to miss

5. —Mom, _____ I go out with my friends now?
—Sure, but you _____ clean up your bedroom first.
A. can; need　B. may; have to
C. must; need　D. need; must

6. Time waits for no man. But some people won't realize the importance of time _____ it's gone.
A. as　B. since　C. when　D. until

7. My father wants me to _____ doing my homework as soon as I get home.
A. stand for
B. win the heart of
C. stay in touch with
D. get into the habit of

8. Jane is very busy these days, for she has a lot of problems to _____.
A. deal with　B. keep up with
C. agree with　D. come up with

9. A ship crashed _____ the rocks last night.
A. against　B. on　C. across　D. through

10. The teachers hope all of us can hand _____ our homework _____ time every day.
A. up; in　B. out; on
C. on; in　D. in; on

11. Vivian refuses _____ her children to the weekend training centre for extra classes.
A. to send　B. sending　C. sent　D. sends

12. Learning Chinese really _____ my mind to the Chinese world.
A. called up　B. turned up
C. opened up　D. made up

13. —Is Mrs Liu a teacher with a lot of teaching _____?
—Yes, she is. But she had some bad _____ at the beginning.
A. experiences; experience
B. experience; experiences
C. experience; experience
D. experiences; experiences

14. There are _____ interesting books in our library that I don't know _____ first.
A. so many; how to read
B. so much; which to read
C. so many; which to read
D. so much; how to read

15. —Could you please tell me something about the two _____?
—_____. They are exchange students of No. 1 Middle School.
A. Frenchmen; Yes, please
B. Frenchmans; Come on
C. Germen; Not at all
D. Germans; All right

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)

It was two days before Christmas, and David wanted to give a card to everyone in the class. He opened the bag and looked _____[16]. "What are you looking for?" his mom asked. "Ms. Ross gave us a _____[17] of everyone in her class," said David. "I can't find mine. If I don't have my list, I won't know what names to put on the cards."

"Take _____[18] out and we'll look for it together," suggested Mom. They shook out all his books and _____[19] all the pockets in his bag, but no list. "Now I can't give out cards at school," David said sadly.

"Don't give up (放弃) so _____[20]," said Mom. She took a piece of paper and asked him how many children are in his class. "Seventeen," answered David. "I'll never _____[21] them all."

"Wait," said Mom, numbering the paper one to seventeen. "Now, who do you often play with?" "Brian, Todd and John." She wrote down their _____[22]. "And who sits in the first row in your classroom?" "Hmm... Angie, Jill and Brad." David tried to remember what his _____[23] looked like and who sat where. "And Rebecca, Travis and Erin in the second row." David's mom wrote as fast as she could.

Now, they had _____[24] names. Who had he missed? David thought hard.

"Why don't you write out the _____[25] that you have names for?" said Mom. "Maybe you'll think of the _____[26] name while you're writing."

David picked out a card. He _____[27] it and then put it into the envelope. He did this sixteen times. "_____[28] is missing?" One more time he thought about who sat where in his classroom.

_____[29] he said, "I know! I know who is missing from the list!"

"Who?" said Mom.

"We forgot _____[30]!" David said. "I'm going to wish me a Merry Christmas, too."

16. A. outside　B. inside
C. down　D. up
17. A. list　B. note　C. book　D. bill
18. A. something　B. everything
C. more　D. less
19. A. checked　B. touched
C. found　D. cleaned
20. A. luckily　B. happily
C. easily　D. carefully
21. A. remember　B. understand
C. accept　D. believe
22. A. rules　B. numbers
C. names　D. addresses
23. A. bedroom　B. study
C. school　D. classroom
24. A. fifteen　B. sixteen
C. seventeen　D. eighteen
25. A. posters　B. letters
C. cards　D. messages
26. A. missing　B. interesting
C. common　D. strange
27. A. signed　B. drew
C. watched　D. enjoyed
28. A. What　B. Whose
C. Which　D. Who
29. A. Sadly　B. Suddenly
C. Secretly　D. Unluckily
30. A. you　B. him　C. her　D. me

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解（每小题2分，共10分）

All I Want for Christmas Is You
By Mariah Carey; illustrated by Colleen Madden
Age: for 3 – 7 years
Price: $17.99
On Sale: Dec. 10, 2019
Pages: 32
Mariah Carey's *All I Want for Christmas Is You*, one of the best-selling and most famous songs of all time, brings Christmas joy to many listeners of all ages every year. And now its beautiful lyrics will bring the same holiday spirit to readers of all ages in this one-of-a-kind picture book about a young girl whose greatest Christmas wish is for a new little dog!

A Bear's Year
By Kathy Duval; illustrated by Gerry Turley
Age: for 4 – 8 years
Price: $18.99
On Sale: Nov. 27, 2019
Pages: 40
In this book, readers will follow a mother bear and her kids through the course of a year. Deep in her den under the heavy snow, Mama and her newborn babies sleep soundly. When spring arrives, the bears wake up, and as the weather warms to summer, Mama teaches her young ones to fish. Then, in fall, the leaves turn gold, food grows less and less, and the family prepares for hibernation and the coming winter.

The Only Child
By Guojing
Age: for 5 – 9 years
Price: $22.99
On Sale: Dec. 1, 2019
Pages: 112
A little girl—lost and alone—follows a stag deep into the woods, and like Alice, down the rabbit hole, she finds herself in a strange world. But…home and family are very far away. How will she get back there?

31. Who wrote *A Bear's Year*?
A. Mariah Carey.
B. Colleen Madden.
C. Kathy Duval.
D. Gerry Turley.

32. It's Dec. 8th. Mr Black wanted to give his little daughter a book as a Christmas present, and he'd better buy _____.
A. *All I Want for Christmas Is You*
B. *A Bear's Year*
C. *The Only Child*
D. *The Perfect Dog*

33. What does the underlined word "hibernation" mean?
A. 物品　　B. 冬眠
C. 运动　　D. 迁移

34. *The Only Child* is mainly about _____.
A. a young girl's Christmas wish
B. the only girl in a family
C. a girl who lost her way in a city
D. a lost girl who lived in the forest

35. We can find the information in _____.
A. a clothes store　　B. a bookstore
C. a movie theater　　D. a school library

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题2分，共10分）

36. In my hometown, there was a big old tree _____（在……对面）the school.

37. He got valuable _____（经验）while working on the project.

38. We _____（设法完成）to get to the airport in time.

39. Enjoy reading, children! You can get more _____（知识）.

40. We are going to Paris next week. It's a good chance to try some _____（法国）dishes.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题2分，共10分）

41. Daniel doesn't know what _____（do）next. Could you give him some advice?

42. The book sells well. We have sold out millions of _____（copy）already.

43. Our new English teacher comes from a small _____（Canada）town.

44. Do you know the _____（write）of that book?

45. This is probably the _____（ugly）painting I've ever seen.

六、任务型阅读，将方框里的句子还原到文章当中（每小题2分，共10分）

A. the better the child's chances are to become a successful reader
B. how your child's getting on in school
C. consider meeting privately（私下地）with the teacher
D. it is important to take part in school open hours
E. there are other schoolchildren who have problems reading

It is important to know how your child is doing through reports from the teacher. Also, _____[46] when teachers have time to discuss children's progress with their parents.

If you think your child can do better, _____[47]. The teacher will be able to tell you what you might do to help. Then pay attention to _____[48]. If you do not see a difference in performance in 6 to 8 weeks, discuss with your child's teacher again.

Some children have problems in reading. One of the reasons is poor speech and language development. But _____[49] because of a learning habit. Whatever the reason or nature of a child's reading problem is, the earlier the difficulty is discovered, _____[50]. The good news is that no matter how long it takes, children can learn to read. One of the most important things you can do for your children's schoolwork is to cheer them up. Help them have the confidence to keep trying.

七、书面表达（30分）

目前中学生学习任务重，学习压力大。而广泛的阅读有利于开阔视野，调节身心。在课业学习和生活中，你喜欢阅读吗？你喜欢阅读什么样的书呢？作为中学生的你，是如何看待阅读的呢？请就这个话题，谈谈你的想法和理由，可适当给出建议。

注意：①词数：80左右；

②文中不得出现真实的地名、校名和人名；

③要求条理清楚，语意连贯，字迹工整，可适当发挥。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 过关测试

(答案见220页)

限时:60分钟 满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名 学号 班级 学校 密 封 线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. She doesn't like swimming. I don't like swimming, _____.
A. also B. too
C. as well D. either

2. Don't talk _____. Your grandmother is sleeping now.
A. loud B. hardly
C. loudly D. hard

3. He said he would come to see us _____ the next afternoon.
A. sometime B. every time
C. sometimes D. some times

4. —Jane's spoken English is pretty good.
—Yeah, she works hard and practices _____ it both in and out of class.
A. spoke B. to spoke
C. speaking D. speak

5. "Excuse me, is there a library in your school?" the boy asked me _____.
A. polite B. politely
C. impolite D. impolitely

6. Don't _____ if you want to be a polite person.
A. cut up B. cut in line
C. wait in line D. cut down

7. Which sign means "No photos"?
A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

8. Oh, look at the hall. It's _____ to hold hundreds of people.
A. tall enough B. big enough
C. too tall D. too big

9. _____, you can't tell this to anyone else.
A. All above B. Above all
C. In all D. At all

10. You always leave the tap _____. It's a bad habit.
A. run B. to run
C. running D. runs

11. I didn't pass the math exam last month. _____, how do you study for a math test?
A. By accident B. By mistake
C. By the way D. By the time

12. Mr Li is very patient and he often _____ lots of time _____ things to us.
A. takes; to explain
B. spends; explaining
C. takes; explain
D. spends; explain

13. —Mum, I don't have anybody to play with. Can I have a pet?
—_____Our apartment is too small.
A. Why not? B. I hope so.
C. Anything else? D. I'm afraid not.

14. Everyone should _____ litter whenever he sees it on the floor.
A. give up B. mix up
C. pick up D. use up

15. —If you keep practicing speaking French every day, you'll be better at it.
—_____.
A. Practice makes perfect
B. Many hands make light work
C. Put all your eggs in one basket
D. Burn the candle at both ends

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)

Around the world, people have different ideas about what good manners are.

When you go to restaurants in different parts of the world, it's _____[16] to know the right and wrong things to do. For example, in China it's OK to _____[17] a lot of noise in a restaurant. In fact, if a restaurant isn't noisy and _____[18], you may think there's something _____[19] with it. However, in many Western countries, restaurants are _____[20] places. If a table is too loud, other people who are eating there might even _____[21] to the owner of the restaurant.

Paying the bill is also different from country to country. In China, one person usually pays for _____[22]. In Western countries, one person pays if he or she is treating guests(宴请宾客), but _____[23] friends eat together, they usually _____[24] the cost. This is called "going Dutch(均摊费用)". Also, when Westerners pay the bill, they usually leave some money for the _____[25]. This is called "leaving a tip". Leaving a tip is thought to be _____[26]. In the US, it's _____[27] to leave tips 10%, 15%, or 20% of the bill, which is decided _____[28] how good the service is. Good waiters can make a lot of money!

The way people eat food is _____[29] in the world, but you can _____[30] the same kind of food in many countries. Chinese and Italian food, for example, are popular all over the world.

16. A. popular B. difficult
C. important D. enjoyable
17. A. cause B. keep C. hear D. make
18. A. lively B. friendly
C. lucky D. polite
19. A. right B. wrong
C. important D. polite
20. A. noisy B. quiet C. busy D. clean
21. A. shout B. explain
C. complain D. speak
22. A. everybody B. nobody
C. somebody D. none
23. A. until B. when C. unless D. since
24. A. share B. take C. pay D. have
25. A. gatekeeper B. seller
C. waiter D. visitor
26. A. impolite B. polite
C. wrong D. forgetful
27. A. terrible B. common
C. serious D. unusual
28. A. to B. for C. with D. by
29. A. same B. difficult
C. different D. delicious
30. A. invent B. discover
C. prefer D. find

三、阅读理解(每小题2分,共10分)

Dear Sunday Globe,

I am writing to tell you about your article *Smartphones Make Life Easier* in last Sunday's newspaper. You did an excellent job explaining the good points of smartphones, but you didn't talk about their bad points at all. So, I hope you'll let me give your readers some advice on smartphone etiquette(礼仪).

The first point I'd like to address is loudness. When you talk on your smartphone in public, please don't shout. In fact, the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

microphones in smartphones are very sensitive(灵敏的). So, you can be heard even if you speak quietly.

Another point is about personal space. I don't think it is polite to make calls in small spaces full of people. This makes others uncomfortable and forces them to listen to your personal business. What's worse, it stops many face-to-face conversations from the beginning.

Lastly, doing two things at the same time is dangerous. For example, making calls while driving is a bad habit. Pay attention to the road! Similarly, when staying with your friends, turn off your smartphone and enjoy their company.

Yours truly,
Amber Jala

31. Amber Jala wrote the letter to _____.
A. find a good job
B. provide advice
C. make her life easier
D. buy a smartphone

32. What does the underlined word "address" in Paragraph 2 probably mean?
A. 致函 B. 称呼 C. 陈述 D. 选址

33. According to Paragraph 3, what makes people around you uncomfortable?
A. Discussing face to face.
B. Speaking quietly on your phone.
C. Minding your own business.
D. Calling in small spaces full of people.

34. What can we learn from the last paragraph?
A. It is dangerous to drive on the road.
B. It is easy to start a gathering with others.
C. It is bad to turn off our phones while driving.
D. It is important to use our smarthpones properly.

35. How many suggestions did Jala write?
A. One. B. Two. C. Three. D. Four.

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题2分，共10分）

36. Please don't get off the _____(话题) we're discussing.

37. When talking to British people, we should _____ (避免) subjects like age, weight or money.

38. South Korean Prime Minister said sorry to the _____(公众) for the April 16th ferry disaster.

39. The artist always _____(表达) his world view in his works.

40. I think it's necessary for travelers to learn some _____(正确的) manners in foreign countries.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题2分，共10分）

41. Everybody will be lucky or _____ (success) sometime in their life.

42. It is _____(polite) to talk loudly in public places like a library.

43. They all avoid _____ (talk) about that.

44. Mr Smith had a _____(discuss) with us about the film just now.

45. The teacher often warns the students _____(not eat) in the classroom.

六、任务型阅读(每小题2分,共10分)

Some etiquette(礼仪)in modern life

Do you often use a cellphone? Do you take the subway to school every day? These items make our modern life easier. But do you know how we should behave properly while using them? The following suggestions might be helpful.

For cellphone users

◆Keep your voice down when you make a phone call in public. Shouting on the phone may make others feel uncomfortable. And you'd better not use it during an appointment (约会).

◆Stop sending messages or playing games with your cellphone at a dinner or a party. It's a good time to communicate (交流) with your family and friends.

◆Don't make or answer a call while driving. It is not only very dangerous for both you and your passengers but also against the law.

For subway passengers

◆You are supposed to wait in line while buying tickets and getting on the subway.

◆You're not allowed to eat, drink or smoke on the subway train. The smell and noise may trouble others. It's our duty to keep the train clean and tidy. Besides, smoking is bad for health.

◆You can't take pets on the train. As we all know, animals may spread diseases (传播疾病) and get the train dirty.

◆You'd better not lie across the subway seats even if the train isn't crowded. Offering your seat to someone who needs it is regarded as good manners.

阅读短文,填表格。

Titles:Some etiquette in modern life

Items (项目)	Dos	Don'ts
Cellphone users	Keep your _____[46] down in public.	● Don't send messages or play games at a dinner or a party. ● Don't make or answer _____[47] while driving.
_____[48]	● Wait in line. ● Keep the train _____[49]. ● Offer your seat to someone who needs it.	● Don't eat, drink or smoke on the train. ● _____[50] on the train. ● Don't lie across the subway seats.

七、书面表达(30分)

为配合我市开展“创建文明城市(build a civilized city)”活动,学校举办以“How to Behave Well”为主题的英语征文比赛。现在请你根据所给提示内容,用英语写一篇参赛短文。

提示:1. 衣着整洁;
2. 保持环境卫生;
3. 待人有礼,乐于助人;
4. 遵守交通规则;
5. ……

要求:①文章必须包括所给提示中的1—4项内容,可展开思路,适当发挥;

②文中不能出现考生的真实姓名、校名和其他真实信息;

③词数:100左右。

How to Behave Well

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 过关测试

(答案见221页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. Mr. Jiang, as _____ elderly man, took part in the Special Games for _____ elderly, and finished _____ second in the race.
A. a; the; the　B. an; the; /
C. an; an; the　D. the; an; /

2. It's _____ for you to keep secrets for your friends. In this way, you can win their trust.
A. strange　B. necessary
C. possible　D. lucky

3. —Is this photo taken at Qinhu Lake?
—Yes. You can see the open water in the _____ of the photo.
A. form　B. color　C. background　D. size

4. Whenever you have a chance _____ English, you should take it.
A. speak　B. to speak
C. spoke　D. speaks

5. This restaurant _____ people _____ delicious food.
A. provides; for　B. offers; to
C. provides; with　D. offers; with

6. —Jack, I have _____ working out the math problem.
—Don't worry. Let me help you.
A. fun　B. trouble
C. experience　D. pleasure

7. I believe she will _____ her dream some day.
A. complete　B. finish　C. achieve　D. get

8. —Do you think your appearance is _____ help when you look for a new job?
—Well, it all depends. Anyway, it may give me _____ chances to try.
A. a; many more　B. /; much more
C. a; much more　D. /; many more

9. —I find it difficult to learn English well. I want to drop it.
—English is very important in our daily life. Never _____.
A. give up it　B. give it up
C. give away it　D. give it away

10. We feel like _____ some food and drink because we'll invite some friends _____ in a party.
A. buying; to join　B. to buy; joining
C. buying; join　D. to buy; to join

11. It is necessary for us students _____ the listening ability.
A. to improve　B. improving
C. to improve　D. improves

12. What time do you expect her _____?
A. arrive　B. is arriving
C. arriving　D. to arrive

13. I have many hobbies, _____ singing, dancing, playing the piano and so on.
A. for example　B. as an example
C. such for　D. such as

14. —Let me help you carry the box, Granny.
—Thank you, Li Lei. It's very nice _____ you _____ me.
A. of; to help　B. for; to help
C. of; helping　D. for; helping

15. Millie made a few mistakes in the exam _____ her carelessness.
A. because　B. so that
C. as a result　D. because of

二、完形填空(每小题1.5分,共15分)

As a foreigner, it's hard for me to tell what Chinese people are like. But my _____[16] in Beijing said something.

A couple of weeks ago, I went to buy four big suitcases (行李箱) for travel. _____[17] I was going down the street, it suddenly rained heavily. A stranger called me into his little shop. He _____[18] me a cup of tea and a chair. When the rain got _____[19], I thanked him and rushed to a _____[20] nearby to buy my suitcases.

If you've ever tried to push four big suitcases by yourself, you may understand my _____[21]. I looked silly, for the suitcases were dancing wildly across the floor. Then I got a _____[22] on the shoulder. It was the shop owner. He signed that I should wait. A few minutes later, he _____[23] in a car, and put the suitcases inside. Then we went driving _____[24] along the road to my home. I offered him some money, but he _____[25]. In broken English he said, "Feel good... help you."

Now, you can see Chinese people are always ready to help you.

16. A. friend　B. teacher
C. invention　D. experience

17. A. If　B. As　C. Although　D. Because

18. A. found　B. bought
C. made　D. offered

19. A. harder　B. lighter
C. thicker　D. faster

20. A. store　B. hall　C. lab　D. school

21. A. language　B. sentence
C. situation　D. advantage

22. A. wing　B. coin　C. scarf　D. touch

23. A. lay down　B. drove up
C. fell behind　D. went away

24. A. happily　B. lazily　C. bravely　D. poorly

25. A. missed　B. nodded
C. refused　D. failed

三、阅读理解(每小题2分,共10分)

Clothes Donation(捐赠) **Box**

Have you ever put your old clothes into the donation box in your neighborhood? If not, you can do it right now because the clothes donation is becoming a trend(趋势) in Urumqi.

"From time to time, my mother clears out the clothes which I no longer wear. You know, we teenagers are growing fast. I think it's a good way to help others," Lin Tao, a junior student says.

"I often pick out some of my clothes which are out of style after going shopping. Then I'll put them into the donation box," Miss Li, a pretty young lady says.

"That seems like a good idea. Some clothes in the box are quite new. People can either wear them or use them to make things such as handbags and pencil cases," Mrs. Wang, an old woman says. "Sometimes I also look through the box for some nice clothes."

However, there are some problems along with the popularity of clothes donation. Recently, a UTV reporter from *Focus on the City* has made a survey. Here are the results:

◆The box is full of clothes in a short time. There is no more room for people to give away clothes.

◆Some people sell the clothes in the donation box for making money instead of wearing them.

◆Some communities set the box in unsuitable places. So there are few clothes in it.

◆Many clothes are too old and shabby (破烂的).

"What's worse," one of the staff in a community added, "we quite often see people throw rubbish into the box when they

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

pass by. We've tried to stop them several times but failed. It has been the most serious problem since we set the box."

In order to make the donation box work in an efficient（有效的）way, our government is taking action. The clothes donation will be better-organized and it'll be more convenient for people in need to take the clothes away.

26. Miss Li gives away her clothes because _____.
A. her clothes are out of style
B. her mother clears out her clothes
C. she is growing too fast
D. she wants to make something

27. The reporter from UTV has collected _____.
A. 4 problems　B. 5 problems
C. 6 problems　D. 7 problems

28. All the problems about the donation box are included EXCEPT _____.
A. there's no more room for people to donate clothes
B. people choose unsuitable places to set the box
C. sometimes the box is broken by someone
D. the clothes in the box are too old and shabby

29. The underlined word "them" in Paragraph 4 means _____.
A. the clothes donation boxes
B. the old people
C. handbags and pencil cases
D. some clothes in the box

30. We can infer（推断）from the passage that _____.
A. the clothes donation will be better-organized to help donators and people in need
B. the clothes donation becomes less popular than before because of serious problems
C. the clothes donation can prevent some girls from wearing clothes that are out of style
D. the clothes donation gives the traders a good idea to sell old clothes for making money

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题2分，共10分）

31. She is going to _____（西南方）China for a visit.
32. I remembered the scream and the _____ _____（鲜血）.
33. Is the bridge strong enough to _____（支持）two heavy trucks at the same time?
34. I offered my seat to a _____（肯的）woman on the bus yesterday.
35. He won first _____（奖）in the competition.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题2分，共10分）

36. It's _____（meaning）to watch the TV program named *Chinese Poetry Competition*. I love it very much.
37. My cousin will receive _____（train）in drawing.
38. She spent five years working _____（close）with UNICEF.
39. The patient is getting much better after the _____（operate）and now she can look after herself.
40. —Why are they so busy?
—Because they are raising money for _____（home）people.

六、任务型阅读（每小题2分，共10分）

Steve visits the nursing home near his house two afternoons each week. On one of those days, he reads to his friend Martin. On the other afternoon, he plays cards and talks with Mrs. Johnson. Steve enjoys spending his extra time this way. He is a volunteer. A volunteer is a person who helps another person or has a job for which he or she does not get paid. A volunteer donates his or her time for free.

Everyone else in Steve's family is also a volunteer. Steve's mother Mary volunteers one afternoon each week at the local hospital. She talks to patients, delivers flowers, and helps the nurses with odd jobs. Steve's sister Gina volunteers two afternoons at the museum. She welcomes visitors and answers their questions. Steve's father David is also a volunteer. He is a volunteer firefighter for the town in which they live.

Steve's family thinks volunteering is very important. Steve's parents think being a volunteer helps to teach values. Steve and his sister learn how to be kind and respect other people.

Steve's family does volunteer work to give something back to the community. They want to help people who are not as fortunate as they are.

A family of volunteers

Relationship	Name	Time per week	_____41_____	Doings
Father	David	Anytime necessary	Anywhere necessary	_____42_____
Mother	_____43_____	One afternoon	The local hospital	Talk to patients; Deliver flowers; Help nurses
Son	Steve	Two afternoons	_____44_____	Read to Martin; Talk and play with Mrs. Johnson
_____45_____	Gina	Two afternoons	The museum	Welcome visitors; Answer questions

七、书面表达（30分）

为落实市教育局关于加强英语听说教学的工作要求，你校开办了English Club，俱乐部正在招募会员。假如你是李林，请结合海报内容和所给提示，写一封英文信，申请加入该俱乐部。

要求：①信要包括所有提示内容，可适当发挥；

②信中不要涉及真实的人名和校名及其他相关信息，否则不予评分；

③词数：不少于80词，开头和结尾已经给出，不计入总词数。

English Club
Are you good at English listening and speaking?
Now your chance!
Activities: Watch English movies; Learn English songs; Hold English talent shows
Time: Every Tuesday, Thursday 6:30 p.m. – 8:00 p.m.
Come and join us!
Please write to Miss Gao!

提示：①Why do you want to join the English Club?

②Which activity do you like best in the club?

③What else do you want to do in the club?

Dear Miss Gao,

I'm Li Lin. I'm glad to see the poster in our school. _____

_____

I'm looking forward to your answer soon.

Yours,
Li lin

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 过关测试 (答案见222页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. The woman makes a living _____ selling newspapers.
A. by　B. past　C. as　D. for

2. The king didn't take any notice of the noise in the crowd and _____ with the parade.
A. carry on　B. carry out
C. carried on　D. carried out

3. Maybe he had some problems _____ his English study.
A. in　B. for
C. with　D. about

4. The people who are more confident have more _____ to make themselves successful.
A. education　B. chances
C. pride　D. excuses

5. —Who's the little girl in the photo, Laura?
—It's me. This photo _____ when I was five.
A. is taken　B. takes
C. was taken　D. took

6. —Why didn't you come to Jenny's birthday party yesterday?
—Because I _____.
A. didn't invite　B. isn't invited
C. wasn't invited　D. haven't invited

7. I won the first prize in the exam, so I was proud _____ myself.
A. in　B. of　C. at　D. to

8. David Burt's dream in China is to go into the west and _____ an early childhood school there.
A. clean up　B. look up
C. give up　D. set up

9. —Let's go to play soccer, Peter.
—I'm afraid not. I'll need one more hour before my homework _____.
A. has finished　B. finished
C. will be finished　D. is finished

10. The doctors are _____ a dying old man in the hospital.
A. operated on　B. operating on
C. operation　D. operating for

11. In China it is a custom to give kids lucky money _____ during the Spring Festival.
A. finally　B. luckily
C. simply　D. especially

12. —I hear the teacher has chosen five of us as volunteers. You _____, right?
—Yes. Some of us are chosen, _____ Tom, Jim and me.
A. have included; including
B. are included; including
C. are included; include
D. have included; include

13. —I'm afraid a car is too expensive for me.
—But more and more Chinese can _____ to buy one.
A. expect　B. afford
C. choose　D. offer

14. This pair of shoes _____ hand, and it _____ very comfortable.
A. is made with; is felt
B. are made from; is felt
C. are made of; feels
D. is made by; feels

15. —Is Doctor Wang _____ UNICEF volunteer?
—No, he is _____ ORBIS doctor. He has worked for it for years.
A. a; an　B. an; a
C. an; an　D. a; a

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)

Bags of Love

Last year, I worked in a middle school near my mother's house, and I stayed with her for a month. During that time, I helped her do some housework and buy some _____[16].

After the first week, I noticed that the food was _____[17] very quickly. Then I began keeping an eye on my mom. To my _____[18], I found that she would put some of the food into a paper _____[19] and go out with it at about nine every morning. And finally, I decided to _____[20] her. I saw her taking the food to the street _____[21]. She would also _____[22] a lot of time talking and playing with them.

One day, I talked to a neighbor and found out that my mom was _____[23] in the area. The children were very friendly with her and even thought of her as their own _____[24]. Then it hit me. Why wouldn't she want to tell me about it? Was she worried that I would stop buying food _____[25] I found out?

When my mom got home, I gave her a big hug. I told her she didn't need to keep it a _____[26] from me. And she told me something about the children. Some of them lived with an old lady in a small house. Others _____[27] on the street. For years, she was helping the poor street children by giving them food. After she told me everything, I was so _____[28] by how selfless (无私的) she was. She helped others in need. As her son, I was so _____[29] of my mom.

I _____[30] to buy food for my mom after that. But I always added one more bag for her other children.

16. A. drinks　B. clothes
C. food　D. fruit

17. A. cleared out　B. sold out
C. thrown away　D. eaten up

18. A. surprise　B. joy
C. disappointment　D. sadness

19. A. bag　B. box　C. bowl　D. basket

20. A. see　B. call　C. follow　D. catch

21. A. pupils　B. children
C. dogs　D. villagers

22. A. take　B. pay　C. cost　D. spend

23. A. bored　B. well-known
C. interested　D. relaxed

24. A. mother　B. teacher
C. sister　D. friend

25. A. although　B. unless
C. if　D. before

26. A. secret　B. challenge
C. joke　D. present

27. A. played　B. ran　C. cried　D. slept

28. A. angry　B. moved
C. disappointed　D. worried

29. A. surprised　B. tired
C. afraid　D. proud

30. A. stopped　B. refused
C. continued　D. hated

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、阅读理解(每小题2分,共10分)

"Make-A-Wish" is one of the world's most well-known charities (慈善机构). It makes wishes come true for children who have serious illnesses. It gives them hope and joy and helps them forget about their health problems and have fun.

It all started in 1980 in Phoenix, Arizona. Christopher was a 7-year-old boy who was very sick. He always dreamed of becoming a police officer. Tommy Austin and Ron Cox, two police officers, made his wish come true. They gave Christopher a tour of the city in a police helicopter(直升飞机) and made a real police uniform(制服) for him.

There are four kinds of wishes children usually have:

I wish to go. Children usually want to travel or go to a concert, a game or a park.

I wish to meet. Children sometimes want to meet their favourite actors, singers or players.

I wish to be. Some children wish to become actors, singers or police officers.

I wish to have. They often want to have a computer, a game, a bike or many other things.

Let's hope more wishes will come true in the future. People who work in the charity always try for the best. Almost 25,000 volunteers(志愿者) help, work or give money. Will you be one of them?

31. "Make-A-Wish" is a charity to help _____.
A. sick children
B. serious officers
C. famous actors
D. popular singers

32. What did the two police officers do for Christopher?
A. They gave him a computer.
B. They gave him a tour of the city.
C. They took him to a concert.
D. They took him to the hospital.

33. Which kind of wishes does Christopher have?
A. *I wish to go.* B. *I wish to meet.*
C. *I wish to be.* D. *I wish to have.*

34. The purpose of the last paragraph is to _____.
A. explain what "Make-A-Wish" is
B. encourage more people to join the charity
C. tell us how Christopher's wish came true
D. introduce different kinds of children's wishes

35. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
A. Sick children just wish to get well.
B. Christopher and Tommy are two officers.
C. A few people are working for "Make-A-Wish".
D. "Make-A-Wish" has a history of over 30 years.

四、根据汉语提示完成句子(每小题2分,共10分)

36. Please _____(检查) your test paper before you hand it in.

37. I need two more _____(秘书) to help me finish the task.

38. Although she is in her eighties, Tu Youyou still keeps on doing research on _____(医学).

39. We should prevent the _____(扩散) of some serious diseases.

40. Good sleep helps the body and brain grow and _____(发展).

五、用所给词的适当形式填空(每小题2分,共10分)

41. He can't go to school as others because of _____(blind).

42. The doctors are very proud _____(operate) on the patients successfully.

43. Enough tents _____(provide) for the people who lost their home in the storm last week.

44. As a good _____(read), you should know how to read the books you have.

45. I have made up my mind _____(read) some books and visit some places of interest.

六、任务型阅读(每小题2分,共10分)

Craig Kielburger was born in Canada on December 17th, 1982 and spent his childhood there. He often took part in sports, and he liked to help people. When Craig was twelve, he read a story in *Toronto Star* about a poor boy. The poor boy was killed because he fought for the rights of children. The poor boy was just twelve years old, too. After reading this article, Craig was so angry that he decided to help the children who should go to school instead of working in factories all day in some countries. So he gathered his friends and started a group the Twelve-Year-Olds. Soon many children joined them and they called the organization Free the Children. The organization has helped develop the education in Kenya, India, China and other countries. Today, they have built more than 700 schools and school rooms in these countries. They have also provided clean water and health care for more than one million people around the world.

Craig Kielburger and his organization	
What's the _____[46] of it	Free the Children
When he started it	at the _____[47] of 12
Why he started it	· read a _____[48] about a poor boy · knew many children in some countries couldn't go to school
What it has done	· helped develop the education in some countries · built _____[49] 700 schools and school rooms · _____[50] clean water and health care

七、书面表达(30分)

根据提示,写一篇关于王丽的过去和现在的短文。词数120左右。

提示:①王丽过去常早上5:00起床,整天干活;

②家里很穷,不能上学;

③一天,联合国儿童基金会的工作人员来到了村子里……;

④现在,王丽每天上学。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 过关测试

限时:60 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	总分
得分								

一、单项选择(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

1. He is a _____ person, but he is good at telling funny stories.
A. serious　B. patient
C. kind　D. humorous

2. —Are you going to Hainan after the examination?
—I'm not sure. It _____ my parents' time.
A. tries on　B. turns on
C. carries on　D. depends on

3. —I saw Tom's father bought lots of books yesterday.
—That's not strange. Not only Tom but also his father _____ reading.
A. enjoy　B. enjoys
C. enjoyed　D. enjoying

4. —Have you noticed that Anna's spoken English is greatly improved?
—Yes, she sets us a good example. Hard work always _____.
A. makes a deal　B. makes a difference
C. makes a problem　D. makes a decision

5. *The Shape of Water* was a big winner at the 90th Academy Awards, winning four Oscars: Best Production Design, Best Score, _____ Best Director and Best Picture.
A. as soon as　B. as well as
C. as much as　D. as good as

6. —Laiwu has developed a lot in the last few years.
—Yes. And the high-speed train _____ in 2020.
A. completes　B. is completed
C. will be completed　D. will complete

7. This year is the 49th Earth Day and I think we should call on people not to _____ too many trees.
A. cut down　B. cut up
C. cut off　D. cut out

8. —Have you finished your project?
—Not yet. I'll finish it if I _____ ten more minutes.
A. give　B. am given
C. will give　D. will be given

9. —We must act now because time is _____.
—OK. Let's start.
A. coming out　B. giving out
C. cutting out　D. running out

10. Don't play games on the computer all day. It's _____ to your eyes.
A. harmful　B. successful
C. helpful　D. thankful

11. The little boy saved every coin _____ he could buy his mother a present on Mother's Day.
A. as long as　B. so that
C. if only　D. even if

12. —Which show do you like better, *Running Man* or *The Reader*?
—*The Reader*, of course. _____ I _____ my brother likes it.
A. Both; and　B. Neither; nor
C. Either; or　D. Not only; but also

13. —Peter has changed a lot, hasn't he?
—Yes. He used to _____ the guitar, but now he is more _____ in playing soccer.
A. plays; interested　B. play; interested
C. play; interesting　D. playing; interest

14. Please _____ the TV. It's time to go to bed.
A. turn on　B. turn off
C. put on　D. put off

15. Their parents don't allow them _____ in the river because it's really dangerous.
A. swim　B. swimming
C. to swim　D. swam

二、完形填空(每小题 1.5 分,共 15 分)

One morning a fox was searching for his breakfast. He went down to the lake to [16] some fish. Suddenly he saw a rabbit digging a hole on the bank of the lake and decided to eat it instead. Not wanting the rabbit to discover him, the fox moved [17] towards his meal. As he got closer, he stepped on some dry leaves. The rabbit then [18] in fear. When he saw the fox, he started to shout.



"Quiet! Why do you rabbits shout so much?" asked the fox, slightly annoyed that he had lost his [19].

"I am sorry, but you scared me. Your sharp teeth make me [20]," replied the rabbit. "But I don't want to eat you," lied the fox, "I am only here to help with your [21]. I will be back tomorrow and help you dig your hole."

The next day, the fox returned to the [22]. There he saw a group of rabbits busily digging holes on the bank. He thought about catching one. At that moment the rabbit he had met the day before started jumping up and down, making a [23] noise to warn his friends. All the rabbits and even the fish quickly [24]. The poor fox could not find anything to catch for food and ended up [25] fruit.

16. A. catch　B. buy　C. smell　D. cook
17. A. noisily　B. silently
C. confidently　D. angrily
18. A. looked down　B. looked away
C. turned off　D. turned around
19. A. time　B. place　C. meal　D. fish
20. A. sad　B. excited
C. nervous　D. happy
21. A. food　B. work　C. story　D. friends
22. A. breakfast　B. house
C. lake　D. mountain
23. A. loud　B. low
C. usual　D. dangerous
24. A. returned　B. shouted
C. entered　D. disappeared
25. A. growing　B. eating
C. picking　D. selling

三、阅读理解(每小题 2 分,共 10 分)

How green are you? Do you know how to be green?

We all need a healthy environment, but we produce waste every day and it does harm to our environment. Though we are young, we can still do something to help. In fact, even the simplest everyday activities can make a real difference to the environment. Here are some ideas for you.

Reduce

Reduce means "use less". Don't waste things. This saves money and reduces pollution and waste going into the environment. Before we buy something new, think whether it is really necessary—or maybe the old one will be just as good! When we do buy things, choose local products if possible, and try not to buy too many things from abroad.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Reuse

Reuse means "use again". Use things for as long as possible. When we buy things, make sure that they last a long time. We should look after them so that they will last, and we should repair them if we can instead of throwing them away and buying new ones. Don't use a paper cup or a paper bag. It's better to use a china（瓷器）cup and a lunch box because you can use them again.

Recycle

Recycle means "change things into something else". Though it takes energy to change something into something else, it's better than throwing things away or burning them. Find out what can be recycled in your neighbourhood and take part in recycling programmes. We should also buy products made from recycled materials, such as recycled paper, to help save trees.

So please remember these three words: reduce, reuse and recycle.

根据短文内容，选出最佳选项。

26. What is the passage about?
A. How to produce things.
B. How to burn things.
C. How to help others.
D. How to be green.

27. Which of the following is RIGHT?
A. Don't waste things.
B. Always throw away old things.
C. Always buy new things.
D. Buy too many things from abroad.

28. Why is it better to use a china cup or a lunch box?
A. Because you can burn them.
B. Because you can use them again.
C. Because you can throw them away.
D. Because you can change them into something else.

29. To protect the environment, we should remember these three words: _____.
A. waste, reuse and recycle
B. repair, burn and recycle
C. reduce, reuse and recycle
D. reduce, waste and recycle

30. The passage may come from _____.
A. a menu　　B. a dictionary
C. a storybook　　D. a magazine

四、根据汉语提示完成句子（每小题2分，共10分）

31. Come on! Suzhou Museum is only a few _____（步）further.

32. Last December, a man who stole a shared bike was _____（罚款）1,000 *yuan* by the police.

33. You will be heavily _____（惩罚）if you don't obey these rules.

34. Bad weather sometimes _____（导致）natural disasters.

35. We _____（分开）the good ones from the bad ones before we sold the apples.

五、用所给词的适当形式填空（每小题2分，共10分）

36. Millie does her homework so _____(care) that she often makes some mistakes.

37. Making money isn't easy, so we should spend money _____(wise).

38. We should stop setting off fireworks to reduce _____(pollute).

39. Too much sweet can be _____(harm) to kids' teeth.

40. Mo Yan is one of the best _____(live) writers in the world.

六、任务型阅读（每小题2分，共10分）

In Hebei, there is a small village called Yeli. Through the village, you can see green trees along the riverbank. However, you can hardly imagine that, about 16 years ago, this area was covered with rocks and weeds（杂草）. The big change is all because of years of hard work by two best friends: Jia Haixia, who is blind, and Jia Wenqi, who has no arms.

The two friends decided to plant trees to make a living back in 2002. Although both are disabled, they learned to work together by becoming each other's eyes and hands. With little money to buy young trees, they had to collect and plant cuttings（插枝，插条）. Every morning, they went to the riverbank together. Jia Wenqi walked in the front and Jia Haixia followed him by holding one of his friend's empty sleeves（衣袖）. After they arrived at the riverbank, Jia Haixia would climb on his friend's shoulders to get cuttings and Jia Wenqi would tell him which cuttings were the best. After that, they dug holes on the ground and watered the cuttings together.

They planted 800 trees in the first year, but only two survived（存活）. They didn't give up. Instead, they continued to plant more in the next few years. The riverbank is now home to over ten thousand trees.

Today, the two friends no longer need to make a living by planting trees, but they have no plans to stop. They aim to plant as many trees as possible in the area so as to protect the village from flooding（洪水）and to improve the local environment.

41. Where did the story take place?
_____

42. Could people see many green trees there about 16 years ago?
_____

43. How did these two disabled men work together?（No more than 12 words）
_____
_____

44. How many trees are there along the riverbank nowadays?
_____

45. What's the purpose of their planting trees now?
_____

七、书面表达（30分）

保护环境是每一个人的职责。请你写一篇以"Lower Carbon, Happier Life"为题的英语短文。短文要点如下：

1. 自己走路或骑自行车上学，父母走路上班（ride a bike, walk）

2. 节约用水、用电（save, turn off, electricity）

3. 将用过的课本留给低年级学生（old books, next grade students）

4. 购物时带上篮子，别用塑料袋（basket, plastic bags）

要求：①词数：120左右。文章开头、结尾已给出，不计入总词数；

②必须包括全部要点，但不能逐词翻译；

③在文中不要提及真实的校名和姓名。

Lower Carbon, Happier Life

It's our duty to protect the environment.

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Lower carbon, happier life. Let's take action.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

过关测试

▶Unit 1 过关测试

请通过 www.rudder.com.cn
下载听力材料及答案

一、1. B　点拨：本题用题眼法。根据问句：Has Tom called you…？可知本句时态为现在完成时，recently 意为“最近”，与现在完成时连用，故选 B。

2. B

3. A　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——贾森在新学校感到寂寞吗？——我不认为如此。他已经在那儿交了一些朋友。lonely 寂寞的；quiet 安静的；excited 兴奋的；happy 高兴的。由句意可知答案。

4. A

5. C　点拨：just 表示“刚刚”，常跟现在完成时连用；just now 表示“刚才”，常跟一般过去时连用。故选 C。

6. A

7. C　点拨：How far 对距离提问；How often 对频率提问；How long 可对时间、物体长度进行提问；How soon 多久，用来提问将来的时间，答语常为 in + 一段时间。故选 C。

8. C

9. A　点拨：考查短语辨析。turn on“打开”；turn down“调低”；turn off“关掉”；turn up“调高”。由“我想查看我的邮件”可知选 A。

10. B

11. A　点拨：本题用题眼法。句意：——你还打篮球吗？——哦，不了，近两年来我没打。for the past two years 是现在完成时的标志词。

12. A　点拨：本题用词语应用法。分析句意可推知：她过去很害羞，用 used to 表示；第二空后跟 speaking 可推知：现在她习惯于在班级面前演讲了，用 is used to 表示。

13. A　点拨：句意：——高速列车、移动支付、共享单车和网上购物被称作现代中国的“新四大发明”。——它们使我们的日常生活更加便利。根据句意，结合实际可知“新四大发明现在(已经)使我们的生活更加便利”，应用现在完成时态表达。

14. D　点拨：本题用题眼法解题。考查时态。从答句的 But 可知，已经看过这部电影了，要用现在完成时，故选 D。

15. C　点拨：本题用句意理解法。at times 有时；in time 及时；on time 按时；from time to time 时不时。根据句意可知是要求按时来开会，所以选 C。

二、16. C　点拨：本题用语境理解法。儿时记忆是美好的，用 good，所以选择答案 C。

17. A　18. B　19. C　20. B　21. D

22. B　23. D　24. C

25. D　点拨：本题用语境理解法与逻辑推理法。由下文：我们问店主是否真的能寄信。可知这里应该是中国邮政的标志。所以选择答案 D。

26. A

27. B　点拨：本题用上下文联系法。上文提到我过生日。我选择一张明信片叫朋友写祝福语。所以选择答案 B。

28. D　29. A　30. C

三、31. B　点拨：本题用常识法。根据文章第一段第一句话“I am Mike Smith，a doctor from London.”可知道 Mike Smith 来自伦敦，根据常识可知道伦敦属于英国。故选 B。

32. A

33. B　点拨：本题用细节理解法。根据文章内容，Mike 经历了 subway 和 train 两种交通工具，故选 B。

34. D

35. C　点拨：本题用推理判断法。根据最后一句话“And it's one symbol of a new China and a sign of China's strength as well.”可以判断 Mike 对中国的轨道交通系统是高度赞扬。

四、36. has realized　37. impossible

38. abroad　39. interviewed

40. just

五、41. reading　42. northern

43. alone；lonely　44. wives

45. will take

六、46. countryside　47. transport

48. interesting　49. relax　50. cinemas

51. cost　52. pay　53. dirty　54. easy

55. carefully/first

七、范文：

Changes in My Hometown

Over the past ten years，there have been great changes in my hometown. In the past，the houses in my hometown were very old. The water in the rivers was very dirty. People used to walk or ride bikes to go to work.

But now，many people in my hometown have moved into tall buildings. The rivers are clean and people can swim in them. People can take buses or drive their own cars to go to work. Life now is much easier.

I hope my hometown will become more and more beautiful in the future.

点评：话题主要围绕“家乡的变化”。写作时可以用“三步法”来描述。1. 步骤一：描写家乡的过去；2. 步骤二：用所给的几点描写家乡现在的变化；3. 步骤三：对家乡的感受或展望。

添彩点：文中恰当运用了现在完成时，短语 used to，take buses 等本单元所学内容。最后一段中比较级的使用是本篇文章的添彩点。

▶Unit 2 过关测试

一、1. A　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：蛋糕尝起来很美味，我想再要一个。“taste”尝起来；“look”看起来；“sound”听起来；“feel”感觉。由句意可知答案。

2. C　点拨：本题用语法判定法。该句主语为不定代词 Everyone，不定代词作主语，看作单数；has been to 表示“去过”。

3. C　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：去年我不在家的时候，总是思念家人。guess 猜测；think 想，认为；miss 思念，错过；allow 允许。根据句意可知选 C。

4. B　点拨：由前面的问句可知是希望别人说慢点，也就是说跟不上别人，所以用 follow。read 阅读；miss 想念；match 匹配，均不符合题意。

5. A　点拨：考查延续性动词和非延续性动词。句意：这位教授上个周三到了南京。他在那儿 10 天了。for 10 days 提示用 be 动词的现在完成时表示状态，其他三个选项的动词都是非延续性动词，不能和表示一段时间的时间状语连用。

6. C　点拨：考查现在完成时。open 既可以作动词，也可以作形容词，大约 5 个月是一段时间，has been open 表示状态，故选 C。

7. C　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：简已经结婚 15 年，然而她仍然不知道她嫁给了哪种男人。be married 表结婚的状态，后跟 for 短语，需要用现在完成时；marry 及物动词，意为“嫁”，后面不加 to。

8. B　点拨：本题用语法判定法。由答语 tomorrow morning 知道是进行时表示将来时，leave for 到某地去，故排除 A，D，break down 出故障，has broken down 相当于 is broken，所以选择答案 B。

9. A

10. D

11. C　点拨：“参加某项活动”用词组 take part in 表示。join 表示参加了某一种团体、组织，并作为其中一员，与句意不符，故选 C。

12. D　点拨：本题用语法判定法。由答语中时间状语 since ten years ago（自十年前），可知本句应用现在完成时态，become(成为)为非延续性动词，不能和表示一段时间的时间状语连用。

13. C　点拨：由 because 引导的原因状语从句可知是感觉纽约，所以第一个空填 lonely，再由时间状语 for almost two years 可知第二个空要填表示状态的完成时态，所以选 C。

14. D　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：——你在这所学校学习多长时间了？——将近三年了。对介词短语 for + 时间段，应使用 How long 提问。

15. A　点拨：本题用语法判定法。for eleven hours 指一段时间，不可以用短暂性动词，be asleep 指“睡着”的状态，fall asleep 指“睡着”的动作，所以选择答案 A。

二、16. B　点拨：本题用语境理解法。从语境知，这个男人没有钱给他的大家庭买食物。故选 B。

17. D　18. A　19. C　20. B

21. A　点拨：本题用细节理解法。从文章第一句“One morning，when I was leaving for my business…”可知，答案为 A。

22. C　点拨：从上文“Thank you，sir. I will.”可知，他承诺了。此处语境为，我没想到他会践行他的诺言。故选 C。

23. D　点拨：从语境知，五小时后我回来时，我看到他仍然在走。故选 D。

24. B　点拨：本题用推理判断法。从上文“I'll give you one pound an hour”、“When I came back five hours later”可知，我答应一小时给他一英镑，他共走了 5 小时。故选 B。

25. C　点拨：本题用语境理解法。从语境知，当一些人知道他为什么在广场上走的时候，他们提供帮助。故选 C。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

26. B　**点拨**：本题用**上下文联系法**。从前一句知，一些人给他提供帮助，因此，他将会向他们找工作做。故选 B。

27. A　**点拨**：本题用**上下文联系法**。根据上文我让他夹着砖在广场上走五小时可推测，他走前，他问我可不可以把砖给他。故选 A。

28. A　**点拨**：本题用**语境理解法**。从语境知，看到我不确定他是谁，他解释说，他是那个夹砖的人，现在也有了自己的生意。故选 A。

29. C　**点拨**：本题用**推理判断法**。从语境知，那个男人说："……我仍然保留着那块砖，总把它视为我最重要的东西，因为它给我带来了好运和成功"。故选 C。

30. D　**点拨**：本题用**逻辑推理法**。从语境知，事实上，使那个男人成功的不是那块砖，而是他做小事时的坚定。故选 D。

三、31. A　**点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。由第一段中"We'll arrive on the second of August."可知选项 A 符合。故选 A。

32. B　**点拨**：本题用**细节理解法**。题干询问在 Ocean Park 将呆多长时间。由第二段第一句"I will spend a day in Ocean Park…"可知是"一天"。故选 B。

33. D　**34**. A　**35**. D

四、36. experience

37. experience

38. except

39. points

40. relatives'　**点拨**：本题用**题眼法**。从 all 可知道 relative 应该用复数；表示"某人的名字"需要用名词所有格。

五、41. has been to　**42**. has been in

43. has gone to　**44**. A couple of

45. at the end of

六、46. Travelling　**47**. beautiful

48. healthy　**49**. rain　**50**. ill/sick

51. worst　**52**. Advice　**53**. clearly

54. together　**55**. carefully

七、范文：

My Best Holiday

Last summer, my parents and I went to Xiamen for a holiday.

On the first day, we walked around the city. It is a beautiful city with different kinds of trees and flowers. We lost ourselves in the beautiful view.

On the second day, we visited the famous Gulangyu Island. We swam in the sea and had a wonderful time there.

We went shopping on the third day. I bought many souvenirs and my mother bought a lot of local food.

The trip to Xiamen was very tiring, but I felt very happy. We had a fantastic time there. I'll never forget the pleasant trip.

点评：本文围绕着单元话题 travelling 并运用**三步法**来介绍了自己的旅行，时态以一般过去时态为主。

添彩点：文中运用了重点短语和句型：go shopping 购物 …went… for a holiday. …… 去……度假。On the first/second/third day… 在第一/二/三天…… We had a fantastic time there. 我们在那里过得非常快乐。

▶Unit 3 过关测试

一、1. C　**点拨**：本题用**把握语境法**。由答语"He is tall with short blonde hair and big blue eyes."判断问句是在提问长相，需要用"What does sb. look like?"，故选 C。

2. D　**3**. C

4. C　**点拨**：考查短语搭配。be famous for 为固定短语，意为"以……出名"。

5. D　**点拨**：句意"当这位年轻人进入大学后，他梦想能有一个到国外深造的机会。"dream of doing sth."梦想做某事"为固定搭配。

6. A　**点拨**：thousands of"成百上千的"，其后跟可数名词复数形式。故选 A。

7. B　**点拨**：mind 后接动词-ing 形式，排除 A、C，根据答语 It is really cold outside. 可知不介意关门，所以选 B。

8. A　**点拨**：本题用**把握语境法**。根据句意"——谢谢你倾听我的问题，并给我你的建议，埃米。——不用谢。这是朋友应该做的。"可知选 A。My pleasure"别客气，不用谢"，用于某事之后。而 With pleasure"愿意为您效劳"用于做某事之前。

9. B　**点拨**：pick up 意为"捡起"；look up 意为"查找"；clean up 意为"打扫干净"；give up 意为"放弃"；根据"因为我想带 Mia 到一家好餐馆过生日"可知应选 B。

10. C　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。句意：——我可以看一下杂志《今日中国》吗？——当然，给你。A：谢谢你；B：好可惜啊；C：给你；D：我想要。根据前面的"Certainly"可知此处指的是把杂志给人家看。故选 C。

11. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：我朋友在万达广场的新餐馆两年前开业啦，但是迄今为止我还没有去过那儿。two years ago 可知句子为一般过去时，故排除 A 和 D；so far 表示"迄今为止"可知句子应用现在完成时。have gone to 表示"去了某地"，还没有回来；have been to 表示"去过某地"，表示人在说话现场。

12. D　**点拨**：考查动词时态。句意：我到处都找不到我的钱包。我确信我_____它。从句意可知在此强调过去的动作对现在的影响或结果：找不到了，因此用现在完成时。

13. D　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。句意：——蒂姆，你多久去看你的爷爷奶奶？——一周一次。How many 多少，对可数名词提问；How long 多长，对长度或时间提问；How much 多少，对不可数名词或价钱提问；How often 多久一次，对频率提问。根据答句"Once a week."可知是对频率提问。

14. D　**点拨**：本题考查词义辨析。order 订（货）；need 需要；buy 买；book 订（房），根据语境可知选 D。

15. D　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。句意：——你介意我把电视声音开大点吗？新年音乐会刚刚开始。——当然不会。请开吧。本题中，由后一句 Just go ahead. 可知，语境中不介意把电视声音调大一些。故用 Of course not"当然不会"来表达。

二、16. C　**点拨**：本题用**语境理解法**。华为智能手机在商店里应该是在"出售"，on sale 意为"出售"。

17. A

18. D　**点拨**：本题用**上下文联系法**。由上下文知中国产品在各地都有，表明世界各地的人们已经接受中国产品。accept 意为"接受"，故选 D。

19. A　**点拨**：本题用上下文联系法。由下文知，中国餐馆已经做了一些改变，前面动词不定式表示目的，应该是为了满足当地人的口味，meet 有"满足"的意思，故选 A。

20. C　**21**. D

22. B　**点拨**：本题用**语境理解法**。所以那里的中国餐馆提供不带骨头的肉，空后又举了鱼的例子，鱼的骨头或刺多且小，剔除很困难，这里举这个例子表示"让步"关系，所以选择 even"甚至"，符合题意。

23. D　**点拨**：本题用**上下文联系法**。前面说到中国食物受人喜爱，这里又说中国的品牌，由下文知，TCL 电视、海尔冰箱及联想电脑在欧洲商店有售，所以中国品牌也很"受欢迎"，故选 D。

24. A　**点拨**：本题用**语境理解法**。这些产品不仅仅在中国制造，根据连词和句意，设计和开发也在中国，即在我们的国家，故选 country。

25. B　**点拨**：本题用**推理判断法**。过去，大多数西方人认为中国的产品便宜而且不可靠。但现在，情况发生了很大变化。中国制造变酷了，产品也可靠了，所以应该是"越来越多的人相信中国品牌"。动词 believe"相信"符合题意。

三、26～30：CCBAD

四、31. Australian　**32**. websites

33. passport　**34**. pleasure

35. pounds

五、36. turning　**37**. relaxes

38. dreams of　**39**. picked

40. to book

六、41. Yes, they are.

42. The increasing use of computers and smart phones.

43. To improve the population's handwriting skills.

44. By entering pinyin.

45. It's important/necessary to have/make/let young Chinese know the importance of writing Chinese words./
Computers have a big influence on the handwriting of Chinese characters./
We /Young people must learn to write Chinese characters.

七、范文：

A day trip to Yangzhou

Today, my parents and I visited Yangzhou. Yangzhou is a beautiful city with a long history.

In the morning, we went to the Slender West Lake. We enjoyed beautiful views, went boating and took photos and all of us had a good time. At noon, we came to Fuchun Tea House. We tasted local traditional food and had our favorite snacks. In the afternoon, we went to Daming Temple to learn the history of Yangzhou. At night, we went shopping in the Traditional Double-dong Blocks. We bought a lot of souvenirs for our friends.

After a day's trip, I felt very tired but very happy.

点评：本文用"**三步两要素法**"介绍扬州。第一段点明介绍的城市。第二段介绍了扬州的几个著名景点及作者的活动。第三段抒发感想。

添彩点：in the morning, at noon 等的运用使文章思路清晰，层次分明。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

▶Unit 4 过关测试

一、**1.** C　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:昨天的音乐会非常成功。所有的人都对它感兴趣。success 意为"成功的人或事"是可数名词单数形式,great 是以辅音音素开头的词,故选 C。

2. D　**点拨**:本题用**句意理解法**。hand in 上交;on time 按时;in time 及时;根据句意"老师希望我们所有人每天能按时交作业。"可知选 D。

3. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。advice 为不可数名词,没有复数形式;some 后面的 suggestion 要用复数;learn English well 意为"学好英语",此处用副词 well 修饰动词 learn。

4. C

5. B　**点拨**:本题用**语境联想法**。征求别人同意时尽量用委婉语气,本题句子意思是"妈妈,我可以现在跟我的朋友们出去吗?""可以,但你必须要先打扫你的卧室。"故选 B。

6. D　**点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:时间不等人。但是有些人直到时间过去了才意识到它的重要性。not … until … 意为"直到……才……"。由题意可知本题选 D。

7. D

8. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。deal with 处理;keep up with 跟上;agree with 同意;come up with 提出,想出。由语境可知,这里指 Jane 忙是因为有许多问题要处理。故选 A。

9. A　**10.** D

11. A　**点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:Vivian 拒绝送她的孩子去周末训练中心参加额外的课程。refuse to do sth. 意为"拒绝做某事",是固定搭配。

12. C　**点拨**:open up one's mind 意为"开阔眼界",故选 C。

13. B　**14.** C

15. D　**点拨**:本题用**交际法**。考查名词复数与交际用语。Frenchman 的复数形式是 Frenchmen,German 的复数形式不是把 a 换成 e,而是直接加-s,即 Germans,故 B、C 错。Yes, please 包含"好吧和感谢"的意思,All right 指"好吧"。故选 D。

二、**16.** B　**点拨**:本题用**语境理解法**。由前面的 He opened the bag 及常识可知,戴维打开书包往"里面"看。故选 B。

17. A　**点拨**:本题用**上下文联系法**。由 If I don't have my list 可知,戴维的老师 Ms. Ross 给了他一份"清单"。故选 A。

18. B

19. A　**点拨**:本题用**语境理解法**。由后面的 but no list 可推知,戴维和妈妈把书包里的东西都抖了出来,并且"检查"了所有的口袋,但并没有找到那份清单。故选 A。

20. C　**21.** A

22. C　**点拨**:本题用**上下文联系法**。由上下文可知,妈妈是在不停地询问戴维班里学生的名字。故选 C。

23. D

24. B　**点拨**:由最后 1 段可知,在 17 个孩子中,戴维唯独忘记了自己,故本句指的是"已经有了 16 个名字"。故选 B。

25. C　**点拨**:由下文 David picked out a card. 可推知,妈妈建议戴维把 16 个孩子的名字写在卡片上。故选 C。

26. A　**27.** A

28. D　**点拨**:本题用**上下文联系法**。由下句 One more time he thought about who sat where in his classroom. 可推知,戴维在不停地思考到底遗漏了"谁"。故选 D。

29. B

30. D　**点拨**:本题用**推理判断法**。由下句 I'm going to wish me a Merry Christmas, too. 可知戴维写出了班里 16 个孩子的名字,唯独遗漏了他自己,故本句应是"我们忘记了我!"。故选 D。

三、**31.** C　**点拨**:细节理解题。根据第二本书 *A Bear's Year* 的信息可知答案。

32. A　**点拨**:推理判断题。根据三本书的促销时间和内容简介可知,*All I Want for Christmas Is You* 的促销时间在 12 月 10 号,时间合适;书的内容也是有关一个小姑娘的圣诞心愿。故选 A。

33. B　**点拨**:词义猜测题。熊一年四季的作息规律:冬季睡眠,春天醒来,夏季捕食,秋天就准备冬眠了。故选 B。

34. D　**点拨**:细节理解题。根据 *The Only Child* 的内容简介可知,这本书讲述了一个迷路的小姑娘在森林里生活的奇特经历。故选 D。

35. B　**点拨**:推理判断题。这是三本书的促销信息,因此只能在书店里看到。故选 B。

四、**36.** opposite　**37.** experience

38. managed　**39.** knowledge

40. French

五、**41.** to do　**42.** copies　**43.** Canadian

44. writer　**45.** ugliest

六、**46 ~ 50**:DCBEA

七、**范文**:

I love reading. I spend over four hours a week reading. On weekdays I usually read before going to bed. I read most at the weekend. I'm interested in history books, and I like fiction too. I like the four great classical Chinese novels best.

I get most of my books from the school library. My friends give me lots of advice on books. We often meet at the library and discuss what to read.

Reading is a good habit to develop. A good book is a good friend. It helps me relax after a busy day. It also opens up a whole new world to me.

点评:本文应用了"三段五要素法"介绍"我"的阅读习惯。1. 直入主题("我"喜欢阅读);2. 主题部分(五要素法),3. 结论部分(阅读的感受与意义)。

添彩点:1. 运用了两个句型:sb. spend some time doing sth.;help sb.(to) do sth.

2. 运用了多个固定短语:be interested in 对……感兴趣;most of 大多数的;open up 拓展,打开;等等。

▶Unit 5 过关测试

一、**1.** D　**点拨**:考查副词的用法。either 用在否定句句尾,表示"也"。　**2.** C

3. A　**点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:"他说第二天下午的某个时间将来看我们。"sometime 某个时间,every time 每次,sometimes 有时,some times 几次,故选 A。

4. C　**点拨**:考查非谓语动词。句意:——Jane 的英语口语很棒。——是的,她学习很努力,课上、课下她都会练习说英语。practice doing sth. 练习做某事。

5. B　**点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:"打扰一下,你们学校里有图书馆吗?"这个男孩有礼貌地问我。形容词 polite 意为"有礼貌的";副词 politely 意为"有礼貌地";形容词 impolite "没礼貌的";副词 impolitely"没礼貌地"。这里要用副词修饰动词 asked。由"Excuse me"可知要用 politely 表示"有礼貌地"询问。

6. B　**点拨**:考查短语的含义。cut up 切碎;cut in line 插队;wait in line 排队等候;cut down 削减。由句意"如果你想做一个有礼貌的人就不要插队。"可知答案为 B。

7. C　**点拨**:本题用**常识法**。No photos 意为"禁止拍照"。C 有照相机的图标。

8. B　**点拨**:由句意可知大厅足够大,所以排除 A、C 两项;too… to… 表示"太……而不能……",… enough to… 表示"足够……来做……",所以选 B。

9. B　**10.** C

11. C　**点拨**:考查 by 的相关短语。by accident 意为"偶然地";by mistake 意为"错误地";by the way 意为"顺便问一句";by the time 意为"到……时候"。根据句意"我上个月数学考试没有及格。顺便问一下,你是怎么为数学考试而学习的呢?",可知答案为 C。

12. B　**点拨**:句中的主语为 A,应用 spend,spend 后接动词要用动名词形式。

13. D　**点拨**:本题用**交际法**解题。考查情景交际。句意:——妈妈,没有任何人和我玩。我可以养一只宠物吗?——_____我们的公寓太小了。I'm afraid not. 恐怕不可以。

14. C　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意为:每个人都应该_____垃圾不论他什么时候在地上看见它。give up 放弃;mix up 混合;pick up 捡起;use up 用光。结合常识可知此处指"捡起"垃圾。

15. A　**点拨**:本题用**把握语境法**。句意:——如果你每天坚持练习说法语,你就会更擅长了。——熟能生巧。上文的 practicing 提示答语用 A 项和上文意义呼应。B 项意为"人多好办事",C 项意为"孤注一掷",D 项意为"劳累过度",都与句意不符。

二、**16.** C　**点拨**:本题用**语境联想法**。根据句意:"当你去世界不同地方的餐馆时,知道做什么事是对的和错的是很重要的。"可知选 C。

17. D

18. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**和**语境联想法**。事实上,如果在中国的餐厅不热闹那就意味着有问题。lively 也是表达活跃的气氛,而 B、C、D 三个意思都不对。

19. B

20. B　**点拨**:本题用**题眼法**。由 However 可知在西方的很多国家,餐馆通常是安静的。quiet"安静的",故选 B。

21. C　**点拨**:本题用**语境联想法**。根据上文"…in many Western countries, restaurants are quiet places."和下文"If a table is too loud (如果某桌客人太吵闹)…",可以推断出其他客人甚至可以向店主投诉。

22. A　**点拨**:本题用**常识法**。everybody 每个人;nobody 没有人;somebody 某人;none 没有(强调数量)。中国人在付费方面与西方人也不一样,中国人常常一个人付所有人的钱,故选 A。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

23. B

24. A　点拨：本题用上下文联系法。share the cost“分担费用”，也叫“go Dutch”(均摊费用)，故选A。

25. C　点拨：根据上下文的语境可知是给服务员小费，所以选C。

26. B　点拨：本题用上下文联系法。根据上文得知在西方餐厅给小费是有礼貌的，故选B。

27. B　点拨：本题用推理判断法。强调西方人付小费是比较常见的风俗习惯。common 常见的。故选B。

28. D　点拨：本题用常识法。根据常识可知给多少小费是由服务的质量决定的，be decided by“由……决定”，故选D。

29. C　30. D

三、31～35：BCDDC

四、36. subject　37. avoid　38. public

39. expresses　40. proper

五、41. successful　42. impolite　43. talking

44. discussion　45. not to eat

六、46. voice　47. a call

48. Subway passengers　49. clean and tidy

50. Don't take pets

七、范文：

How to Behave Well

In order to build a civilized city, we students should try our best to behave well.

It's a good habit to keep our clothes clean and tidy. Our city should be kept clean. Don't throw litter everywhere. It's good manners to say “Thank you” and “Please”. We should be polite and friendly to others and always be ready to help the people in need. For example, when we are on a bus, we should give our seats to the old and the women with babies. We should also obey traffic rules. And we'd better not talk or laugh loudly in public.

If everyone behaves well, our city will be more beautiful and more attractive.

点评：本文运用了“三步法”进行写作。1. 活动(开展“创建文明城市”的活动)；2. 我们应该做什么(四个提示的内容，外加自己的看法)；3. 结论(提出倡议)。

添彩点：文中还运用了 in order to，try one's best to do，keep sth. *adj.* 等高级短语和 Don't do…，If …，…will… 等高级句式，为本篇文章添彩。

▶Unit 6 过关测试

一、1. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。elderly 以元音音素开头，前面用 an 表示“一个”；第二空用 the + *adj.* 表示“一类人”；第三空表示名次，前面不加冠词。

2. B　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：对于你来说，为你的朋友们保守秘密很有必要，用这种方式，你能赢得他们的信任。表示“必要的”，应用 necessary。故选B。

3. C

4. B　点拨：考查短语 have a chance to do sth. “有机会做某事”，chance 后跟动词不定式。

5. C　点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。考查动词短语。句意：这家餐馆为人们提供美味的食物。短语 provide sb. with sth.、provide sth. for sb. 或 offer sth. to sb. 都有“为某人提供某物”的意思，本句表人的 people 在前，表物的 food 在后，故用 provide sb. with sth.。

6. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——杰克，做出这道数学题我有困难。——不用担心，让我来帮助你。have trouble doing sth. 意为“做某事有困难”，故选B。

7. C　点拨：achieve one's dream 是固定搭配，意为“实现某人的梦想”。

8. C

9. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：——我发现学好英语很难，我想放弃。——英语在我们的日常生活中很重要……由此推知后句意为“绝不要放弃”。give up 放弃；give away 赠送。据此推知 give up 符合句意，give up 是动词加副词构成的短语，代词作其宾语必须位于 give up 之间。故选B。

10. A　点拨：考查非谓语动词。feel like doing sth. 想做某事；invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事。句意：我们想买一些食物和饮料因为我们将会邀请一些朋友来参加聚会。

11. A　点拨：本题用固定句型法解题。考查固定句型。句意：对于我们学生来说，提高听的能力是必需的。It is + *adj.* + for sb. to do sth. 是固定句型，故选A。

12. D　点拨：expect sb. to do sth. 意为“期望/期待某人做某事”。

13. D　点拨：such as 后面接列举的内容。

14. A　点拨：本题用结构分析法。从结构分析可知这里是不定式作主语，且形容词是 nice，指人的品质，因此用 of。

15. D　点拨：her carelessness 为名词短语，because of 后接名词短语。

二、16. D　点拨：本题用上下文联系法。从下文“我”在北京购物的经历知选D。

17. B

18. D　点拨：本题用辨析法。一个陌生人将“我”叫进他的小店并提供“我”茶和椅子。故选D。

19. B　20. A　21. C

22. D　点拨：从下文这个店老板用车帮助“我”的信息知，此时，“我”的肩膀被人触碰了一下(店主触碰“我”，是想告诉“我”，他会用车帮助“我”)。故选D。

23. B　点拨：本题用辨析法。lie down 躺下；drive up 开车过来；fall behind 落在后面；go away 离开。从下文这位店主用车送“我”回家的信息知，几分钟后这位店主开车过来了。故选B。

24. A　点拨：本题用推理判断法。在乘车回家的路上，我们肯定一路都高兴。故选A。

25. C　点拨：本题用逻辑推理法。从下文“Feel good… help you.”知，这位店主拒绝了“我”给他的钱。故选C。

三、26. A　点拨：本题用细节理解法。根据第三段的“I often pick out some of my clothes which are out of style after going shopping.”可知她把不时尚的衣服挑出来，捐赠出去。

27. B　点拨：本题用细节理解法。第五段叙述记者就衣物捐赠箱出现的问题归纳了四点，第六段一个社区的工作人员补充了一条，共五条，故选B。

28. C

29. D　点拨：本题用推理判断法。上一句“Some clothes in the box are quite new.”意为“箱子里的一些衣服是相当新的。”，可知该句中的 them 指的是 some clothes in the box。

30. A　点拨：根据文章最后一句“The clothes donation will be better-organized and it'll be more convenient for people in need to take the clothes away.”可知对于捐助者来说衣物捐助将更有组织性，而对于需要衣服的人来说也会更便利。

四、31. South-west　32. blood

33. support　34. blind　35. prize

五、36. meaningful　37. training

38. closely　39. operation

40. homeless

六、41. Place　42 Fight fires

43. Mary　44. The nursing home

45. Daughter

七、范文：

Dear Miss Gao,

I'm Li Lin. I'm glad to see the poster in our school. I want to join the English Club because I like English very much. But I am not good at listening and speaking. I hope to have more chances to improve them.

There are many helpful activities in the club, but watching English movies is my favorite. It can not only make me relaxed, but also improve my listening skills.

Although there are many activities here, I still want more. Can you provide us with some English books? Can you give us an opportunity to talk to the foreigners?

I'm looking forward to your answer soon.

Yours,

Li Lin

点评：本文应用了“四步三要素法”写一封信。第一步：介绍自己(我是李林)；第二步：写信的目的(申请加入英语俱乐部)；第三步：信的主要内容(提示内容，适当发挥)；第四步：自己的心情、感受或对对方的祝福(期盼收到对方的回信)。要素一：称谓；要素二：正文；要素三：落款。

添彩点：1. 运用了句型：I want to…；I hope to…。

2. 运用了几个固定短语：be good at；not only… but also …；provide sb. with sth.。

▶Unit 7 过关测试

一、1. A　点拨：“by + 动名词”意为“通过……的方式”，引导方式状语。

2. C　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：国王根本没有注意到人群的吵闹声，而是继续游行。根据前面的“didn't”可知此处也应用过去时，故排除 A 和 B；carry on 继续进行，carry out 实施，执行。根据句意可知选C。

3. C　点拨：表示“在某方面有问题”要用“have problems with sth.”。

4. B　点拨：考查名词词义辨析。education“教育”，chance“机会；机遇”，pride“自豪”，excuse“借口；理由”。根据句意“那些更有信心的人有更多的机会使自己成功。”可知选B。

5. C　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：——劳拉，照片中的小女孩是谁？——是我，这张照片是在我五岁的时候拍的。这里主语“This photo”是动作承受者，所以要用被动语态，根据“when I was five”，可知句子应用一般过去时态，故选C。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6. C

7. B 点拨:句意:我在考试中赢得一等奖,因此我为自己而骄傲。be proud of 固定短语,意为"为……感到自豪"。故选 B。

8. D 点拨:本题用句意理解法。根据句意可知应是创建一所幼儿园。clean up 清理;look up 向上看;give up 放弃;set up 创建。故选 D。

9. D 点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:——被得,咱们一起去踢足球。——恐怕不行,我还需要一个多小时才能写完作业。从句中主语 my homework 是动词 finish 的承受者,应用被动语态表达,可排除 A、B 两项;在 before 引导时间状语从句中,应该用一般将来时的,常用一般现在时。故选 D。

10. B 11. D 12. B

13. B 点拨:本题考查动词词义辨析。由 but 可知上下两句表转折关系;上句说本太贵,故选 B,意为"但是越来越多的中国人都能买得起。"正好与上句构成转折关系。

14. D 15. A

二、16. C 点拨:本题用上下文联系法。从下文中的 After the first week, I noticed that the food was _____[17] very quickly. 可知,作者帮妈妈做家务和买食物。故选 C。

17. D 点拨:本题用解析法。从下文中的"…I found that she would put some of the food into a paper…"知,这里说的是食物很快就吃完了。故选 D。

18. A 点拨:本题用语境联想法。从"I found that she would put some of the food into a paper…"及上下文的描述知,作者感到很吃惊。故选 A。

19. A 点拨:本题用上下文联系法。从短文最后一句 But I always added one more bag for her other children. 可知,这里说的是纸袋。故选 A。

20. C 点拨:由后句 I saw her taking the food to the street…知,作者跟随妈妈是想弄清楚究竟。故选 C。

21. B 点拨:从下文"The children were very friendly with her and…"可知,作者发现妈妈把食物带给流浪儿童。故选 B。

22. D 点拨:本题用解析法。根据句中的"a lot of time talking and playing with them"的"talking and playing"分析可知,spend some time doing sth. 意为"花费时间做某事"。故选 D。

23. B 点拨:本题用推理判断法。由下文 The children were very friendly with her and even thought of her as their own…可知,妈妈在这个地区还是出名的。故选 B。

24. A 点拨:本题用语境联想法。根据上文及本句可知,孩子们把作者妈妈当作他们自己的妈妈。故选 A。

25. C 点拨:本题用推理判断法。从前后句的描述知,如果我发现她担心我不会去买。由此推知,这里是说的一个条件。故选 C。

26. A 点拨:本题用句意理解法。从文章第二段的描述知,妈妈这样做原以为我不知道。所以我就告诉妈妈不要对我保密了。故选 A。

27. D 点拨:本题用语境理解法。从前一句说一些孩子与一个老太太生活在一个小房子的描述知,这里说的是其他孩子却睡在大街上。其他选项不符合语境。故选 D。

28. B 点拨:本题用上下文联系法。根据 After she told me everything 及 how selfless(无私的)she was 知,作者被妈妈的无私所感动。故选 B。

29. D 点拨:本题用推理判断法。根据…I was so _____[28] by how selfless(无私的)she was. She helped others in need. 知,作者以有这样的妈妈而感到自豪。故选 D。

30. C 点拨:本题用推理判断法。根据本句及后一句 But I always added one more bag for her other children. 知,作者会继续给妈妈买食物。故选 C。

三、31. A 点拨:本题用细节理解法。根据文章中第一段第二句"It makes wishes come true for children who have serious illnesses."可以得知答案为 A。

32. B 点拨:根据文章第二段最后一句"They gave Christopher a tour of the city in a police helicopter(直升飞机)and made a real police uniform(制服)for him. "可以得知答案为 B。

33. C 点拨:本题用细节理解法。由文中第六段 "*I wish to be.* Some children wish to become actors, singers or police officers."可知选 C。

34. B 点拨:本题用推理判断法。由文章最后一句"Will you be one of them?"可以推断是鼓励人们加入这个慈善组织。

35. D 点拨:本题用细节理解法。根据第二段"It all started in 1980 in Phoenix, Arizona."可以推断出答案为 D。

四、36. check 37. secretaries

38. medicine 39. spread 40. develop

五、41. blindness 42. to operate

43. were provided 44. reader

45. to read

六、46. name 点拨:根据原文中的"Soon many children joined them and they called the organization Free the Children."可知:他们把这个组织命名为"解放儿童"。故填名词 name。the name of 意为"……的名字"。

47. age 点拨:根据原文中的"When Craig was twelve, he read a story in *Toronto Star* about a poor boy."以及"So he gathered his friends and started a group the Twelve-Year-Olds."可知:他在 12 岁的时候开始创建的这个组织。固定用法:at the age of 意为"在……岁时"。

48. story

49. over 点拨:根据原文中的"Today, they have built more than 700 schools and school rooms in these countries."可知答案。more than 与 over 意思相同。

50. provided 点拨:根据原文最后一句"They have also provided clean water and health care for more than one million people around the world."可知:他们也给世界各地的一百多万人提供清洁的水和医疗服务。故答案为 provided,意为"提供"。

七、范文:

Wang Li used to① get up at 5:00 a. m. every morning. She worked on the farm all day. Her family was very poor, so she didn't go to school.

One day②, a UNICEF worker came to her village. He said it was important for children to receive education. He gave Wang Li some school books and she was very happy.

Now③, Wang Li goes to school every day. She can read and write. She enjoys school and is grateful to UNICEF for helping her.

I think④ that it is sad that some children are too poor to go to school. Wang Li is lucky because she was helped by UNICEF. I hope to work for UNICEF when I grow up.

点评:本文运用了**四步法**对王丽过去和现在的生活进行了描述,并说明了作者自身的感受。步骤一:过去的生活(王丽过去常早上5:00起床,整天干活,家里很穷,不能上学);步骤二:因为什么改变了生活(一天,联合国儿童基金会的工作人员来到了村子里……);步骤三:现在的生活(现在,王丽每天上学);步骤四:感受(希望长大后为联合国儿童基金会工作)。

添彩点:1. used to …"过去常常……",写出了过去的状态。2. one day"一天",起承上启下的作用,说明生活状况改变的原因。3. now"现在",后面接着写出了现在的状况。4. I think 表明了作者自己的观点和认识。

▶Unit 8 过关测试

一、1. A 点拨:本题用辨析法。句意:他是一个_____人,但他擅长讲滑稽的故事。serious 严肃的;patient 有耐心的;kind 善良的;humorous 幽默的。根据 but he is good at telling funny stories 转折可知,他是一个严肃的人,但他擅长讲滑稽的故事。故选 A。

2. D

3. B 点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:——我看见汤姆的父亲昨天买了许多书。——那不奇怪,不但汤姆,而且他父亲也喜欢看书。表达的是经常性的状态,用一般现在时态。not only…but also…连接的词作主语时,根据"就近原则"确定谓语动词,根据 his father 确定用 enjoys,故选 B。

4. B

5. B

6. C 点拨:本题用语法判定法。句意:——在过去的几年里,莱芜发展很大。——是的。并且在 2020 年高铁将被建成。主语 the high-speed train 是动作的承受者,in 2020 是表示将来的时间状语,故动词要用一般将来时的被动语态 will be completed。故选 C。

7. A 点拨:句意:今年是第 49 个地球日,我想我们应号召人们不要砍伐大多的树。cut down 砍倒;cut up 切碎;cut off 切除;cut out 切掉。根据句意选 A。

8. B 点拨:本题用语法判定法。考查动词的被动语态。答语后一句句意为"如果再给我十分钟我会完成它。"主语与动词 give 之间是被动关系,在条件状语从句中用一般现在时表将来。故选 B。

9. D 点拨:本题用句意理解法。句意为:——我们现在必须行动起来,因为时间快用完了。——好的,我们开始吧。run out 用完。故选 D。

10. A 点拨:本题用固定短语法。句意:不要整天在电脑上玩游戏,它对你的眼睛有害。考查固定短语 be harmful to,意为"对……有害"。故选 A。

11. B 点拨:本题用句意理解法。as long as 只要;so that 为了,心便于;if only 但愿;even if 即使。句意:这个小男孩省下每一枚硬币,

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

为的是能在母亲节那天给他的妈妈买一份礼物。故选B。

12. D　**点拨**：句意：——你更喜欢哪个节目，《跑男》还是《朗读者》？——当然是《朗读者》……由此推断后句意为“我和我弟弟都喜欢。”both… and 两者都；neither… nor 既不……也不……；either… or 或者……或者；not only… but also 不但……而且……。根据句意推断 A 和 D 项都符合句意，both… and 连接并列主语时，谓语动词用复数；not only… but also…连接并列主语，谓语动词与后一个保持一致，由句中 likes 推断选 D。

13. B　**点拨**：考查非谓语动词和形容词的辨析。used to do sth. 意为“过去常常做某事”，interesting常修饰物，interested 常修饰人。根据答语中的“他过去常常弹吉他，但是现在他对踢足球更感兴趣。”可知选 B。

14. B　**点拨**：句意：请关掉电视，该睡觉了。turn on 打开；turn off 关掉；put on 穿上；put off 推迟，根据 go to bed 可知，此处指关掉电视，故选 B。

15. C　**点拨**：本题用**词语应用法**。句意：他们的父母不允许他们在河里游泳，因为它真的危险。not allow sb. to do sth. 是固定搭配，表示“不允许某人做某事”，故选 C。

二、16. A　**点拨**：结合句意和文章的最后一句话“…catch for food and…”可知选 A。

17. B　**点拨**：由这句话的前一部分“not wanting the rabbit to discover him…”可以得出答案。

18. D　**点拨**：根据句意以及后面的“When he saw the fox”可以判断答案是 D。

19. C　20. C

21. B　**点拨**：本题用**上下文联系法**解题。根据下一句话“I will be back tomorrow and help you dig your hole.”可以得出答案。

22. C

23. A　**点拨**：本题用**推理判断法**解题。根据“…to warn his friends.”中的 warn“警告”可以判断出应是 loud。

24. D

25. B　**点拨**：根据语境可知此处是指没有别的吃的只能吃水果，所以选 B。

三、26. D　**点拨**：本题用**主旨大意法**。根据文中第一段中 Do you know how to be green? 和第二段最后一句话 Here are some ideas for you. 可知文章主要介绍如何环保。

27. A　**点拨**：本题用**推理判断法**。根据第三段第二句话 Don't waste things. 可知选项 A 正确；根据第三段第四句话“在我们买新东西之前考虑一下是否真的有必要——或许旧东西也一样好用”可知不要总是买新东西，旧东西可能还能使用，不要扔掉，故选项 B、C 都不正确；根据第三段最后一句话“当我们确实买东西的时候，如果可能选择当地的产品，而不是尽量买太多国外的产品”可知选项 D 不正确，故选 A。

28. B　29. C

30. D　**点拨**：本题用**逻辑推理法**。a menu 一份菜单；a dictionary 一个词典；a storybook 一本故事书；a magazine 一本杂志。文章介绍如何环保。故选 D。

四、31. steps　32. fined　33. punished

34. causes　35. separated

五、36. carelessly　37. wisely　38. pollution

39. harmful　40. living

六、41. In Yeli，Hebei.　42. No.

43. They worked together by becoming each other's eyes and hands.

44. Over ten thousand.

45. To protect the village from flooding and to improve the local environment.

七、**范文**：

Lower Carbon，Happier Life

It's our duty to protect the environment. The environment is becoming worse and worse，so we must do something to protect it.

First，we can ride our bikes or walk to school and tell our parents to walk to work instead of driving the car. Second，we should save water and electricity by turning off the taps and lights in time when we don't need them. Third，give the old books to the next grade students if we don't use them any more. By doing this，we can save many trees. At last，remember to go shopping with baskets rather than plastic bags. I believe our life will become better and better if we can do these things.

Lower carbon，happier life. Let's take action.

点评：本文运用了**三步法**进行写作。一开始就表明了保护环境的职责，接着列举了一些保护环境的具体行为，最后表明了保护好环境会给我们带来更好的生活。

添彩点：1. 运用了一个句型：I believe… if… if 引导条件状语从句，当主句是一般将来时，从句用一般现在时。

2. 运用了多个固定短语：worse and worse 越来越糟；in time 及时；better and better 越来越好。

随堂练习

Unit 1 Past and present

▶ Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. past　2. present　3. just　4. ago

5. underground

二、6. took a car　**点拨**：本题用**转化法**。go to … by car 相当于“take a car to …”。

7. at present　8. used to　9. Why didn't

10. Where was

三、11. an hour ago　12. share；with

13. takes a bus　14. used to　15. than before

▶ Period 2 Reading

一、1. lonely　2. realized　3. waste

4. pollution　5. married

二、6. to have　**点拨**：本题用**结构分析法**。It's + *adj.* + to do sth. 意为“做某事……”。

7. impossible

8. wives　**点拨**：由 are 可知 wife 应用复数形式。

9. get　**点拨**：used to do 意为“过去常常做……”。

10. northern

三、11. D　**点拨**：句意：Bob，晚饭准备好了，在吃饭前请洗手。根据常识可知，饭前要洗手。

12. D　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：自从几个月前的第一次演出以来，电影《红海行动》获得了很多好评。根据后面的时间状语 since its first show months ago 可知此处要用现在完成时。

13. A　**点拨**：change 为动词，修饰动词用 a lot。

14. A

15. D　**点拨**：because 与 because of 都表示原因，但 because 必须引导句子，而 because of 后跟名词、代词或动名词。

16. C　**点拨**：本题用**同义判定法**。句意：——我可以在河里游泳吗？——不行。看这个标志，上面写着“禁止游泳”。No way 意为“不行，不可能”，和 It's impossible. 意思相近。

17. B

18. B　**点拨**：前者属于后者范围内，用介词 in。

19. D　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。for three months 为一段时间，应用延续性动词，marry 及 get married 都表瞬间性，be married 表示状态，可延续，故选 D。

20. C

四、21. from time to time　22. taken place

23. a bit/little heavy　24. an interview with

25. turn；into

▶ Period 3 Grammar

一、1. haven't finished　2. has lived

3. have seen　4. has flown　5. has got

6. have known　7. haven't cleaned

8. has changed

二、9. D　**点拨**：考查现在完成时的用法。根据 No 可知还没有准备好，排除 C；根据句意“——戴夫，我们将在十分钟后出发。你准备好了吗？——没有，我还……我们的旅游指南和毛巾。”可知到现在还没准备好，对现在有影响，用现在完成时态。故选 D。

10. C　**点拨**：本题用**题眼法**。由时间状语 since 1990“自从 1990 年”可知用现在完成时；主语 Millie 是第三人称单数，故用 has worked。

11. D　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。考查交际用语。根据答语中“只完成了一半”可知，还没有完成家庭作业，故选 D。

12. D　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。考查动词时态。句意：——多么令人激动的比赛啊！——是的，难道不是吗？我以前从未看过这么棒的比赛！根据句意可知此处表示从过去一直到现在没有看过这么棒的比赛，使用现在完成时。

13. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。考查动词时态。句意：Diana 因为患了重感冒，不能和同学们去农场。根据过去患感冒对现在造成的影响是“不能和同学们去农场”可知本句应用现在完成时态。

14. C

15. B　**点拨**：考查特殊疑问词组的用法。根据答语“For 5 years.”可知，提问的是“时间段”，故选 B。

三、16. hasn't；yet

17. Has he

18. How long

▶ Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. returned　2. primary

3. keep in touch　4. abroad

5. environment

二、6. communication

7. taking

8. play　**点拨**：used to 后接动词原形，表示“过去常常”。

9. conditions　10. exactly

▶ Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. lived　2. since　3. northern　4. married

5. wife　6. blocks　7. lonely　8. moved

9. impossible　10. changes

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Travelling

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:任何擅长唱歌的人可以参加我们学校的这个活动。take part in 参加;take off 起飞;take out 拿出;take care of 照顾。后面的宾语是 the activity,故此处表示参加活动。

2. C　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定和辨析法**。句意:——布朗先生在哪里?——他去了澳大利亚。他去年去的那里。has been to 去过;has gone to 去了,根据后面的 last year 可知是过去时,用 went。　3. B

4. B　**点拨**:句意为"当你下次来的时候,请把你的书带到这儿来"。bring 意为"带来;拿来",有方向性,指将某物或某人从别处"带来,拿来"。

5. A　**点拨**:本题用**结构分析法**。think, believe 等动词,后接否定的宾语从句时,其否定形式要转移到 think, believe 等词的前面。

二、6. the capital of　7. has been to

8. exciting; to enjoy the beautiful view

9. don't think; arrive/get there

10. Have you ever been to

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. pie　2. miss　3. magic　4. couple

5. cartoons

二、6. A　**点拨**:本题考查 feel 作系动词后跟形容词作表语的用法。由此可知空处应填形容词。根据句意"丝绸裙子摸起来很软。"可知答案为 A。　7. D

8. B　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:我们去北京花费的时间更少了,因为火车的速度已经提升了很多。price"价格";speed"速度";space"空间";service"服务"。根据上文"takes us less time to go to Beijing"可知火车提速了。

9. C

10. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。a couple of 意为"一双,一对"。根据答句句意"我们在床上发现一双袜子。但是不知道是谁的。"故选 A。

三、11. at a speed of　12. such as

13. for example　14. by underground

15. at the end of

四、16. the whole day　17. had a fantastic time

18. hurried to school　19. couldn't stop clapping

20. Have; been to

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. has gone　**点拨**:根据后面 he'll be back 可知道张华去北京还没有回来。

2. has collected　3. dead

4. has kept　5. Have; had

二、6. D　**点拨**:考查连词的用法辨析。for 因为,as 由于,when 当……时候,since 自从……以来。根据句意:"——你来内江很久了?——是的,自从我的父母来到这里(我就在了)。"可知选 D。

7. C　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——那是王老师在教室里吗?——不可能是他,他到村里去当志愿者了。has been in 已经在某处,并且现在还在那里,可能还要延续下去;has gone to 去了某地,但是到目前为止还没有回来;has been to 去过某地,人已经回来。will go 将去,根据句意可知王老师已经去了,还没有回来。　8. C　9. B

10. C　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——这是你的相机吗?——是的。我已经买了两周了。由句意推断该句应使用现在完成时,buy 是短暂性动词,与时间段连用时,需将 buy 改为延续性动词 have。

11. D　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。be open 表示"状态"和表示一段时间的时间状语连用,open 用作动词时是非延续性动词,排除 A、B;下文 only once"仅有一次"提示用 have been 表示"去过。"

12. D　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——今天晚上《舌尖上的中国第三部》将在什么时间开始播出?——它已经开始演了有 10 分钟了。结合语境可知答语要用现在完成时,句中的 for ten minutes 是一段时间,要求句中的谓语动词必须是延续性动词,终止性动词 begin 不能跟一段时间连用。故用 have been on。

13. B　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——自从他离开这所学校是多长时间了?——他已经离开(学校)三年了。since 引导的从句用一般过去时,用 left;leave 是终结性动词,当后面接时间段时要变成 be away。根据 since 可知答句用现在完成时。

三、14. have been married

15. has been away　**点拨**:leave 为瞬间动词,如与表示一段时间的时间状语连用,可用 be away。　16. had; since

17. has been in　**点拨**:come 为瞬间动词,如与表示一段时间的时间状语连用,可用 be in。

四、18. has been　19. has had; since

20. has been on　21. has been away from

22. have been to; since they got married

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. except　2. mountain　3. business

4. direct　5. points

二、6. beauty　7. natural　8. snowy

9. flight　10. Sailing

三、11. all year round

12. have been to; twice　13. except sailing

14. has been here　15. passed; began

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. spent　2. speed　3. hurried　4. cartoon

5. part　6. taking　7. magic　8. couple

9. front　10. themselves

Unit 3 Online tours

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. programmes　2. mouse　3. keyboard

4. screen　5. receive

二、6. C

7. A　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:——为什么你喜欢《战狼 2》?——因为它令人激动。Why 为什么;What 什么;How 怎样;根据句意可知道答案。　8. C　9. A

10. B　**点拨**:分析句子结构可知是 use sth. for sth. 的被动结构,所以选 B。

三、11. What; for　12. looked like

13. teach me how to change the channel

14. send and receive emails

15. search for information

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. Asia　2. picking　3. guide

4. world-famous　5. huge

二、6. relaxed　7. thousands　8. further

9. southern　10. to visit

三、11. A

12. C　**点拨**:考查短语搭配。be famous for 为固定短语,意为"以……出名"。

13. D　**点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。句意:在假期数千名游客来到洪崖洞拍照。hundred、thousand 等数词前有数字修饰该词用原形,其前若无数词修饰,该词变复数形式,其后接 of,如:thousands of 表示"数千的"。

14. A　**点拨**:考查动词短语辨析。fill …with …"用……装满……";cover …with …"用……覆盖……";be used for"被用来做";ask for"请求"。根据上下句句意"——这个箱子太重了以至于搬不动。里面是什么?——哦,它装满了书。"可知选 A。

15. D　**点拨**:常识题。由 the Statue of Liberty"自由女神像"可知选 America,它有"美洲,美国"之意。其他三项分别为:Britain 英国,China 中国;Denmark 丹麦。

16. B　**点拨**:本题用**词语辨析法**。句意:峨眉山的工人们不得不捡垃圾以保持大山干净。turn up(音量)调高;pick up 捡起;set up 创立;give up 放弃。

四、17. Several　18. is filled with

19. So much for　20. Work hard; and

五、21. fill; with　22. further on

23. to relax; a hard day's work

24. is famous for　25. at the top of

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. began; have learnt　2. haven't been

3. visited; ate　4. Have; seen; saw

5. has gone; left　6. bought; have had

7. dropped　8. has gone

二、9. C　10. D

11. B　**点拨**:本题用**把握语境法**。根据句意"——打扰了,请看'禁止拍照'的标牌!——对不起,我没有看见它。"可以判断是"刚才没有看见",须用一般过去时,故选 B。　12. D

13. B　**点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——我已经看过电影《侏罗纪世界 II》了,它非常有趣!——真的吗?你什么时候看的?是咨询过去具体时间,用一般过去时态。　14. A

15. A　**点拨**:考查现在完成时。since 引导的从句是现在完成时的标志。句意为"我的叔叔自从 20 岁起就一直在这所学校里教学"。

16. A　**点拨**:本题用**句意理解法**。句意:——汤姆在哪里?我们到处都找不到他。——或许他已经回家了。"我们到处都找不到他"就是"或许他已经回家了"的后果和影响,因此用现在完成时。故选 A。

17. B　18. C

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

1. C

2. B　**点拨**:本题用**交际法**。It's a pleasure 不用谢;With pleasure 愿意效劳;You're welcome 不客气;It doesn't matter 不要紧。对方请求帮忙,应该愿意效劳。

3. B　**点拨**:mind one's doing sth. 是固定句型,表示"介意某人做某事",表示不介意时,回答往往用:Not at all; Of course not; Certainly not。故选 B。

4. B　**点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:——让我们为劳里买一件生日礼物吧。——好的。我们在网上为他订一本书,好吗?afford 支付得

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

起;order 订购;offer 提供。由句意可知此处是建议为他在网上订购一本书,故选 B。

5. D **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。过去分词短语作定语修饰 the book *A Tale of Two Cities*。

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

一、1. queen 2. dollars 3. European

4. England 5. pounds

二、6. is made up of

7. an island country; The capital of

8. from; to 9. has a long history

10. changes often

三、11. biggest 12. world-famous 13. southern

14. international 15. gather 16. huge

17. through 18. centre

19. relax 20. famous

Unit 4 A good read

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. writer 2. Germans' 3. knowledge

4. boring 5. to reach

二、6. D 7. A

8. D **点拨**:arrive at 意为"抵达;到达";相当于 get to 或 reach。

9. B **点拨**:考查"疑问词 + 不定式"结构。问句句意为"打扰一下,你能告诉我在哪停我的汽车吗?"又因为停车用"park"表示,故选 B。

10. A **点拨**;**推理判断法**。根据答语中"Sorry."可猜测答语句意为"很抱歉,我太忙了,就连一分钟时间都腾不出来。"表示"留出;腾出"要用 spare。

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. tie 2. lift 3. continued 4. stomach

5. against

二、6. feet 7. unable 8. to hand 9. to get

10. early

三、11. A **点拨**:本题用**句意理解法**。句意:绝不要把今天能做的推到明天。until 直到;before 在……之前;when 当……的时候,表因为,当……时,都不符合句意。故选 A。

12. C **点拨**:在末尾表示否定的"也"用 either。

13. A **点拨**:句意:虽然不同意我的观点,但老教授没有提出他自己的观点。against 有"反对"的意思,符合句意。

14. D **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——你难道没有看到斑马线吗?你必须慢下来,孩子!——对不起,先生。我会测试不及格吗?根据常识可知开车时遇到人行道要慢下来。故此处应用"must"表示"必须"。

15. D **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:——比尔,你看见汤姆了吗?——是的,他刚才把车停在这几然后急忙穿过街道。through "穿过","表示从内部穿过;over "在……上面";past "经过";across "穿过",强调从物体表面穿过。"穿过大街"强调从一端到另一端,用 across 表示。

四、16. fall over 17. crashed against

18. was tired out 19. managed to reach

20. has been away from; as soon as

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. to do 2. to go 3. to choose 4. stay

5. cross

二、6. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**和**语境联想法**。由上文中"我们必须等到灯变绿吗?"和下文中"那是交通规则"可知,我们必须要等到灯变为绿色。have to"不得不",强调客观上的要求,故选 C。

7. C **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。can 能;可以;might 可能;must 必须;一定;could 会;可能;可以。根据句意判断:我现在必须走了,否则我会错过火车。

8. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**和**辨析法**。根据 not …until "直到……才"的用法,首先排除 A 和 B,又根据句意:"直到交通灯变成绿色你才能通过马路。"可知语气是"禁止",故选 C。

9. A **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——妈妈,今天晚上我能玩电脑游戏吗?——当然,但是你必须先完成你的家庭作业。根据 Sure,可知是回答请求,结合 but 可知"必须要先完成作业"。

10. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:女同学们正在讨论在教室的墙上应该涂哪一种颜色。"特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式"这一结构作宾语,"哪一种颜色"用疑问词 which,what color 表示"什么颜色"。

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. sales 2. translate 3. copy

4. success 5. experiences

二、6. so far 7. and so on 8. at a time

9. At first 10. date of your birth

三、11. C **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。receive 收到;return 归还,返还,回报;refuse 拒绝;reward 报酬;报答。承接上文意义,下文副词 however"然而"表示的转折句意,提示用动词 refuse 表示"拒绝"。

12. B **点拨**:until now,直到现在,相当于 so far,到目前为止;so much 如此多的(跟不可数名词);as usual,和往常一样;as before,和以前一样。根据句意可知答案。

13. A 14. D 15. C

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. against 2. tied 3. tiny 4. stomach

5. fall 6. continued 7. managed

8. army 9. towards 10. get

Unit 5 Good manners

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. litter 2. obey 3. manners 4. turn

5. politely

二、6. D **点拨**:本题用**交际法**解题。考查交际用语。句意:——今晚你想要和我一起看电影吗?——_____。我不得不做家务。A. 好运;B. 让我们去吧;C. 没问题;D. 恐怕不能。根据答语中"我不得不做家务"可推知"今晚我不能去看电影",故选 D。

7. A 8. B

9. B **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:"我可以用书架上的字典吗?""当然可以,记得用完把它放回到原处"。put sth. back 意为"把某物放回原处",back 为副词,it 指上文的字典,应该把 it 放在动词和副词之间,故选 B。

10. D

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. touch 2. close 3. conversation

4. subject 5. pushed

二、6. buying 7. loudly 8. British

9. weight 10. first

三、11. B

12. C **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。句意:这个演讲者列举了一些恰当的实例以使得其科学报告容易理解。awful 可怕的;stupid 愚蠢的;proper 合适的;thick 厚的。根据语境知选 proper。

13. B **点拨**:本题用**词语应用法**。用于肯定句的末尾,表示"也"用 as well 或 too。故选 B。

14. C

15. D **点拨**:本题用**交际法**。打扰别人时用excuse me;表示对别人的要求不能满足时用 sorry。

四、16. in public 17. by accident

18. shake hands with 19. in your way

20. rude to push / cut in before

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. A **点拨**:本题用**结构分析法**。句意为"她还不够强壮,不能去爬山。"be… enough to do sth. 是固定结构,"足够……做某事"。

2. A **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。enough 修饰形容词时,放在形容词后,可知 B 是错误的。big enough 足够大;too big 太大;too small 太小。根据 How big 可推测出是大的,排除 D;把 C 项代入句中理解,too …to…"太……而不能……",意为"太大而不能容下",不符合逻辑。故选 A。

3. A **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:这部电影不够有趣。他中途看看看看就睡着了。enough修饰形容词或副词时,要放在被修饰词的后面,故排除了 B 和 D;interested"感兴趣的",主语为人;interesting"有趣的",主语为物。本句的主语是 this movie,故选 A。

4. B

5. C **点拨**:not + *adj.* + enough to do 相当于too… to …或 so …that + 表示否定的从句,故选 C。

6. D **点拨**:本题用**结构分析法**。由"all the tennis fans in China know her"可知用so …that …连接两个句子。所以选择 D。 7. D

8. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。tired 是形容词,walk 为动词原形,所以排除 B、D 两项;又 enough 修饰形容词时要放在其后,所以只能选 C。句意为:这位老人说他太累了,不能再走了。

9. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。句意:——《哈利波特》是如此有趣的一部小说,我想再看一遍。——我同意你的说法。根据后面的从句可排除 B、D,修饰名词短语 an interesting novel 应用 such。

10. A **点拨**:题意:对汤姆来说,这袋大米太重,他搬不动。让我们去帮帮他。too … to … 为固定搭配,意为"太……而不能……"。

二、11. outgoing enough to make

12. tall enough to reach

13. is kind enough to 14. too; to

15. too difficult for; to; easy enough for; to

三、16. too; to 17. clever; quickly

18. too careless to

19. patient enough; getting/being/becoming angry

20. to clear out

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. explaining 2. candles 3. risk

4. pain 5. successful

二、6. C **点拨**:句意为"昨天下午的某个时候在月亮城发生了一起谋杀案。"A 项意为"任何时候";B 项意为"有时";C 项意为"某个时候";D 项意为"几次"。 7. C 8. C

9. C **点拨**:explain to sb. sth. 为固定搭配;根据"我们还是不理解"可知应用完成时态。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

10. B　**点拨**：本题用**把握语境法**。句意：——我花了一整晚准备我的报告。——不要熬夜太晚，否则你会累坏的。记住：蜡烛不能两头点，精力不可过度耗。A 项意为“不鸣则已，一鸣惊人”，C 项意为“不孤注一掷，或不在一棵树上吊死”，D 项意为“邻家芳草绿，隔岸风景好”。

三、11. soon after　**12.** taking a risk

13. No parking　**14.** warned me not to

15. keep; from

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. shake　**2.** close　**3.** kiss　**4.** conversation

5. avoid　**6.** push　**7.** excuse　**8.** till

9. loudly　**10.** public

Unit 6 Sunshine for all

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. blind　**2.** support　**3.** deaf　**4.** provided

5. elderly

二、6. C　**点拨**：句意为：请帮我训练这些孩子，因为他们下个月要参加校篮球比赛。此题考查 train 作及物动词的用法，train sb. 意为“训练某人”。

7. C

8. B　**点拨**：provide sb. with sth. = provide sth. for sb. 意为“为某人提供某物”，故选 B。

9. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查非谓语动词的用法和情态动词的用法。句意：——他需要马上去那里吗？——不需要。因为他有足够的时间，所以他没有必要离开得这么匆忙。问句中的 need 是行为动词，故其后用动词不定式作宾语，即 need to do sth. 意为“需要做某事”；答语中的空格后接的是动词原形 leave，故这里的 need 是情态动词，其否定形式为 needn't。

10. C　**点拨**：本题用**固定句型法**。句意：——朱莉娅，你的手机响了。——等一下。过马路时接电话是很危险的。It's + *adj.* + to do sth. 意为“做某事是……”，是固定句型，其中的 it 是形式主语，真实主语是后面的动词不定式短语。

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. achieve　**2.** prize　**3.** gold

4. necessary　**5.** coaches

二、6. to come　**7.** driving　**8.** to finish

9. walking　**10.** closely

三、11. A　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。句意：新的丝绸之路将会为更多国家的交流提供一个好的机会。chance 机会；habit 习惯；question 问题；price 价格。

12. D

13. B　**点拨**：different 意为“不同的”，similar 意为“类似的”，strange 意为“奇怪的”，interesting 意为“有趣的”。根据语境，答句句意为：不同？哦，不。它们看起来非常相似。故选 B。

14. A　**点拨**：句意：莱昂纳多·迪卡普里奥是位著名的美国演员，总是期待着赢得奥斯卡奖，最终他成功了。expect to do sth. 意为“期待做某事”，其否定形式为 expect not to do sth. 结合句意可知，此处应该用肯定形式。

15. A　**点拨**：本题用**结构分析法**。It's + 形容词 + of sb. to do sth. 意为“某人做某事是……的”。join 指加入某种组织并成为其中一员，join in 指参加某项活动等，故选 A。

四、16. take part　**17.** is similar to

18. patient; give

19. necessary for; receive training

20. helped make; a great success

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. of　**2.** for　**3.** of　**4.** of　**5.** for

二、6. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定句型法**。句意：当朋友们遇到困难时，对我们来说帮助他们摆脱困境是十分必要的。固定句型“It's + *adj.* + of/for sb. + to do sth.”意为“做某事对某人来说……”，necessary 是描述事物性质的形容词，后面应该用 for。　**7.** A

8. B　**点拨**：本题用**结构分析法**。考查四个形容词的含义。bad 坏的；easy 简单的，容易的；hard 硬的，难的；right 对的。根据句意：对我来说，我很容易听懂澳大利亚客人的意思，因为我很擅长英语。follow 在这里是“理解”的意思，不是“跟随”的意思，故选 B。

9. A　**10.** B

三、11. good for

12. is dangerous to climb

13. wise of you to give up

14. It's difficult for them to come up with

15. It is impossible (not possible) for him to finish/complete the task in such a short time.

16. It's not easy for them to see such beautiful views as often as before.

17. necessary for you to make friends

18. It is very important for us to keep fit/ healthy.

19. excited the boy is on seeing these cute pandas

20. How impolite it is to cut in on / What bad manners it is to cut in on

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. chance　**2.** similar　**3.** gave　**4.** necessary

5. training　**6.** tasks　**7.** support　**8.** success

9. backgrounds　**10.** like

Unit 7 International charities

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. basic

2. spreads　**点拨**：句意：坏新闻传播得更快。news 为不可数名词，故谓语用动词第三人称单数。

3. education　**4.** especially　**5.** charities

二、6. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。exactly“确切地”，possibly“可能地”，especially“尤其”，generally“通常，一般地”。由句意“最好呆在室内，尤其是当 PM2. 5 到达危险指数的时候。”可知，答案为 C 项。　**7.** C

8. A　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。三餐前不加冠词，但是前面有形容词修饰时，要加冠词。

9. B　**点拨**：本题用**交际法**。句意：——布莱克太太，恐怕考试我会不及格的。——加油，亲爱的。别紧张，我相信你会通过考试的。Sorry to hear that 听到这件事很抱歉；Come on 加油；All right 好的；Good job 干得好，结合句意，应该选 B。　**10.** D

三、11. left; share　**12.** is needed

13. too small; to wear

14. provides basic education for　**15.** equal rights

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. medical　**2.** interviewer　**3.** patients

4. mostly　**5.** developed

二、6. proud　**7.** treatment　**8.** running

9. operation　**10.** readers

三、11. A

12. B　**点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**。由句意“人们保持健康的最好的方法之一就是培养良好的饮食习惯。”可知选 B 项，意为“培养”，而 grow 意为“种植”，increase 意为“增长”，同意为“找到，发现”，均不符合句意，故排除。

13. D

14. B　**点拨**：句意为：我们学校大约百分之六十的学生是女生。在“数词 + per cent + of + sth./sb.”的结构中，谓语动词的单复数由 per cent of 后面跟的 sth./sb. 来决定，故选 B。

15. B

16. A　**点拨**：afford 是动词，意为“买得起，担负得起”，通常与 can，could，be able to 连用，用于否定句或疑问句中，短语 can't afford to do sth. 意为“支付不起做某事的费用”，故选 A。

17. A　**点拨**：operate on sb. 意为“给某人动手术”，为固定短语。

18. C　**点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**。句意为：这个兽医给那只猫治疗了，但也没能治好它。treat 是动词，意为“治疗”，强调过程；cure 是动词时，意为“治愈”，强调结果，故选 C。

19. B　**点拨**：句意为：汤姆的右腿有毛病，因此他不能继续比赛了。carry on with sth. 意为“继续做某事”，相当于“carry on doing sth./go on doing sth./continue doing sth.”，故答案为 B。　**20.** C

四、21. by training local　**22.** go to hospital

23. on board　**24.** carry on with

25. have a rest; is finished

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. written　**2.** are planted　**3.** is called

4. was made　**5.** am given

二、6. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：——西蒙，你知道谁发明了风筝吗？——当然，它（风筝）是在 2000 多年前由墨子发明的。根据后面的“by”及句意可知此处应用被动语态；又根据时间状语“over 2,000 years ago”可知应用一般过去时的被动语态。故选 C。

7. A

8. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。答语主语 Many trees and flowers 是动作的承受者，所以用被动语态；再根据时间状语 every year 可知用一般现在时，故选 are planted。

9. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：——中共十九大去年在北京举行。——从那时开始我们国家进入新时代。通过 last year 可知是过去时。十九大应该是被举行。故选 B。

10. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。句意：大多数青少年每天把很多时间花费在电脑游戏上。他们的父母很担心他们的健康和学习。主语 Too much time 与谓语动词 spend 是被动关系，要用被动语态。故选 B。

三、11. were destroyed　**点拨**：本题用**转换法**。上一句是一般过去时，变为被动语态后也应用一般过去时，主语 houses 是复数，因此 be 动词用 were。

12. were; by　**13.** weren't caught

14. was held　**15.** am; told to be

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. blind　**2.** prevented　**3.** medical

4. operations　**5.** operated　**6.** patients

7. training　**8.** afford　**9.** board　**10.** carry

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 A green world

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. Dig　2. caused　3. serious

4. wise　5. reduce

二、6. A　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——Jim，现在天黑了。请打开房间里的灯。——好的，妈妈。由前句 Jim，it's dark now. 及常识可推知，天黑了，需要打开房间里的灯。turn on 打开；turn up 调高；turn off 关闭；turn down 调低。故选 A。

7. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：别学习了，去外面散一下步吧，记得穿上暖和的衣服。stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事情；stop to do sth. 停下来去做另一件事情；remember doing sth. 记得已经做过的事情；remember to do sth. 记得去做某事。根据句意可知选 B。

8. B　点拨：本题用辨析法。句意：——刚才发生了什么事？——一辆小汽车在十字路口处撞到一位老太太。她受伤了，但并不太严重。由后文大意"并不太严重"可推知：前后句存在一种转折关系，应该用 but 引导。故选 B。

9. A　点拨：本题用语境联想法。由后面的"空气比几年前更干净"可知应该是"越来越多的人过低碳生活"。故选 A。

10. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：我们的城市比以前更干净了。used to do sth. 过去常常做某事。故选 B。

三、11. turn off　12. drives；to　13. cause；worried

14. More and more；waste food　15. good for

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. allowed　2. punished　3. wisely

4. fined　5. produced

二、6. Luckily　7. better　8. are separated

9. pollution　10. differences

三、11. A

12. C　点拨：本题用句意理解法。考查被动语态。由句意可知吸烟不被允许。allow 意为"允许"。

13. A　点拨：本题用语法判定法。information"信息"和 learn"学习"之间是被动关系，答案 C、D 是主动语态，B 时态不对，故选 A。

14. C

15. D　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：每天他都早早起床_____他能赶上第一班车。because 因为；since 由于，既然；when 当……时候；so that 目的是。由句意知，后半句是前半句的目的，应用 so that 引导目的状语从句。故选 D。　16. D

17. B　点拨：本题用词语应用法。句意：我认为年轻的低头族应该减少他们花费在智能手机上的时间。cut off 切断；cut up 切碎；cut in 插入；cut down 削减，spend… on sth. 在某事上花费……。故选 B。

18. D　19. A　20. C

四、21. do with　22. instead of punishing them

23. make a difference to　24. is separated into

25. will be planted

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. D　点拨：本题用语法判定法。主语 pedestrians 是动作的承受者，应当用被动语态；再根据 if 引导的条件状语从句中用了一般现在时可以推断出主句应当用一般将来时。

2. D　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：这个男孩认为他不应该被别人告知去做什么，因为他现在 18 岁了。从句中的主语 he 和动词 tell 构成被动关系，应用被动语态 be told。故选 D。

3. C　点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：未来工厂里会有更少的工人因为大多数工作由机器人来做。主语 most work 与谓语动词 do 是被动关系，by 引导动作的执行者，故要用被动语态；由时间状语 in the future 可知是将来时，故用一般将来时的被动语态。

4. D　点拨：本题用题眼法。从时间状语 tomorrow afternoon 可知，应该用一般将来时的被动语态，故选 D。　5. D

二、6. The work will be finished in ten days.

7. A sports meeting will be held by us next week.

8. Some photos will be taken by children in the schoolyard tomorrow.

9. The book will be returned to the library by him in two days.

10. A talk will be given to us by the headmaster this afternoon. 或 We will be given a talk by the headmaster this afternoon.

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. carelessly　2. survey　3. formed

4. empty　5. harmful　6. daily　7. teeth

8. is　9. dust　10. reused

二、11. all around the world

12. try our best to learn　13. harmful for

14. keep；in place　15. to take action；protect

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

1. with　2. separated　3. protect　4. allowed

5. cut　6. punished　7. depend　8. rich

9. wisely　10. difference

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 Past and present

▶**Welcome to the unit**

A 1. coach　2. bus　3. taxi　4. underground

5. train　6. plane

▶**Reading**

B 1 1. f　2. g　3. d　4. b　5. c　6. e　7. a

B 2 1. F　2. T　3. T　4. T　5. F　6. T

B 3 1. northern　2. blocks　3. restaurants

4. post office　5. cinema　6. theatre

7. shopping mall　8. steel factory

B 4 1. has changed a lot　2. beautiful modern

3. waste　4. situation

5. play cards and Chinese chess

6. feel a bit lonely　7. see each other

8. the amazing changes in the town

▶**Grammar**

A 1. borrowed　2. hoped　3. made　4. got

5. planned　6. cried　7. sent　8. watched

9. said　10. grown　11. hit　12. enjoyed

B 1. have finished　2. has；visited

3. has repaired　4. haven't seen

5. haven't come　6. has taught

C 1. Have；seen　2. saw　3. learned

4. have heard

▶**Integrated skills**

A 1 1. hills　2. air　3. birds　4. bicycle

5. houses

A 2 1. lake　2. railway　3. buildings　4. train

5. flat

A 3 1. hills　2. birds　3. air　4. modern

5. railway　6. taxi　7. bicycle

8. buildings　9. town　10. flats

▶**Study skills**

A 1. F　2. F　3. O　4. F　5. O　6. F

B 1. F　2. O　3. F　4. F　5. F　6. O

234165

▶**Task**

C 1. narrow and dirty

2. rubbish

3. wide and clean

4. green trees

5. shops and tall buildings

6. small old houses

7. new flats

8. listen to the radio

9. Internet

10. mobile phones

11. on foot or by bicycle

12. by bus or taxi

Unit 2 Travelling

▶**Welcome to the unit**

A 1. the Little Mermaid

2. the Statue of Liberty

3. the Leaning Tower of Pisa

4. the Great Wall

5. the Sydney Opera House

6. Tower Bridge

▶**Reading**

B 1 1. my parents　2. Disneyland

3. by underground　4. a whole day

5. a fantastic time there

B 2 1. Space Mountain　2. quick meal

3. cartoon characters　4. parade　5. 4-D film

6. shopping　7. the fireworks

B 3 1. cute　2. indoor　3. speed

4. screaming　5. ride　6. characters

7. magic　8. pie　9. a couple of

B 4 1. We were screaming and laughing through the ride.

2. Everybody got excited when a parade of Disney characters began later in the afternoon.

3. At the end of the day，we watched the fireworks in front of Sleeping Beauty Castle.

▶**Grammar**

A 1 1. has gone　2. have；been　3. has been

4. have gone　5. has gone

A 2 1. has；gone

2. has gone

3. Have；been

4. have been

5. Have；been

6. have been

7. have gone

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B 1. arrived **2**. have been **3**. borrowed
4. have kept **5**. began **6**. has been

▶ **Integrated skills**

A 1 1. e **2**. d **3**. c **4**. a **5**. b

A 2

	Places to go	Spring	Summer	Autumn	Winter
Chinese gardens	Suzhou, Yangzhou	√		√	
Museums	Beijing, Xi'an	√	√	√	√
Places of natural beauty	Mount Huang, Jiuzhaigou	√	√	√	
Seaside cities	Dalian, Qingdao		√		
Theme parks	Shenzhen, Hong Kong	√	√	√	√

A 3 1. theme parks **2**. Hong Kong **3**. Dalian
4. summer **5**. natural beauty **6**. winter
7. Chinese gardens **8**. autumn **9**. museums

▶ **Study skills**

When: f Where: g Who: a
What: h; e d b How: c

▶ **Task**

B 1. Disneyland **2**. parade **3**. exciting
4. Ocean Park **5**. dolphin show **6**. shopping
7. seafood

Unit 3 Online tours

▶ **Welcome to the unit**

A 1. screen **2**. main unit **3**. keyboard **4**. mouse

▶ **Reading**

B 1 1. f **2**. g **3**. c **4**. h **5**. e **6**. b **7**. d **8**. a
B 2 1. Times Square **2**. Central Park
3. trade centre **4**. New Year's Eve
5. lawn **6**. theatres
B 3 1. F **2**. F **3**. T **4**. F **5**. F **6**. F
7. T **8**. T
B 4 1. Around the World in Eight Hours
2. online **3**. Asia **4**. Europe **5**. companies
6. international banks
7. New Year's Eve
8. relax
9. twentieth century

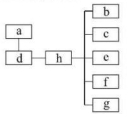
▶ **Grammar**

A 1. visited **2**. climbed **3**. Have; tried
4. have learnt
B 1. have just finished; finished
2. wrote; has already written
3. was; have not been
4. have been lived; lived
C 1. Have you ever been
2. have been
3. did you go **4**. spent **5**. Did you like
6. had **7**. visited **8**. ate **9**. have never been
D 1. showed **2**. have; seen **3**. bought
4. have read **5**. has; returned **6**. have; been

▶ **Integrated skills**

A 1 1. at the top **2**. Camera **3**. pictures
4. bottom
A 2 1. F **2**. T **3**. F **4**. T **5**. F **6**. F
A 3 1. south-east **2**. largest **3**. sea
4. beaches **5**. Sydney Opera House **6**. theatre
7. ship **8**. Harbour Bridge **9**. three hours
10. autumn

▶ **Study skills**



Unit 4 A good read

▶ **Welcome to the unit**

A 1. science **2**. cooking **3**. travel **4**. health
5. novel **6**. culture

▶ **Reading**

B 1 1. e **2**. d **3**. f **4**. b **5**. a **6**. c
B 2 1. c **2**. b **3**. e **4**. a **5**. d
B 3 1. T **2**. F **3**. F **4**. T **5**. F **6**. F
B 4 1. He swam as far as he could.
2. He found he could not move.
3. He was the same size as Gulliver's little finger.
4. No, he couldn't.

▶ **Grammar**

A 1. which to read
2. where to find
3. how to speak
4. when to hand in
5. what to write about
6. who to ask for

B 1. must **2**. must **3**. must not
4. must not **5**. have to **6**. have to
7. do not have to

▶ **Integrated skills**

A 1 Kitty—travel—*Notes from a small Island*
Millie—novel—*Three Men in a Boat*
Daniel—history—*Flags of Our Fathers*
Simon—science—*A Brief History of Time*
Sandy—novel—*Moment in Peking*
A 2 1. 31 July 1965 **2**. stories **3**. train **4**. 1995
5. seventh/last **6**. London **7**. 70 **8**. 450
9. 200
A 3 1. Canadian→British
2. 30→31
3. toys→stories
4. eighth→seventh
5. was→was not
6. only in Britain→in over 200 countries and areas all over the world

▶ **Study skills**

because, For example, After, also, More-over, Maybe

Unit 5 Good manners

▶ **Welcome to the unit**

A 1. c **2**. d **3**. c **4**. a **5**. f **6**. b

▶ **Reading**

B 1 1. e **2**. f **3**. a **4**. b **5**. c **6**. d
B 2



B 3 1. shake your hand **2**. relatives
3. conversation **4**. avoid **5**. push in
6. queue **7**. bump into **8**. move
9. in public **10**. very polite
11. all the time **12**. the Romans

▶ **Grammar**

A 2. Millie is patient enough to listen carefully when others speak.
3. Sandy is careful enough to notice small changes around her.
4. Kitty is generous enough to share her things with others.
5. Simon is polite enough to queue in public.
6. Amy is funny enough to make everyone laugh after class.
B 1. Suzy was too shy to join the discussion.
2. Simon was too excited to express himself clearly.
3. Peter was too slow to write down all the main points.
4. Amy was too careless to take her hat with her when she left.
5. Kitty was too busy with her dancing lessons to listen to the radio.

Work out the rule! adjective

▶ **Integrated skills**

A 1 1. bright **2**. pictures **3**. way **4**. places
5. safe **6**. not to do
A 2 1. places like hospitals
2. places like museums
3. the street
4. public places like parks
A 3 1. hospitals **2**. museums **3**. parks
4. pictures **5**. explain
6. useful **7**. find our way
8. places around us
9. safe from danger
10. not to do something
11. No littering
12. No photos
13. No smoking
14. No parking

▶ **Study skills**

A 1. c **2**. b **3**. d **4**. a **5**. f **6**. e
B 1. No pain, no gain
2. Practice makes perfect
3. burn the candle at both ends
4. a friend in need is a friend indeed
5. actions speak louder than words

▶ **Task**

B 1. rules for eating **2**. 10 a. m.
3. 12 May **4**. everyone is ready
5. make too much noise
6. your mouth open
7. food in your mouth
8. someone's plate **9**. everyone to finish

Unit 6 Sunshine for all

▶ **Welcome to the unit**

A 1. disabled **2**. poor **3**. blind **4**. elderly
5. homeless **6**. deaf

▶ **Reading**

B 1 1. 2 **2**. 4 **3**. 5 **4**. 3
B 2 1. the Special Olympics World Games
2. volunteer **3**. spare time
4. swimming coach **5**. a gold **6**. confident
7. achieve **8**. special

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B 3 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F
B 4 1. children 2. adults 3. chance
4. Shanghai 5. similar to 6. athletes
7. event 8. experience

▶ Grammar

A 1. It is right to give seats to the elderly.
2. It is good to help blind people cross the road.
3. It is helpful to donate money to charities.
4. It is proper to take care of a lost pet.
5. It is important to plant more trees.
6. It is necessary to keep parks clean.
B 1. impossible for them
2. wonderful for you
3. important for us
4. necessary for volunteers
5. easy for people
6. fantastic for me
Work out the rule!
object pronouns
C 1. It is careless of the boy to leave the tap running.
2. It is bad of the girl to pick flowers in the park.
3. It is wrong of the people to drop litter everywhere.
4. It is kind of the young man to donate blood to people in need.
5. It is not right of the man to smoke in public places.

▶ Integrated skills

A 1 1. a 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. a 6. b
A 2 1. small
2. mountain
3. six 4. far away
5. an hour
6. English
7. songs 8. books
9. the poor areas
10. teach
A 3 1. volunteer project
2. teacher
3. one year
4. small
5. six classrooms
6. far away
7. an hour
8. English
9. songs
10. a lot of books
11. the poor areas
12. teach

▶ Study skills

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C

Unit 7 International charities

▶ Welcome to the unit

A 1. ORBIS 2. WWF 3. Oxfam 4. UNICEF

▶ Reading

B 1 1. f 2. c 3. e 4. d 5. b 6. a
B 2 1. Flying Eye Hospital 2. eye problems
3. eye operations 4. doctors and nurses
5. see again 6. new skills
B 3 1. e 2. f 3. e 4. b 5. a 6. d
B 4 1. afford 2. patients 3. board
4. training 5. proud 6. medicine 7. cured
8. support

▶ Grammar

A 1. Charity activities are planned to help the poor.
2. Leaflets are handed out to people in the street by volunteers.
3. Toys and CDs are sold to raise money.
4. New books were sent to children in poor areas by Class 1, Grade 8 students.
5. Warm clothes were collected for poor people.
6. A charity show was held by the Students' Union.
B 1. was set up 2. was opened 3. are sold
4. is used 5. is called 6. was started
7. are given 8. are built

▶ Integrated skills

A 2 3 2 5 4 1
A 3 1. In 1946.
2. Many children's lives were changed because of World War Ⅱ. UNICEF wanted to help them.
3. It works in over 190 countries and areas.
4. It provides clean water and food. It also provides basic education for poor children in many countries.
5. It raises money by selling Christmas cards and organizing other activities.
A 4 1. the United Nations
2. 1946
3. World War Ⅱ
4. children's lives
5. 190 countries and areas
6. communities
7. a better place
8. healthy
9. clean water
10. basic education
11. selling Christmas cards

▶ Study skills

The big day came very quickly, and suddenly it was the night before the charity show. I could not sleep at all that night because I was so excited. "Will it be a success?" I kept asking myself.
Twenty minutes before the big event, the doors opened and many people came into the theatre. "No time to be nervous any more. This is it!" I told myself. A lot of people came to watch the show. They were making a lot of noise, so I had to speak loudly.

Unit 8 A green world

▶ Welcome to the unit

A 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b

▶ Reading

B 1 1. d 2. f 3. e 4. b 5. c 6. a
B 2 1. d 2. a 3. f 4. e 5. e 6. b
B 3 5 4 2 3 1
B 4 1. environment
2. separated
3. recycled
4. collects
5. charity shops
6. the poor
7. factories
8. laws
9. punished
10. allowed
11. litter
12. fined

▶ Grammar

A 1. A lot of activities are going to be organized in Environment Week.
2. Posters will be designed by Sandy.
3. Leaflets will be sent to all the people in the town.
4. Some of the activities are going to be held in the town square.
B 1. It is going to be held this Friday evening.
2. It will be held at the town hall.
3. Some famous people in our town will be invited to the show.
4. Videos about the past and present of Sunshine Town will be displayed.
5. Ways about how to protect the environment will be discussed at the show.
Work out the rule! be going to be
C 1. is thrown 2. are polluted 3. is filled
4. will be hurt 5. are harmed
6. will be killed 7. is going to be held
8. will be shown

▶ Integrated skills

A 1 1. 4 p. m. this Wednesday
2. 3:40 p. m. this Wednesday
3. Room 201 4. 50 5. 25 6. 25
7. six/6
A 2 Turn off the tap when brushing teeth 35
Take showers for less than 10 minutes 20
Use both sides of the paper 40
Recycle empty bottles 15
Turn off the lights when they leave a room 41
Take their own bags to the supermarket 9
A 3 1. Wednesday
2. daily habits
3. 20 4. 35
5. empty bottles 6. 40
7. turn off 8. bags

▶ Study skills

Paragraph 1: depend→depend on(M)
is→are(G)
factorys→factories(S)
Paragraph 2: will form→will be formed(G)
wise→wisely(W)
used and thrown→used or thrown (W)
carelessly. →carelessly,(P)
Paragraph 3: environment→environment(S)
try produce→try to produce(M)
possible? →possible.(P)

▶ Task

B 1. go green
2. shorter showers
3. the tap
4. reuse water
5. turn off the lights
6. not in use
7. plastic bags
8. our own bags
9. waste
10. do more exercise
11. plant some flowers

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料